

# RISO *ME* Series

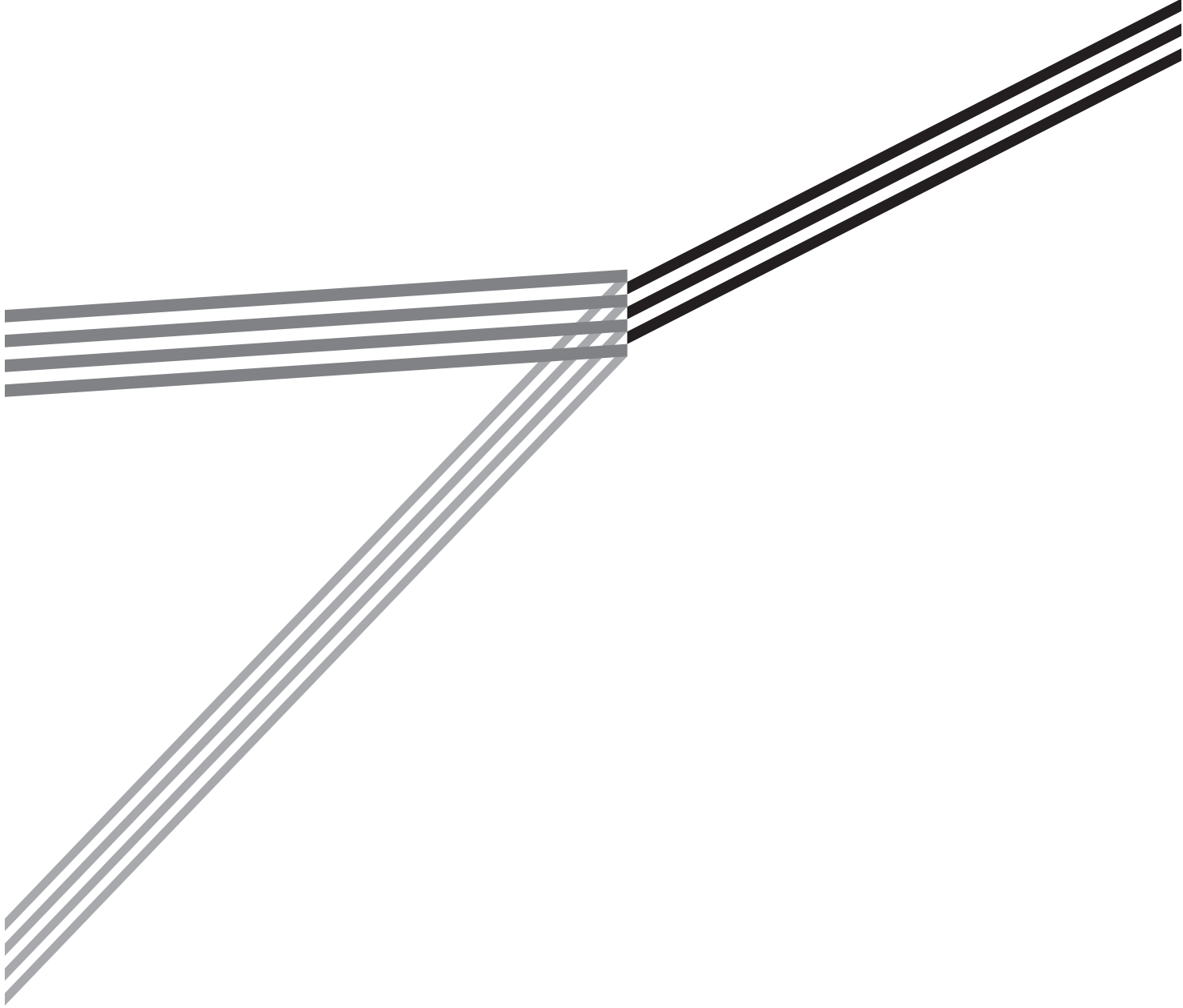
## *User's Guide*

**9450/9350/6350**

RISO *ME* Series

*User's Guide*

9450/9350/6350



Please contact following for supplies and service:





As an **ENERGY STAR**® Partner, RISO KAGAKU CORP. has determined that this product meets the **ENERGY STAR**® guidelines for energy efficiency.

**For ME9450U Model Only**

**Duplicator**  
**Model: ME9450U**  
**RFID System**  
**Model: 050-34901**

**Contains FCC ID: RPARFR6**

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

The user is cautioned that unauthorized changes or modifications not approved could the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

**Contains IC: 4819A-RFR6**

Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

CAN ICES-3(B)/NMB-3(B)

Perchlorate Material-special handling may apply, See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate)

This product may contain certain substances which are restricted when disposed.

Therefore, be sure to consult your contracted service dealer.

**Warning**

**For ME9350A and ME6350A Models Only**

This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

**For ME9350E Model Only**



**R&TTE directive Class1 device**

**- This product contains RFID (Radio Frequency Identification) System.**

## Notice for European Union Member States

### RISO, the environment and the Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment Directive "WEEE Directive"

#### What is the WEEE Directive?

The purpose of the WEEE Directive is to reduce waste and ensure Electrical and Electronic Equipment is recycled at the end of its useful life.



#### What does the crossed out wheeled bin symbol mean?

The crossed out wheeled bin symbol indicates this product must be disposed of separately to normal waste.

Please contact your RISO service agent for information about disposal.

#### What does the solid bar symbol mean?

The solid bar under the crossed out wheeled bin indicates this product was put on the market after the 13th August 2005.

#### Who should I contact if I want more information about the WEEE Directive?

You should contact your local RISO service agent for more information.

**Riso shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of this manual.**

**As we are constantly improving our products, the machine may differ in some respects from the illustrations used in this manual.**

**Riso shall not be liable for any direct, incidental, or consequential damages of any nature, or losses or expenses resulting from the use of this product or included manuals.**

**⚠ Caution:**

- Make sure to read the important operational safety information.
- Store this manual close-by, and fully acquaint yourself with the printing machine.

**RISO** is a registered trademark of RISO KAGAKU CORPORATION in Japan and other countries.

**riso iQualitySystem™** is a trademark of RISO KAGAKU CORPORATION.



is a trademark of RISO KAGAKU CORPORATION.

**Adobe® Reader® and Adobe® Acrobat® Reader®** are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.



**Acquisition of Color Universal Design Certification**

The RISO ME9450/9350/6350 (machine, printer driver\*) is recognized by the incorporated non-profit organization Color Universal Design Organization (CUDO) in achieving Color Universal Design.

\*Windows version

**- The information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.**

# Contents

Welcome to the ME Series Model .....	7
About This User's Guide.....	7
Icons Used in This Manual .....	8

## **Before Starting to Use** **10**

---

Safety Guide - Installation .....	10
Installation .....	10
Power connection .....	10
Grounding.....	11
Safety Guide - Handling and Operation.....	12
Operation Environment.....	12
Machine Handling.....	12
USB Flash Drive .....	13
Consumables.....	13
Ink Handling.....	13
Location of Caution Label.....	13
Connection with a Computer .....	14
Connection Method .....	14
Software Installation .....	15
Paper Recommendations .....	16
Size and Weight Restrictions.....	16
Tips for Better Paper Feeding .....	17
Storing Environment .....	17
Originals .....	18
Size and Weight Restrictions.....	18
Maximum Printing Areas and Margins.....	19
Materials Not to Be Printed .....	19

## **Getting Acquainted** **20**

---

Function and Name of Each Part .....	20
Optional Devices .....	22
Control Panel.....	24
Display.....	26
The Screens and their Various Stages.....	26
About Modes .....	29
Basic Screen Layout.....	31
Basic Process for Dual-Color Printing .....	34
Basic Process for Mono-Color Printing.....	36

## **Basic Operations** **38**

---

Preparing to Print.....	38
Setting up the Paper Feed Tray and Loading Paper .....	38
Setting up the Paper Receiving Tray.....	40
Placing the original .....	42
When placing on the Glass Platen .....	42

When placing in the ADF unit (Option) .....	42
Printing from Paper Documents .....	44
Dual-Color Printing with 2 Originals .....	44
Printing with Mono-Color .....	49
Printing from a Computer Data [Direct Print] [USB Job List] .....	54
Printing Computer Data [Direct Print] .....	54
Printing USB Data [USB Job List] .....	57
Changing Output Directions .....	60
Changing Stop Timing .....	62

## **Functions for Master-Making 64**

Selecting Image Processing Mode [Image] .....	64
Selecting Scanning Contrast for the Original [Contrast] .....	66
Enlarging/Reducing Originals [Standard Ratio] [Margin+] [Free] [Zoom] .....	67
Enlargement and Reduction by Standard Ratio [Standard Ratio] [Margin+] [Auto] .....	68
Enlargement/Reduction of a Changed Aspect Ratio [Free] .....	69
Enlarging and Reducing with the Zoom Function [Zoom] .....	70
Using Custom-Sized Paper [Paper] .....	71
Automatic Printing [Auto-Process] .....	72
Processing Photos with Dot Screen [Dot Process] .....	73
Adjusting Photo Contrast [Contrast Adj] .....	74
Adjusting Photo Gradation [Tone Curve] .....	75
Saving Ink [Ink Saving] .....	76
Printing Multiple Originals on One Sheet [2 Up] [Multi-Up Print] .....	77
Original Orientation and Print Results .....	78
Margin .....	81
Orientation of Print Paper .....	81
Multi-Up Interval .....	81
2 Up Operation .....	82
Operation for Multi-Up Printing .....	83
Operation for Multi-Up Tickets .....	85
Laying out continuous originals on one sheet of paper [Layout] .....	88
Printing from Bound Documents [Book Shadow] .....	92
Cutting the Top Margin of the Original and Printing [Top Margin] .....	94
Adjusting the Master-Making position [Binding margin] .....	96
Making a Master that Utilizes the Maximum Printing Area [Max. Scan] .....	98
Dual-Color Printing with 1 Original [Easy 2Color] .....	99
Easy 2Color Types .....	99
Operating Procedures for Easy 2Color .....	106
Use the Color editor .....	108
Checking the Print Image Prior to Making Master [Preview] .....	109
Actions Available on the Preview Screen .....	110
Checking and Printing the Preview Display .....	111
Switching Masters of Just One Print Drum (Cylinder) [OneSide MasterMake] .....	112

<b>Functions for Printing</b>	<b>114</b>
Changing the Print Speed [Print Speed Adjustment] .....	114
Printing at High Speed [High Speed].....	115
Setting “High Speed” .....	115
Adjusting the Print Density [Print Density Adjustment] .....	116
Adjusting the Print Position [Print Position Adjustment] [1=2 Alignment] .....	117
Adjusting the Print Position of Both Print Drums (Cylinders) Together .....	118
Printing Proof Copies [Proof] .....	120
Prevent Paper Jams When Using Special Paper [D-Feed Check].....	121
Extending the drying time [Interval] .....	122
Paper Feed/Output Settings for Special Paper and Printing Types	
[Jump Wing Control] [Special Paper Ctrl].....	123
Setting the Jump Wing Control [Jump Wing Control] .....	124
Saving settings and renaming the parameter names in the Parameter List.....	125
Retrieving Settings from the Parameter List.....	127
Making changes to Special Paper Ctrl Setting .....	128
Clearing Special Paper Ctrl Settings .....	129
 <b>Advanced Features</b>	 <b>130</b>
Setting Up User Management [User Management].....	130
Selecting Recognition and Identification System.....	133
Setting Up the Management Level .....	135
Registering Administrator/Users .....	136
Changing Administrator/User Registration .....	143
Clearing User Registration .....	144
Renaming Groups .....	145
Reset All User Counters .....	146
Automatic Sorting Into Groups [Program] .....	147
How to Program Print .....	150
Setting Up for Programed Printing.....	151
Saving Programs .....	154
Retrieving a Program.....	155
Renaming a Program .....	156
Clearing Programs .....	158
Making changes to Stored Programs .....	159
Use Easy 2Color and Combination together .....	160
Using Job Memory Functions [Job Memory] .....	163
Storing Job Memory .....	164
Retrieving a Job Memory and Printing .....	165
Renaming a Job Memory .....	167
Clearing Job Memory .....	168
Protecting Confidential Documents [Confidential] .....	169
Extending the Reserve Period [Reservation] .....	171
Idling Action [Idling Action] .....	172
Reproducing the Master [Renew Page] [Auto Page Renewal].....	173
Using Page Renewal .....	174
Using Auto Page Renewal.....	175

Print the original from the last page [Output reversal] .....	176
Proof and Print (with the Optional ADF unit installed) [ADF Semi-Auto] .....	178
Selecting Scanning Sides When Using the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 [Scanning Side -ADF] .....	180
Specifying the Scanning Side .....	183
Rotating the Original 180 Degrees to Make a Master [Rotate] .....	185
Checking User Counters [ID Counter Report] .....	186
Outputting the Counter Report .....	187
Setting Up the Monthly Reminder .....	188
Showing Usage Status [Meter Display] .....	189
Customizing the Direct Access Area [My Direct Access] .....	190
Changing Default Settings [Admin.] .....	192
Configurable Functions .....	192
Customizing the Default Settings .....	198
Setting Up Direct Access Area and Selections Tab [DirectAccess Entry] [Selections Entry] .....	202
Registering a Custom Paper Size [Custom Paper Entry] .....	204
Entering sizes and changing names .....	204
Deleting a Custom Paper Size .....	206
Keeping Masters Secure After Printing [Protect] .....	207
Preventing Leaks of Masters After Creation or Disposal .....	208

## **Storing Original Data and Use Method 212**

Converting Hard-copies into Stored Data (Scan Mode) .....	214
Scanning a Hard-copy Original .....	215
Setting Data Information .....	217
Specifying Stored Size .....	219
Retrieving Stored Data and Printing [Storage Memory][USB Job List] .....	220
Retrieving Stored Data .....	220
Changing the Data Order .....	222
Using the Storage Retrieve/USB Job List Screen .....	223
Overlaying Stored Data onto a Print Job [Overlay] .....	225
Dual-Color Printing with the Original and Storage Data [Stamp] .....	228
Registering a Stamp Data to insert .....	229
Renaming the Stamp Data .....	232
Dual-Color Printing with [Stamp] .....	234
Changing the Stamp Data .....	235
Deleting a Stamp Data .....	237
Copying/Moving Stored Data .....	238

---

<b>Replacing Consumables</b>	<b>240</b>
------------------------------	------------

---

Check for Remaining Amount of Consumables.....	240
Replacing the Master Roll .....	242
Replacing the Ink Cartridge .....	245
Emptying the Master Disposal Box .....	247
Replacing the Print Drum (Cylinder).....	249
Removing the Print Drum (Cylinder).....	249
Installing the Print Drum (Cylinder).....	251
Disposal of Depleted Consumables .....	252

<b>Maintenance</b>	<b>254</b>
--------------------	------------

---

Cleaning .....	254
Thermal Print Head .....	255
Glass Platen and Platen Cover Pad .....	255
Scanner Glass and White Sheet of ADF unit (Option) .....	256
Pressure Roller .....	257
The Exterior .....	258

<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<b>260</b>
------------------------	------------

---

When a Message Displays .....	260
Error Message Layout .....	260
Pop-Up Message Layout .....	271
Consumable Information Screen .....	280
Troubleshooting.....	283

<b>Appendix</b>	<b>292</b>
-----------------	------------

---

Optional Accessories.....	292
Specifications .....	293
Index.....	302



---

# Welcome to the ME Series Model

This machine is a digital duplicator with the following functions.

- This machine is equipped with two color Print Drums (Cylinders), allowing anyone to easily print in two colors.
- This machine is also equipped with an LCD display and features an easy-to-use Touch Screen operated by touching buttons displayed on the screen.
- With an interactive guidance system, highly-sophisticated printer settings can be made with ease.

## About This User's Guide

This machine comes with the following four user's guides.

### ◆ RISO ME Series User's Guide (this manual)

This user's guide explains basic printer operations, handy tips, and how to set up the high-speed print function. It also contains user cautions, information on storing and changing consumables, and troubleshooting procedures.

### ◆ RISO Editor User's Guide

This user's guide explains the RISO Editor functions.

### ◆ Reference Guide NAVIGATION BOOK

This book explains the mechanisms and operational flow of Dual-Color and Easy 2Color printing, and general tips for printing in an easy-to-understand language.

### ◆ RISO Printer Driver User's Guide (included as a PDF file in the attached CD-ROM)

This user's guide explains the procedures for printing from a computer.

This manual shows you the machine's basic and advanced operations using various functions. It also contains cautionary notes, usage and replacement information on consumable supplies and troubleshooting tips. Please read this manual carefully before using this machine. Reference at any time as needed for more tips and ideas.







---

# Icons Used in This Manual

The following icons are used in this manual.

## About the Notation

The following icons are used throughout the document.

-  **WARNING:** Ignoring this warning could cause death or serious injury.
-  **Caution:** Ignoring this caution could cause injury or damage to property.
- Important!:** Indicates items that require special attention or that are prohibited actions. Read carefully and follow the directions as instructed.
- Note:** Gives you useful information.
- Tip:** Gives you additional hints for more convenience.
-  Indicates a reference page.
- [ ] Indicates a button or an item name on the LCD display.
-  Indicates which button to touch on the LCD display.
-  Indicates the original document.
-  Indicates printed copies.

# The notation for Operational Instructions and Function Descriptions

The following conventions are used to explain functions and operations.

1

2

3

Functions for Master-Making

## Functions for Master-Making


### Selecting Image Processing Mode [Image]

In order to make a master best suited for the original document, select an appropriate mode depending on the original. Originals containing only text, photo, or both of them.


**Note:**

- Default Image Processing mode can be set on the Admin. screen. →p.195

**1 Touch [Photo] on the Master Making Basic Screen.**



**2 Select the appropriate Image Processing mode for the original.**



- [Line]:** Only text contained; e.g., text document, newspaper
- [Photo]:** Only photos contained
- [Duo]:** Both text and photos contained
- [Pencil]:** Pencil drawings or lightly printed documents

Touch [Photo], [Duo] or [Pencil] to select the desired settings.

Image (Detailed settings)	Description
<b>[Photo]</b>	
Standard	Select for photos other than [Group].
Portrait	Use this setting for pictures of two individuals from the type of image processing good for printing photos.
Group	This setting is for group photos. This mode is used for restoring facial features that have become washed out by over-exposure. This mode is not effective for faces that are overly dark. More effective to select [Standard] for such photos.
<b>[Duo]</b>	
Line	Select to print small text.
Photo	Select to print photos more brightly.
Shadow off	Select to clear the background color of the dark-colored originals (such as newspaper) [Shadow off] to select [Line] and [Photo].
<b>[Pencil]</b>	
Darker	Select to print faint original drawings with shadows.
Lighter	Select to print clear original drawings with shadows.

**3 Touch [OK].**

Returns to the Master Making Basic Screen. Image Processing mode is updated.

**Note:**

- Some functions are not available in certain Image Processing mode settings.

	Line	Photo	Duo	Pencil
Dot Process	—	✓	✓	—
Contrast (Auto)	✓	—	—	—
Contrast (1-5)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Contrast Adj	—	✓	—	—
Tone Curve	—	✓	✓	✓

✓ : available    — : not available

- In the [Line] mode, when [Contrast] is set to [Auto], the background color (colour) of the original is automatically detected. →p.66

64 Selecting Image Processing Mode [Image]

65 Selecting Image Processing Mode [Image]

## 1) Chapter Title

## 2) Operation Procedure

The operational procedures are outlined in steps. Follow these steps.

## 3) Display

Shows the screen as seen at each step.

## About the content of this manual and the illustrations

- Displays are illustrated as if currently activated. Some buttons mentioned in this manual may not be available in default setting, or when the optional device is not installed.
- For the illustrations of the machine's outlines and control panels, those for the ME9350A have been used.
- The examples in this user's guide generally assume that Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is "Black" and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 is "Red".
- The optional Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II and Auto Document Feeder DX-1 are collectively described as the "ADF unit".
- In this manual, the optional memory card DM-128CF and memory card DM-512CF are collectively described as the "memory card".

### Important!:

- Measurements in the text body will be shown in both metric and inch (imperial) formats, but diagrams will show only metric measurements.

# Before Starting to Use

## Safety Guide - Installation

This section describes the precautions to be observed when installing the machine. Read this section before installing the machine.

### Note:

- Your dealer (or authorized service representative) will help you to determine a proper location for the machine at the time of delivery.

## Installation

---

### **⚠ WARNING:**

- Place the machine on the dedicated stand for this model or on a flat and stable surface (maximum of 10 mm (<sup>25</sup>/<sub>64</sub> inches) differential allowed). Injury might occur if the machine falls.

### **⚠ Caution:**

- Install the machine near the electrical outlet to avoid using an extension cord between the machine and the electrical outlet.
- Allow at least 10 cm (4 inches) or more of clearance behind the machine so that you can unplug the machine in case of technical difficulties.
- Keep the machine away from dusty environments. Failure to do so may result in fire.
- Install the machine in a well-ventilated area.

### **Important!:**

- Avoid installing the machine in the locations listed below. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to machine failure.
  - Locations with exposure to direct sunlight, such as locations close to windows (Curtain all windows that might expose the machine to direct sunlight)
  - Locations that are subject to sudden changes in temperature
  - Extremely hot and humid locations or cold and dry locations
  - Heated locations
  - Locations exposed to direct cold air, direct hot air, or direct radiant heat
  - Poorly ventilated locations

## Power connection

---

### **⚠ WARNING:**

- Use with the machine's rated voltage value. Also, plug into an electrical outlet with a capacity larger than the rated current value.  
For the rated voltage value and rated current value, check the "Power Source" entry of the Specifications at the end of this manual.
- Do not overload the electrical outlet or extension cord, nor damage the power cord by placing heavy objects on it or pulling or bending it. This can result in fire or electric shock.
- Do not pull the power cord but hold the plug itself when unplugging it. This can damage the cord and result in fire or electric shock.
- Do not plug or unplug the power cord if your hands are wet. This can result in electric shock.

**⚠ Caution:**

- Pull out the power cord plug from the electrical outlet more than once a year and clean the prongs of the plug and their surroundings. Dust collected on these areas can result in fire.

**Important!:**

- Check the power cord and plug for poor connections. Plug the power cord securely into a nearby electrical outlet.
- Be sure to turn off the POWER switch when connecting or disconnecting a cable.

## Grounding

---

**⚠ Caution:**

- Ensure a power plug with a ground conductor is inserted into the wall outlet for proper grounding.
- When the machine is not grounded, a short circuit may occur, resulting in fire or electric shock.

# Safety Guide - Handling and Operation

This section describes the precautions to be observed when handling the machine. Read this section before operating the machine.

## Operation Environment

---

### Important!:

- Operate the machine under the following appropriate environment conditions.  
Temperature range: 15°C to 30°C (59°F to 86°F)  
Humidity range: 40% to 70% (noncondensing)

## Machine Handling

---

### WARNING:

- Do not place water containers or metallic objects on the machine. Fire or electric shock may occur if water or metallic objects fall into the machine.
- Do not use combustible spray and flammable solvent near the machine.  
If sprayed gas and flammable solvent contact electronic components inside the machine, fire or electric shock might occur.
- Do not insert any metallic material or flammable substance into the machine through any opening. This can result in fire or electric shock.
- Do not remove machine covers. Exposing internal parts may result in electric shock.
- Do not disassemble or rebuild the machine by yourself. This can result in fire or electric shock.
- If the machine emits excessive heat, smoke or foul odor, immediately turn off the POWER, unplug the power cord and contact your service representative. Failure to do so can result in fire or electric shock.
- If something drops inside the machine, immediately turn off the POWER, unplug the power cord and contact your service representative. Failure to do so can result in fire or electric shock.
- Never stick your hands or fingers in the openings of the machine during operation.
- Keep loose clothing or long hair away from moving parts to avoid becoming entangled.
- Do not place heavy objects on the machine. The objects might fall and cause injury.
- Contact your service representative before moving the machine.

### Caution:

- Never insert fingers, etc. into the openings around Paper Feed Tray and Paper Receiving Tray. This can result in injury.
- Do not touch the moving parts of the machine. This may cause injury.
- When you insert a hand inside the machine to remove paper, etc., be careful not to touch protruding objects or the edges of the plates. This may cause injury.
- Be careful not to touch the areas around the Print Drum (Cylinder) or inside the machine when the Print Drum (Cylinder) is removed, as ink may be present on those areas.  
When ink has stuck to your hands, etc., wash it off with detergent as soon as possible.
- The tips of the paper separation hook and master removal hook are sharp. When you insert a hand inside the machine to remove paper, be careful not to touch the paper separation hook or master removal hook. This may cause injury.
- Do not open any covers or move the machine during operation.
- Unplug the power cord, if you do not use the machine for a long time.
- The machine has precision parts and driving parts inside. Do not handle the machine in other ways than described in this manual.
- Do not subject the machine to physical shock.
- Do not stand the Print Drum (Cylinder) vertically. Doing so may pollute the floor, etc.
- Allow plenty of ventilation during printing.

### Important!:

- Do not unplug the power cord or turn off the power during operation.
- Be sure to open and close all machine covers gently.

## USB Flash Drive

### Important!:

- Use a USB Flash Drive that is compatible with the Mass Storage Class. Depending on the types of USB Flash Drive, the machine may not work properly.
- When connecting or disconnecting the USB Flash Drive, follow the proper procedures.
- We cannot guarantee data saved in the USB Flash Drive against loss caused by accidents or unforeseen events. We recommend that you use your computer to make back-up copies of any important documents.

## Consumables

### Important!:

- For Ink and Master Roll, it is recommended to use the products specified by Riso.
- Genuine RISO Inks and Master Roll are engineered for maximum performance and maximum life. However, all supplies can and do deteriorate over time. We recommend that you use Ink and Master Roll as soon as possible after purchase, and within 18 months from the date of manufacturing. You can find the date of manufacturing on the Ink Cartridge or the inside of Master Core.
- Store the consumables such as Master Roll and Ink properly.  
Do not store the consumables in the following places:
  - Locations that are subject to direct sunlight or bright locations that are close to windows (If there is no other choice, curtain the window.)
  - Locations that are subject to rapid changes in temperature
  - Extremely hot and humid locations or extremely cold and dry locations
 For more details, please read the packaging of the consumables.

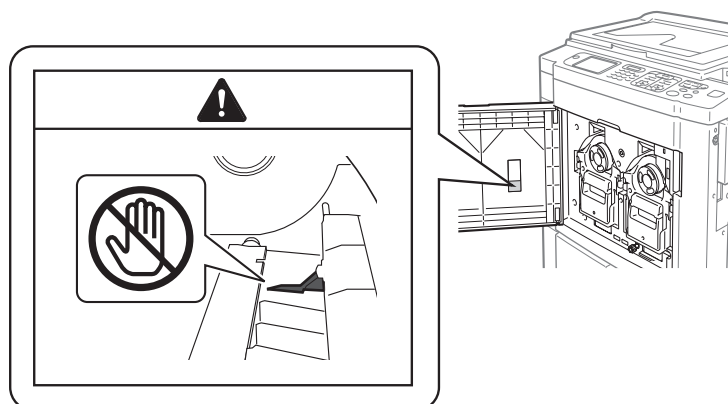
## Ink Handling

### ⚠ Caution:

- If Ink gets into your eyes, flush it out immediately with plenty of water. If irritation continues, seek medical attention.
- If Ink comes into contact with your skin, wash it off thoroughly using soap.
- If someone swallows Ink by mistake, force large quantities of water (or milk) without inducing vomiting, and watch his/her condition.
- Allow plenty of ventilation during printing.
- If you feel unwell during use, seek medical advice.
- Only use the Ink for printing purposes.
- Keep the Ink out of the reach of children.

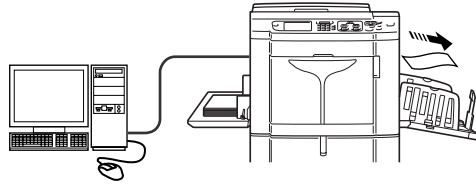
## Location of ⚠ Caution Label

This machine has a ⚠ caution label meant to ensure safe operation. Follow the indication of the label and use the machine safely.



# Connection with a Computer

You can directly send original printing data from a connected computer to the machine. The machine produces outstanding prints as a result of using digital data to make a master.



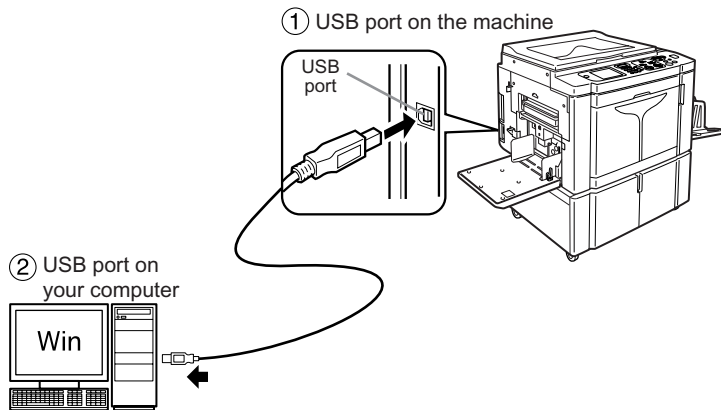
## Connection Method

### Important!:

- Before connecting the USB, turn on the machine and computer, and wait until the initial screen is displayed.
- Before making the Ethernet connections, turn off the machine and computer.
- The maximum allowable voltage for USB connector input and output is 5 V.
- For the USB connections, use a commercially available USB cable (that conforms to the USB 2.0 standard).

### ◆ One-to-one connection with a Windows PC

- Cable:  
USB cable  
Less than 3m (10 feet) Hi-Speed USB

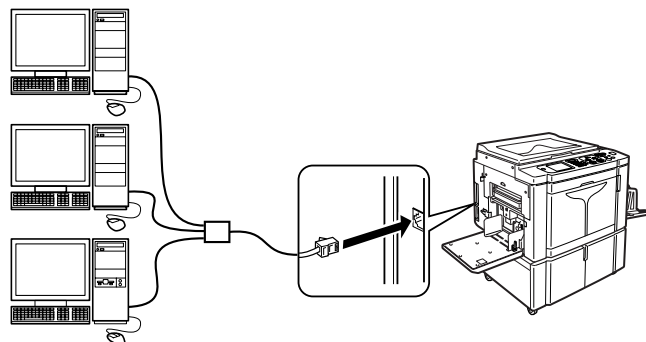


### ◆ Network connections

- Cable:  
Ethernet cable  
Shielded cable that supports 10BASE-T  
or 100BASE-TX

#### Note:

- The optional RISO Network Card is required.





---

## Software Installation

---

Before printing from a computer connected to the machine via a USB cable, the RISO Printer Driver must be installed. Before printing from a computer connected to the machine via a network, both the RISO Printer Driver and RISO Network Card must be installed. Refer to the Printer Driver User's Guide and RISO Network Card User's Guide for instructions on installation.

**Note:**

- RISO Network Card is an option.

The software supplied with this machine is as follows:

**◆ RISO Printer Driver**

RISO Printer Drivers are for use with RISO Printers only.

Before setup, be sure to read the User's Guide carefully.

The User's Guide can be found as a PDF file\* in the CD-ROM which came with the RISO Printer.

\*To be able to view PDF format files, it is necessary for either Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat Reader to be installed.

Adobe Reader or Adobe Acrobat Reader software can be freely downloaded from the Adobe website (<http://www.adobe.com/>).

**◆ RISO Utility Software**

The software package includes the "RISO USB PRINT MANAGER" and "RISO COPY COUNT VIEWER".

- "RISO USB PRINT MANAGER"  
Application that manages the original data stored in the USB Flash Drive on the computer.
- "RISO COPY COUNT VIEWER"  
Application that manages the counter data (number of prints, masters, etc.) output to the USB Flash Drive on the computer.

# Paper Recommendations

## Size and Weight Restrictions

The table shows the specifications of the usable print paper.

Print Colors/Used Print Drum (Cylinder)	Usable Printing Paper		
	Size		Weight
	Minimum Size	Maximum Size	
Mono-Color Print with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1	100 mm × 148 mm (3 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " × 5 <sup>13</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " )	320 mm × 432 mm* (12 <sup>19</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 17")*	46 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 210 g/m <sup>2</sup> (12-lb bond to 110-lb index)
Mono-Color Print with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2	182 mm × 257 mm (7 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 10 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " ) (B5)		
Dual-Color Print			

\*Up to 555 mm (21<sup>27</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" ) of vertical paper dimension may be used when the machine is on "Extended Paper" mode  
 ↗ p.204, ↗ p.205

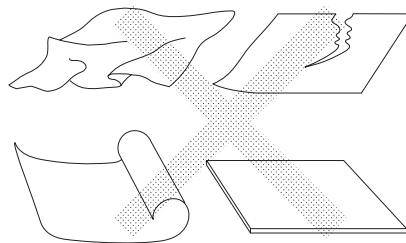
If Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is removed and Mono-Color printing is performed with Drum (Cylinder) 2 at a print speed of "High Speed", paper of 364 mm (14<sup>11</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" ) to 432 mm (17" ) in the vertical paper dimension can be used.

### Important!:

- Even when using paper whose sizes and weight are supported by the machine, it may not pass through the machine depending on factors such as the paper quality, ambient conditions, and storage conditions. For more information, consult your dealer (or authorized service representative).

Do not use the following types of paper, as they can cause jams or misfeeds:

- Extremely thin paper (less than 46 g/m<sup>2</sup> (12-lb bond))
- Extremely thick or heavy paper (greater than 210 g/m<sup>2</sup> (110-lb index))
- Wrinkled, curled, folded, or torn paper
- Chemically treated or coated paper (such as thermal or carbon paper)
- Paper having a sticky section or holes (such as an envelope and label paper)



### Note:

- Paper with a horizontal grain direction can cause problems with paper pass. Use paper with a vertical grain direction.
- Images are not output onto the entire area of usable print paper. ↗ p.19
- When using poorly cut paper or coarse surfaced paper (drawing paper, etc.), arrange the paper neatly before use.
- Depending on the type of paper used, paper dust may be generated when using the machine. Please clean and ventilate the area adequately.

Riso does not assure that paper outside the above specifications can pass through the machine and can be used for printing.

## Tips for Better Paper Feeding

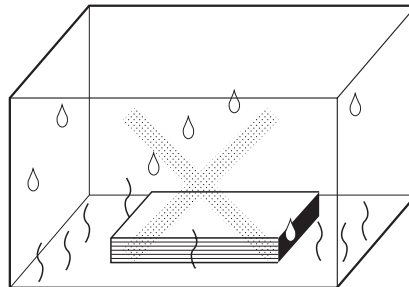
To prevent paper jams and misfeeds, follow the directions below:

- When using standard or light-weight paper, set the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever to “NORMAL” (✕). Then open all four Paper Arrangers. [p.39](#), [p.40](#)
- When using thick paper (such as card stock), set the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever to “CARD” (⊠), and open the two inner Paper Arrangers. [p.39](#), [p.40](#)
- When using slippery paper, set the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever to “CARD” (⊠). [p.39](#)
- Slide the Feed Tray Paper Guides, Receiving Tray Paper Guides, and Paper Stopper to fit the paper size. [p.39](#), [p.40](#)
- Use flat printing paper that is free of folds. If curled paper is unavoidable, place the printing paper so that the inner curled part faces down.
- Paper may stick to the Print Drum (Cylinder) surface if the top margin is too narrow on the original or if the upper portion of the original uses a large amount of ink. To solve this problem, lower the print position to provide a wider top margin or reverse the top and bottom of the original. Then restart printing from the beginning.

## Storing Environment

Store the printing paper in a level, dry area. Storing the paper in an excessively humid area can result in paper jams or poor print quality.

After unpacking the printing paper, keep the remaining paper wrapped and store it in a moisture-proof box. It is highly recommended to put silica gel in the paper storage box.



# Originals

## Size and Weight Restrictions

Usable originals are as follows.

Used Device Name	Size	Weight
Glass Platen	50 mm × 90 mm to 310 mm × 432 mm (1 <sup>31</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 3 <sup>17</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " to 12 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 17")	Max. 10 kg (22 lb)
Document Feeder AF-VI:II (Option)	100 mm × 148 mm to 310 mm × 432 mm (3 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " × 5 <sup>13</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " to 12 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 17")	50 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13-lb bond to 34-lb bond)
Document Feeder DX-1 (Option)	105 mm × 128 mm to 297 mm × 432 mm (4 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " × 5 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " to 11 <sup>11</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " × 17")	The weight differs depending on the setting on the scanning side. <b>&lt;Front Side -&gt; Simplex&gt;</b> 40 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (11-lb bond to 34-lb bond) <b>&lt;Back Side -&gt; Simplex or Duplex -&gt; Simplex&gt;</b> 52 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (14-lb bond to 28-lb bond)

- Originals are scanned according to the size of paper placed on the Paper Feed Tray when masters are made. Position the Feed Tray Paper Guides to the same width as the original.  
When the paper placed is smaller than the original, the entire original will not be scanned.  
When the placed paper is larger than an original, dirt on the glass or shade of the original, may result in unexpected dirt in the area beyond the size of the original.
- Make sure to leave a margin of 5 mm (<sup>3</sup>/<sub>16</sub>" ) or more at the top of the original. When printing on paper the same size as the original at the same magnification, make sure to leave margins at all sides. [p.19](#).
- Bound originals can also be used on the Glass Platen.
- You can automatically feed up to 50\* original sheets when using the optional ADF (Auto Document Feeder) unit.  
\*When originals of 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond) or less are used.

### Note:

- Use the Glass Platen when printing the following originals:
  - Patched or worn originals
  - Wrinkled, curled, folded, or torn originals
  - Transparent originals (such as tracing paper or OHP transparencies)
  - Chemically treated originals (such as thermal or carbon paper)
  - Originals with correction fluid or glue
  - Extremely thin originals  
Using the optional Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II: less than 50 g/m<sup>2</sup> (13-lb bond)  
Using the optional Auto Document Feeder DX-1:  
less than 40 g/m<sup>2</sup> (11-lb bond) (Front Side -> Simplex) / less than 52 g/m<sup>2</sup> (14-lb bond) (Duplex -> Simplex)
  - Extremely thick originals  
Using the optional Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II: greater than 128 g/m<sup>2</sup> (34-lb bond)  
Using the optional Auto Document Feeder DX-1:  
greater than 128 g/m<sup>2</sup> (34-lb bond) (Front Side -> Simplex) / greater than 105 g/m<sup>2</sup> (28-lb bond) (Duplex -> Simplex)
  - Heavy drawing paper
  - Originals with staples or clips
- If an original is wrinkled, curled, or creased flatten it thoroughly so that the originals can be pressed directly onto the Glass Platen during processing.
- If correction fluid or glue is used on an original, thoroughly dry it before placement.
- If an original is patched with a thick paper, the shade of the patched paper may also be printed.

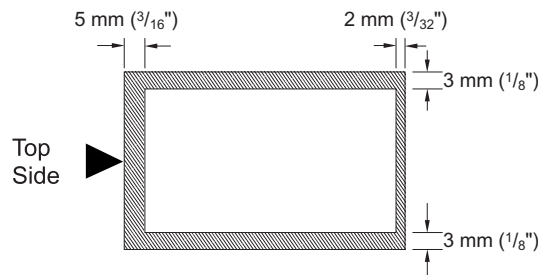
## Maximum Printing Areas and Margins

The maximum printing areas are as follows.

Model	Drum (Cylinder) Size	Maximum Printing Area	Usable Maximum Print Paper Size
ME 9450	Ledger	291 mm × 425 mm (11 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 16 <sup>23</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " )	320 mm × 432 mm (12 <sup>19</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 17")
	Letter	291 mm × 203 mm (11 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 8")	
ME 9350/6350	A3	291 mm × 413 mm (11 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 16 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>4</sub> " )	
	A4	291 mm × 203 mm (11 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " × 8")	

### Important!:

- Even when paper of maximum size (320 mm x 432 mm) (12<sup>19</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" x 17") or Ext.Paper (top-bottom length up to 555 mm (21<sup>27</sup>/<sub>32</sub>")) is used, printing is performed within the maximum printing areas mentioned above.
- Regardless of the size of the original, the printing area is decided by the paper size set in the Paper Feed Tray. The printing area is the printing paper size excluding the margins shown in the figure below. The original needs to be prepared with advanced consideration for the margins.

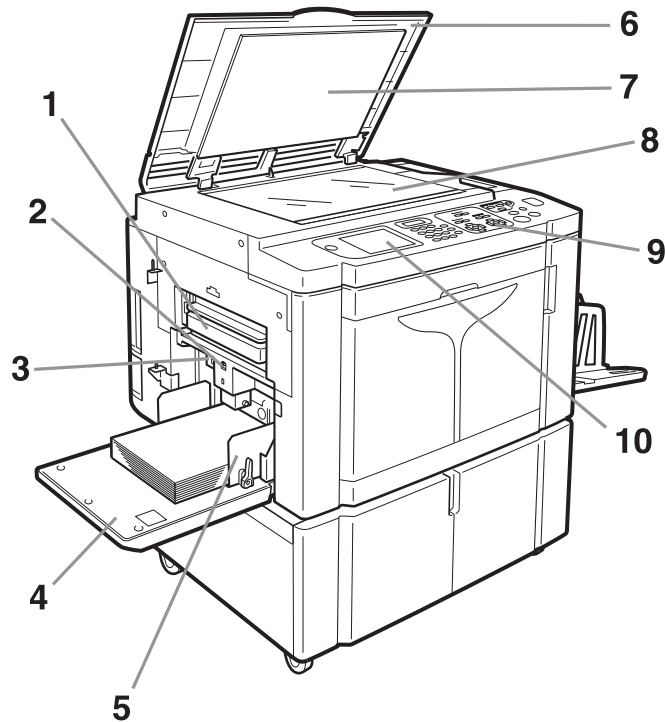


## Materials Not to Be Printed

Do not use the machine in any manner which violates the laws or infringes on established copyrights, even when making copies for personal use. Consult your local authorities for further details. In general, use discretion and common sense.

# Getting Acquainted

## Function and Name of Each Part



**1) Master Disposal Box 1** (☞p.247)

Holds discarded masters.

**2) Feed Tray Ascent / Descent Button** (☞p.39)

Lowers the Paper Feed Tray when changing or adding paper.

**3) Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever**  
(☞p.39)

Adjusts the paper feed pressure according to the paper in use.

**4) Paper Feed Tray** (☞p.38)

Load print paper on this tray.

**5) Feed Tray Paper Guides** (☞p.38)

Holds and guides paper.  
Slide to fit to the sides of paper.

**6) Platen Cover**

Opened and closed when placing the original.

**7) Platen Cover Pad** (☞p.255)

**8) Glass Platen** (☞p.42, ☞p.255)

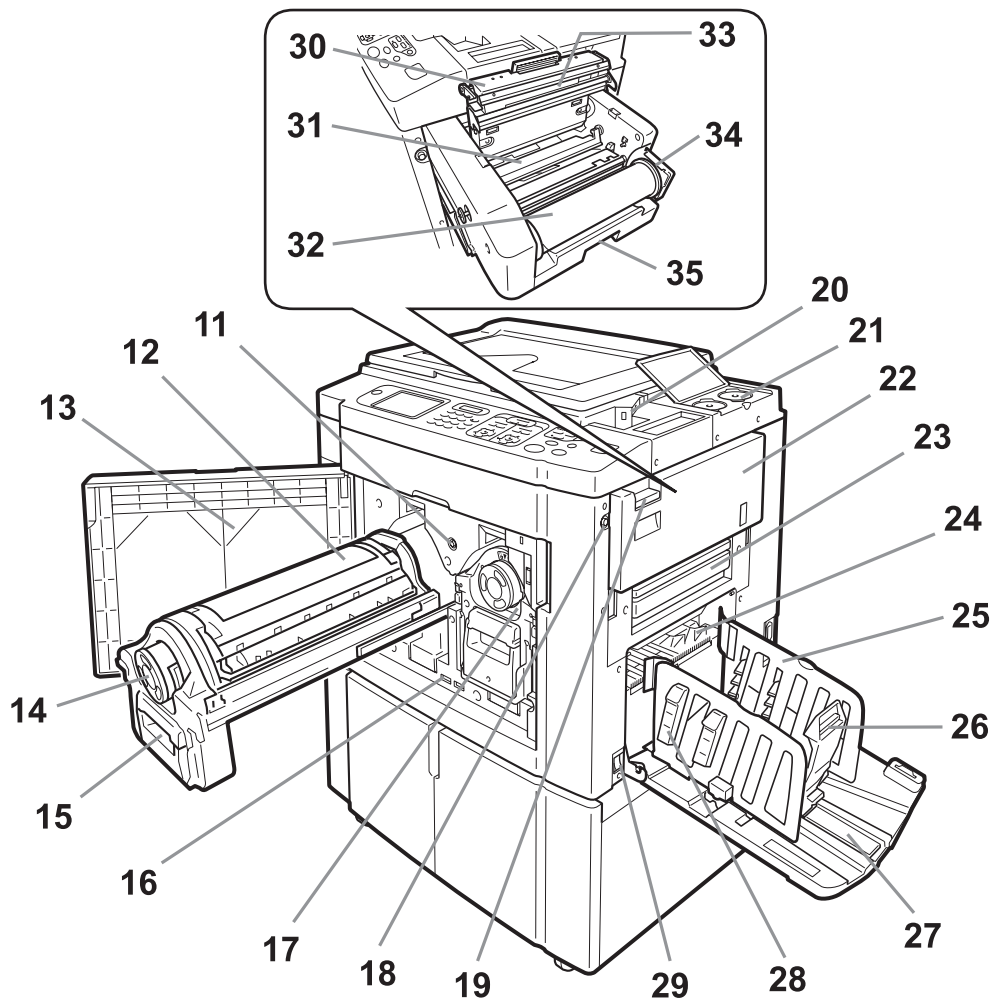
Place the original face-down.

**9) Control Panel** (☞p.24, ☞p.25)

Press the keys to perform various print operations.

**10) Display** (☞p.26 ~p.33)

Displays various screens needed for print operations.  
Touch the buttons on the screen to execute various print operations.



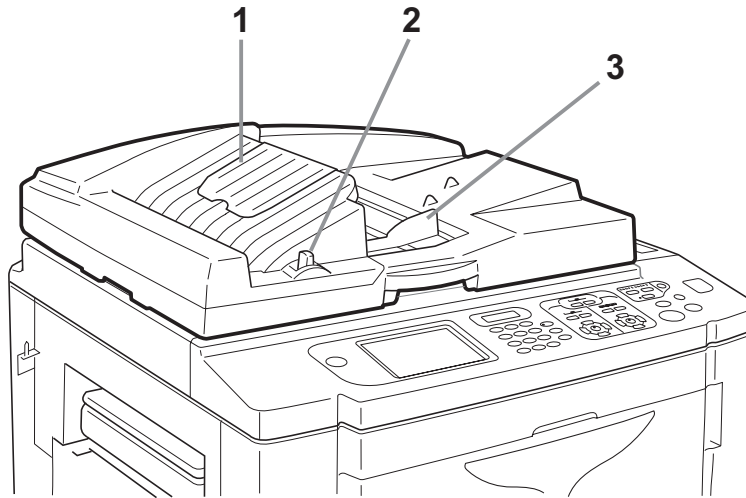
- 11) Print Drum (Cylinder) Release Button (p.249)**  
Unlocks the Print Drum (Cylinder) for removal.
- 12) Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 (p.249)**
- 13) Front Cover**
- 14) Ink Cartridge (p.245)**
- 15) Print Drum (Cylinder) Handle (p.249)**
- 16) Counter**  
Counts the number of copies (total print counter) and the number of masters made (master counter).
- 17) Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 (p.249)**
- 18) Master Making Unit Release Button (p.242)**  
Unlocks the Master Making Unit for removal.
- 19) Master Making Unit Removal Lever (p.242)**  
Grasp the lever to open the Master Making Unit Removal Cover.
- 20) USB Slot (p.53)**  
Connect the USB Flash Drive.
- 21) Ink Cartridge Cap Holders (p.246)**  
Secure the Ink Cartridge cap.
- 22) Master Making Unit Removal Cover (p.242)**  
Once the cover is open, the Master Making Unit can be removed.
- 23) Master Disposal Box 2 (p.247)**
- 24) Paper Jumping Wing (p.123)**  
Automatically adjusts to keep the printed paper neatly stacked.
- 25) Receiving Tray Paper Guides (p.40)**  
Aligns the printed paper neatly.  
Slide according to the width of paper to be printed.
- 26) Paper Stopper (p.40)**  
Slide to adjust to the length of print paper size.
- 27) Paper Receiving Tray (p.40)**  
Printed copies are output to this tray.
- 28) Paper Arranger (p.40)**  
Press to open for aligning the printed paper.
- 29) Power Switch (p.38)**
- 30) Master Making Unit Cover (p.242)**  
Open and close to install the Master Roll.
- 31) Master Guide Flap (p.243)**
- 32) Master Roll (p.242)**
- 33) Thermal Print Head (p.255)**
- 34) Master Roll Holder (p.243)**
- 35) Master Making Unit Handle (p.242)**  
Use the lever to pull out the Master Making Unit.

## Optional Devices

---

### Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II

The Feeder can hold approximately 50 original sheets (80 g/m<sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond)). Place the original face-down. (☞ p.43)



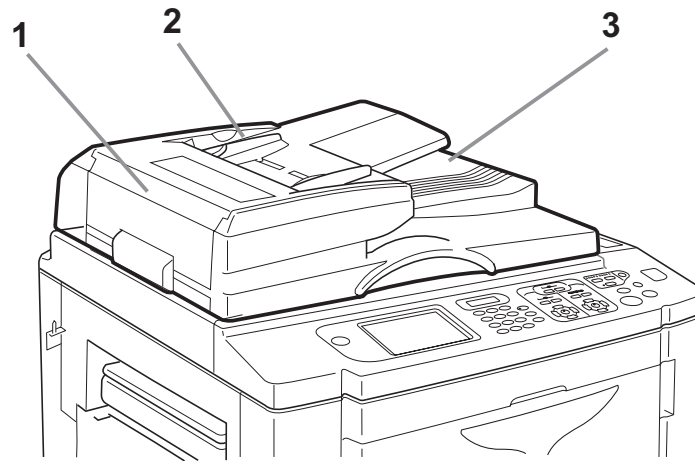
- 1) ADF Original Receiving Tray**  
Scanned originals are ejected into this tray.
- 2) ADF Original Release Lever (☞ p.267)**  
If an original is jammed, pull this lever to the right to eject it from the ADF unit.
- 3) ADF Original Guides**  
Slide and adjust to the width of the originals to hold them together.



## Auto Document Feeder DX-1

The Feeder can hold approximately 50 original sheets (80 g/m<sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond)). (☞ p.43)

Both sides of the original can be scanned automatically. Select the side (front or reverse) to be scanned. (☞ p.180)



**1) ADF Cover (☞ p.268)**

Jammed or misfed originals can be removed from the ADF unit by opening this cover.

**2) ADF Original Guides**

Slide and adjust to the width of the originals to hold them together.

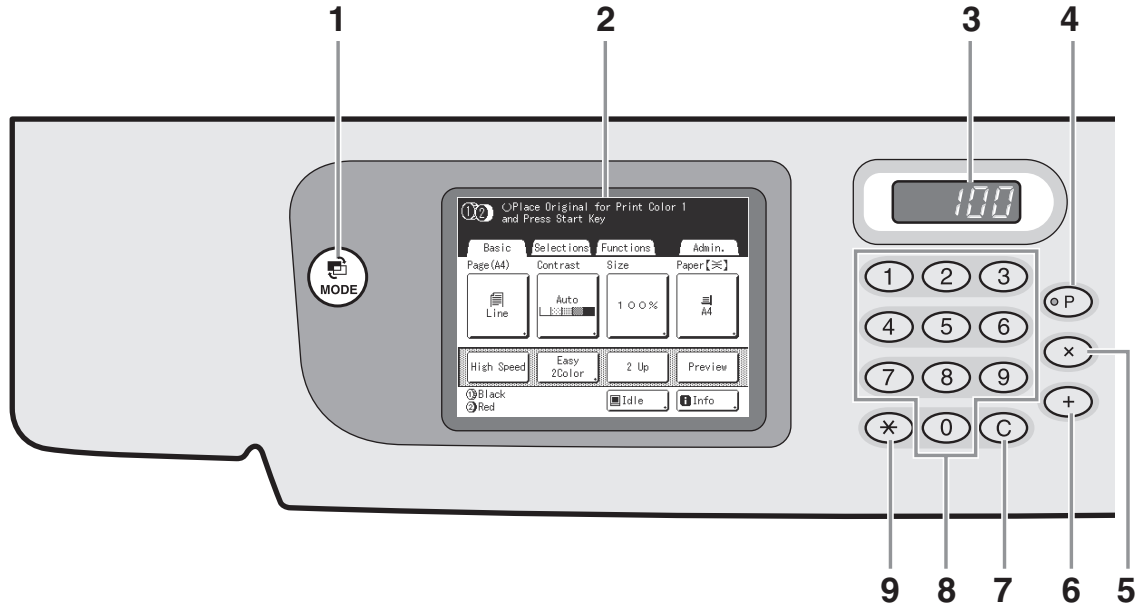
**3) ADF Original Receiving Tray**

Scanned originals are ejected into this tray.

# Control Panel

The Control Panel features permanent keys such as  and . It also has a large-size display that shows various messages and function buttons.

This section describes hardware key names and functions, as well as the display window and its functions.



## 1) MODE Key

Use to change modes.

## 2) Display (☞p.26~p.33)

## 3) Print Quantity Display

Displays the number of copies, or numeric values entered for various settings.

## 4) P Key (☞p.151)

Use to retrieve stored programs. The indicator on the key lights up when set.

## 5) × Key (☞p.151)

Use to move between the fields on Setup Screens, or set up programmed printing.

## 6) + Key (☞p.151)

Use to move between the fields on Setup Screens, or set up programmed printing.

## 7) C Key

Cancels the entered numerical values, or resets the counter to 0.

## 8) Print Quantity Keys (0 to 9 Keys)

Use to enter the number of copies, or the numerical values for various settings.

## 9) \* Key (☞p.151, ☞p.163)

Use to move between the items on a Setup Screen, or retrieve the stored memory.

## 10) Print Speed Adjustment Keys / Indicator (☞p.114)

Select the print speed from five levels.

The indicator above the keys shows the current speed level.

## 11) Print Density Adjustment Keys / Indicator (For Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, For Print Drum (Cylinder) 2) (☞p.116)


Select the print density from five levels.

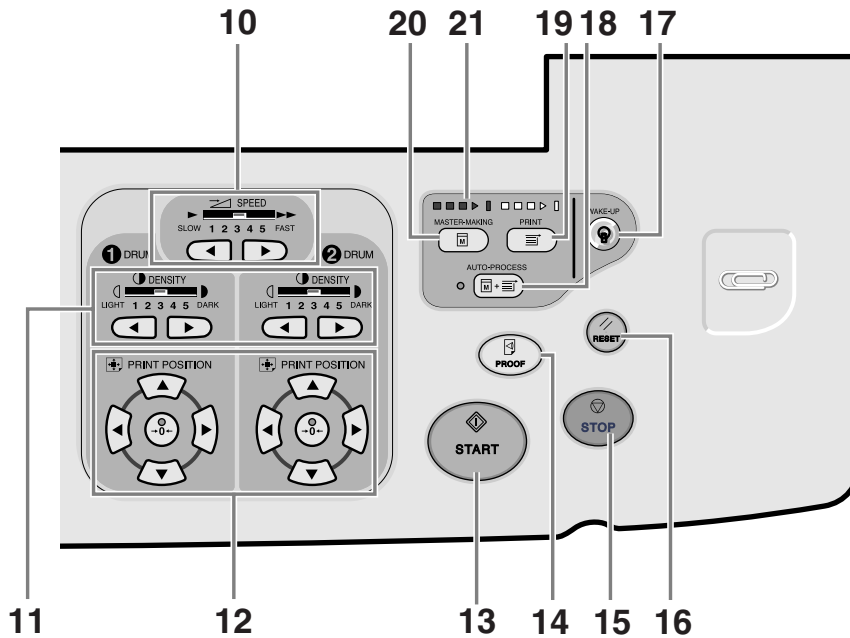
The indicator above the keys shows the current density level.

## 12) Print Position Adjustment Keys / Indicator (For Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, For Print Drum (Cylinder) 2) (☞p.117)

Adjust the print position in the vertical direction (within  $\pm 15$  mm ( $\pm 19/32$ ")) and/or in the horizontal direction (within  $\pm 10$  mm ( $\pm 25/64$ ")) after making a master.

The indicator above the keys shows the offset amount from the center.

To clear the offset amount, press .



**13) Start Key**

Starts master-making, print processing, or executes specified operations.  
The key lights up only when the key is active.

**14) Proof Key (p.120)**

Use when you want to check the print result after adjusting the print position, for example.  
This allows you to print proof copies without affecting the value on the Print Quantity Display.

**15) Stop Key**

Stops current operation in progress. During the master-making procedure, the machine will not stop until the master-making process is completed.

**16) Reset Key**

Returns all settings to the initial settings.

**17) Wake-Up Key**

Wakes up the printer in Energy Saving mode.  
Also use this key to log out from the machine.

**18) Auto-Process Key (p.72)**

Performs non-stop operation from master-making through printing. When activated, the indicator besides the key lights up.

**19) Print Key**

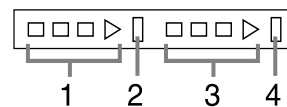
Makes the printer ready for printing.

**20) Master-Making Key**

Makes the printer ready for making masters.

**21) Progress Arrows**

Indicates master-making and printing progress status.



- 1) Master-Making Indicator
- 2) Master-Making Stop Bar
- 3) Print Indicator
- 4) Printing Stop Bar

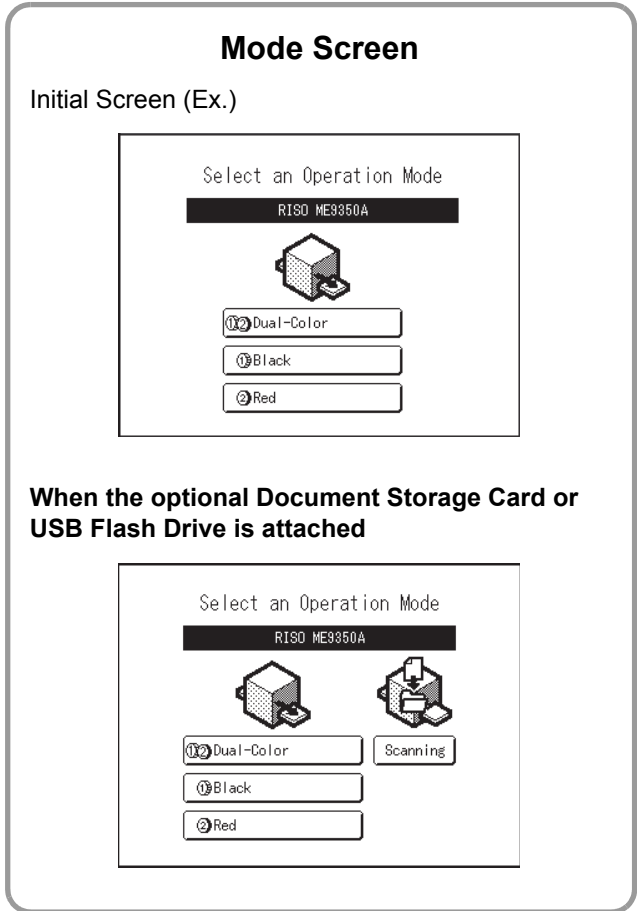
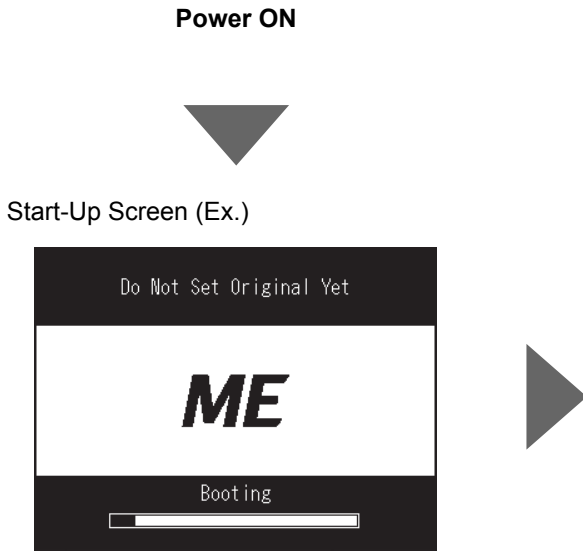
Ready to make a master (Auto ON): when 1 is lightening  
Ready to make a master: when 1,2 are lightening  
Ready to print: when 3,4 are lightening  
The indicator increases one bar at a time from the left, indicating the progress of the current master-making or printing job.

- Indicator 1 or 3 blinks during the master-making/printing operation.
- If a master-making or printing job is halted, the progress bar stays lit at that position. (Ready to resume)



# Display

## The Screens and their Various Stages

When the power is turned on, after a brief display of the Start-Up Screen, the initial screen appears.

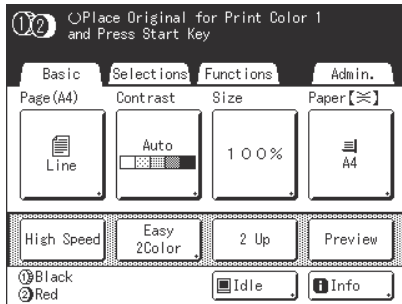


**Note:**

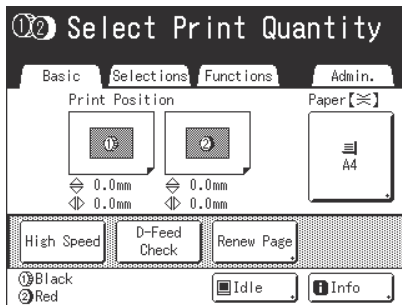
- Start-Up Screen settings  
Select **[Start-Up Screen]** on the Admin. Screen.
- Initial Screen settings  
You can select **[Mode Screen]**, **[Dual-Color]**, **[Color]**, **[Color]** or **[Scanning]** as the initial screen to best suit your needs.  
Select **[Display Priority]** on the Admin. Screen.  
Refer to the following pages for more information about the different type of initial screen.
- About the  key  
By pressing the  key, you can switch between the **[Mode Screen]** and **[Basic Screen]**.

## Basic Screen

Touch **[MasterMake]** to display the Master Making Basic Screen.



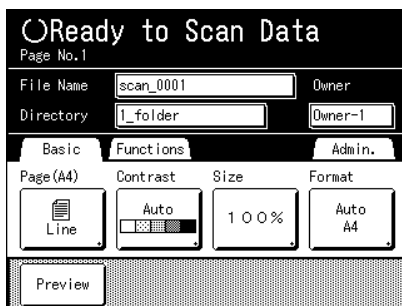
Touch **[Printing]** to display the Print Basic Screen.



### Note:

- The diagrams above show the Basic Screen for Dual-Color printing. The screen for Mono-Color printing is different.

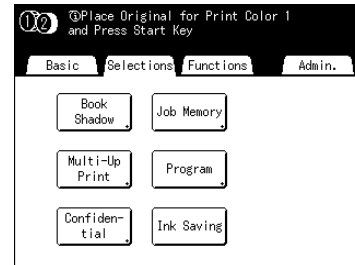
Touch **[Scanning]** to display the Scan Basic Screen.



## Other Screens

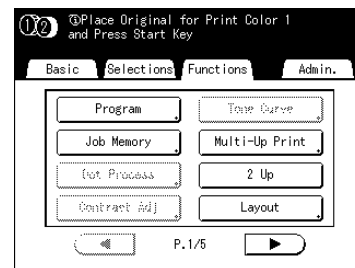
### ◆ Selections Screen

Quickly change the settings for a function or open its screen.



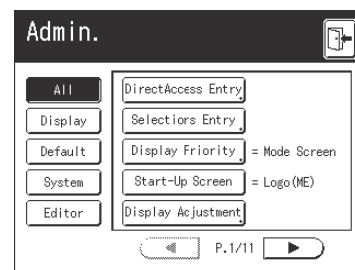
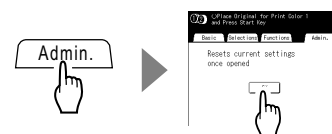
### ◆ Functions Screen

Access to a variety of functions.



### ◆ Admin. Screen

Changes the default values of various functions.



### Note:

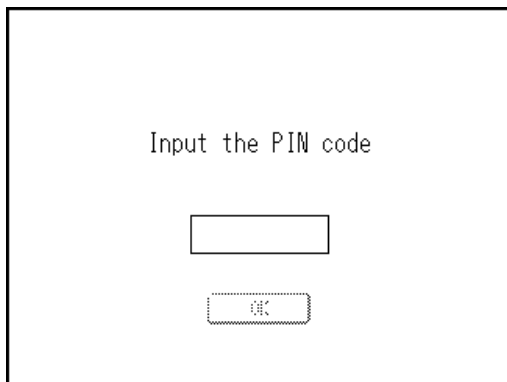
- Depending upon the usage environment, some of the "Admin." features may not be available ("Admin." tab may not be displayed). Consult your dealer (or authorized service representative) for details.

**Tip:**

**About the Recognition Screen**

This machine is equipped with a User Management function. (p.130, p.196 “Admin.”). If “User Management” is set, the Recognition Screen is displayed. If one of the screens shown below is displayed, input the PIN Code or connect the registered USB Flash Drive. Consult your administrator for the PIN Code and the registered USB Flash Drive.

**PIN Code Input Screen**

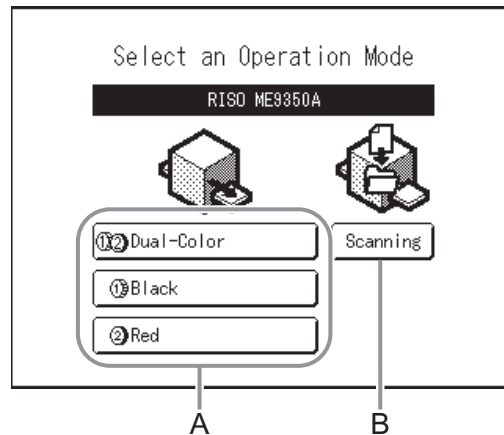


**Registered USB Flash Drive Screen**



## About Modes

Touch the Mode button on the Mode Screen to view the basic screens of various modes.



### A) Print Mode

When you touch the **1/2** button, you can perform Dual-Color Printing using Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

When you touch the **1** button, you can perform Mono-Color printing using only Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

When you touch the **2** button, you can perform Mono-Color printing using only Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

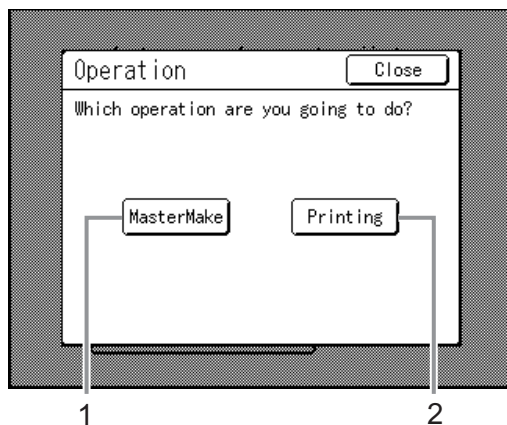
The button displays the color of the set Print Drum (Cylinder).

#### Note:

- When the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, **A4/Lttr** is displayed next to the **1** button.
- The A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) cannot be set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.
- If the Print Drums (Cylinders) 1 and 2 that are set in the machine are of the same color, the **1/2** button cannot be selected.
- If the Print Drums (Cylinders) 1 and 2 that are set in the machine are of the same color and drum size, the **2** button cannot be selected.

◆ **Selection of the operation**

On the Operation Screen displayed after selecting the Print Mode, you can select the operation of the machine (the operation that you are going to perform).



**1) Master Make**

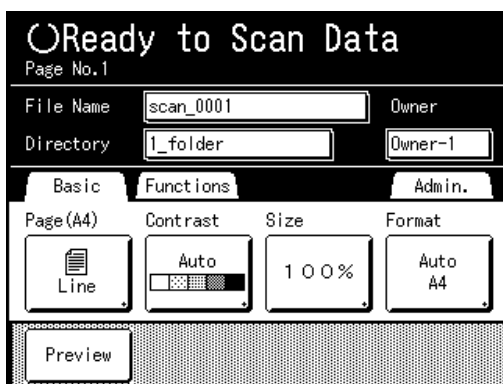
Scan the original set on the Glass Platen and make a master.

**2) Printing**

Print with the master currently on the Print Drum (Cylinder). Select **[Printing]** when the master-making operation is not required further after the completion of master-making.

**B) Scan Mode**

This mode scans the original set on the Glass Platen and stores the scanned data in Storage Memory.



This setting is available when the optional Document Storage Card or USB Flash Drive is attached. The data in Storage Memory can be edited using Editor functions. See "Converting Hard-copies into Stored Data (Scan Mode)" (p.214) for information on the Scan Mode.



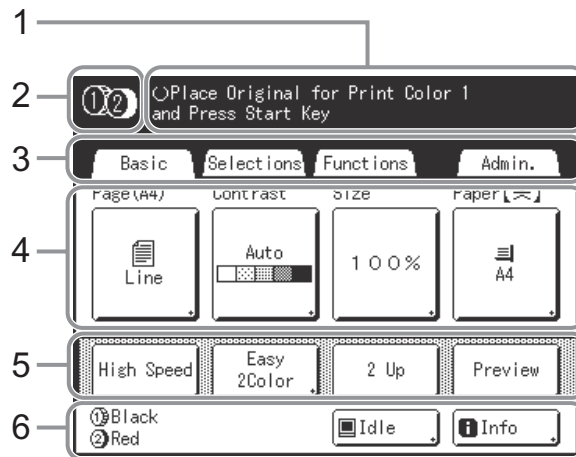
## Basic Screen Layout

The name and function of each area of all Basic Screens are described below. The display of the Basic Screen differs depending on whether you are printing from a paper document or printing from a computer.

### Note:

- For information on other screens and their functions or settings, refer to corresponding pages.

## Printing from a Paper Document



### 1) Message Area

Displays the printer status and operational instructions. If functions such as Program (p.147) or Ink Saving are used to print, the program information and/or function icons are displayed.

### 2) Mode display area

Displays the current printing mode with an icon.

① or ②: Mono-Color printing mode only by Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 or Print Drum (Cylinder) 2

①②: Dual-Color printing mode

### 3) Tab Area

Touch a tab to display its screen.

### 4) Functions Area

Displays the main functions for master-making/printing steps.

Each button shows the current setting.

Touch the relevant button to make the necessary changes.

### 5) Direct Access Area

Up to four buttons can be registered in advance. Use this area to register the most frequently-used functions.

You can register them on the Admin. Screen.

p.202

### 6) Status Area

Displays the current status of the machine.

① / ②: Color of the currently installed Print Drums (Cylinders).

A4 / Letter: Displays if the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

Pause: Displays the status of data sent from a computer.

Touch to display the list of data being received.

- **[Idle]**: Ready to receive data.
- **[Data-Map]**: Processing data for printing.
- **[Pause]**: Ready for output.
- **[Error]**: Error in data transmission.
- **[Blocked]**: Cannot receive data.

Info: Touch to display information (consumables information, Disposable Box Space, Print Drum (Cylinder) information, date/time, My Counter).  
p.240

## Printing from a Computer Data



**1) Tab Area**  
 (“Selections” and “Admin.” tabs are disabled)

Touch a tab to display its screen.

**2) Job Properties Area**

Properties of the current print job are displayed.  
 Refers to the computer data ready for print output.

**3) Job Operation Area**

- **[Renew Page]:** Create another master when current one is damaged or compromised, without having to download data from the computer.
- **[Preview]:** Displays the master making image of the page currently awaiting creation.
- **[Skip Page]:** Stops processing the current page and moves on to process the next page.
- **[Clear All]:** Stops the current process altogether.

**4) Paper Button**

☞ p.71

**5) Process**

A printing operation can be set to stop at certain points. (overrides driver settings)

**6) Optional Device Area**

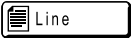
Displays when an optional device is attached.  
 Touch to activate.

**7) Status Area**

Displays the current status of the machine.  
 This area shows the same information as that on the “Printing from the Original Document” Screen. (☞ p.31)

# Buttons on Touch Screen

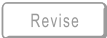
Select buttons by lightly touching with a finger.  
Touch again to cancel the selection. Avoid pressing the buttons with excessive force.



Not Selected.



Selected.

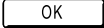


Grayed out buttons cannot be selected.

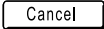


Press the button with a + on the right side to expand the options or display Setup Screens.

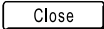
## Frequently Used Buttons



Activates/Executes a setting.



Cancels a setting.



Closes the current window.



Switches between the pages.



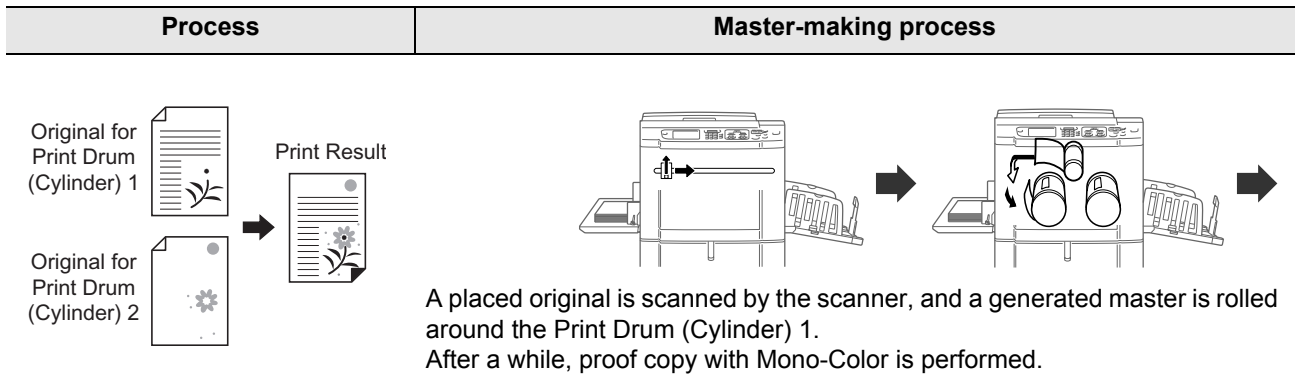
Increases/decreases selected values (numbers, location, etc.).  
Scrolls through the screens.

# Basic Process for Dual-Color Printing

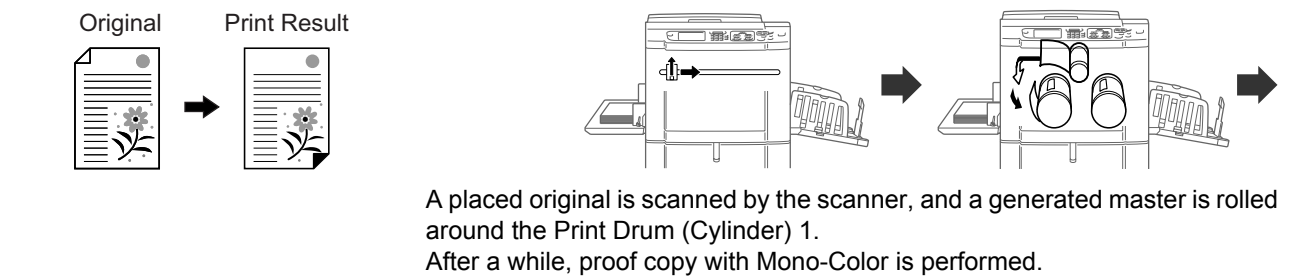
Dual-Color Printing with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 (Black) and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 (Color).  
There are three methods for Dual Color Printing:

- Printing with 2 originals separated by color (For Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2).
- Printing by separating the colors of a single original.
- Printing from computer data.

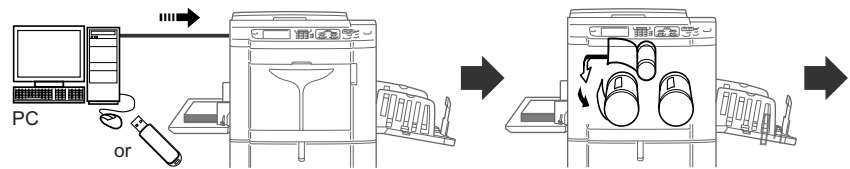
## For Dual-Color printing with 2 originals:



## For Dual-Color printing with a single original (using Easy 2Color):

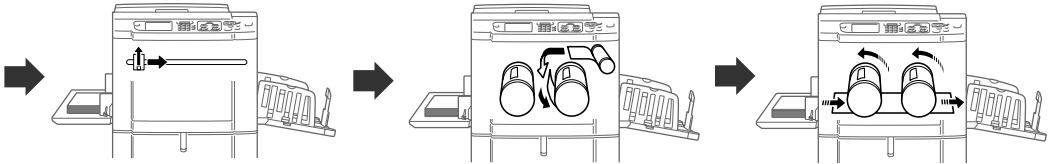


## For Dual-Color printing from computer data:

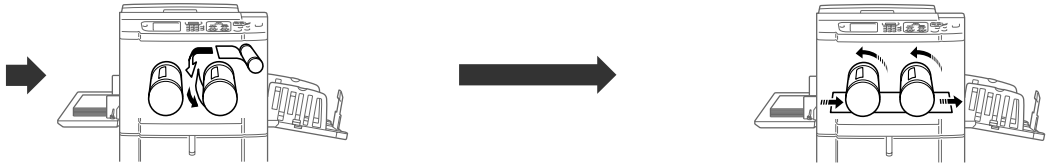


Transfer the original data created on computer to the machine via a network or USB Flash Drive. The generated master is rolled around the Print Drum (Cylinder) 1. After a while, a proof copy with Mono-Color is performed.

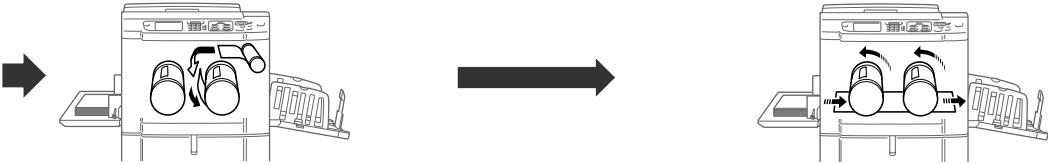
Master-making process	Printing process
-----------------------	------------------



Place the second original. A placed original is scanned by the scanner, and a generated master is rolled around the Print Drum (Cylinder) 2. After a while, proof copy with Dual-Color printing is printed. After checking the print result, enter the number of copies to be printed and start printing.



The generated master is rolled around the Print Drum (Cylinder) 2. After a while, proof copy with Dual-Color printing is printed. After checking the print result, enter the number of copies to be printed and start printing.



The generated master is rolled around the Print Drum (Cylinder) 2. After a while, proof copy with Dual-Color printing is printed. After checking the print result, enter the number of copies to be printed and start printing.

# Basic Process for Mono-Color Printing

Mono-Color Printing is performed using either of the Print Drums (Cylinders). There are two methods for printing as shown below.

- Printing paper originals such as documents and books.
- Printing data created with a computer.

## Important!:

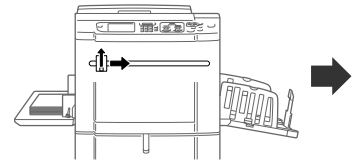
- For Mono-Color printing, you can either use Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 or Print Drum (Cylinder) 2, but we recommend using mainly Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.
- The A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) can only be used as Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

## For Printing from a Paper Document:

---

### Master-making process

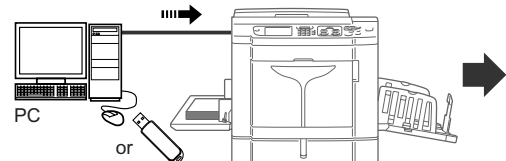
---



A placed original is scanned by the scanner, and a generated master is rolled around the Print Drum (Cylinder).

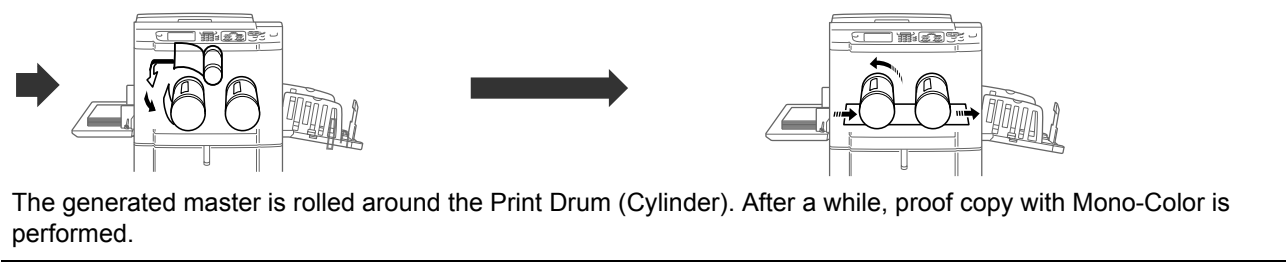
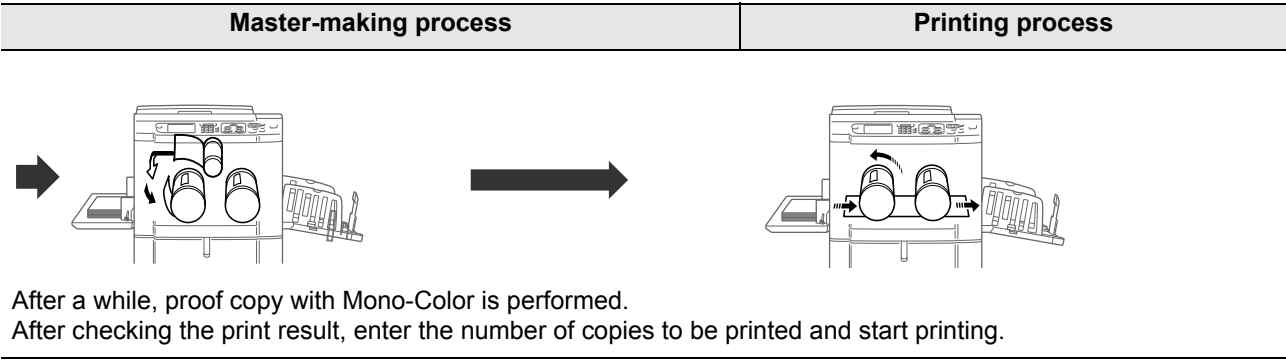
---

## For Printing from Computer:



Transfer the original data created using a computer to the machine via a network or USB Flash Drive.

---



# Basic Operations

## Preparing to Print

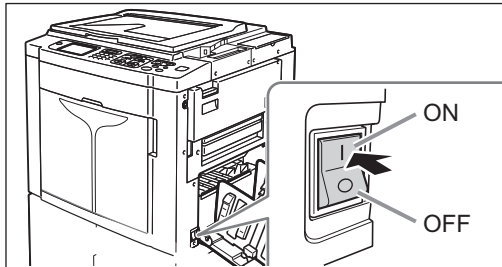
First set up the Paper Feed Tray and Paper Receiving Tray of the machine.

### Important!:

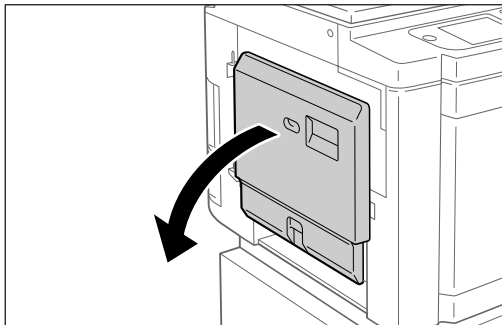
- Do not use unsuitable paper, or mix papers of different sizes.  
It might cause paper jams and damage the machine.  
☞ p.16

## Setting up the Paper Feed Tray and Loading the paper

### 1 Turn the power ON.



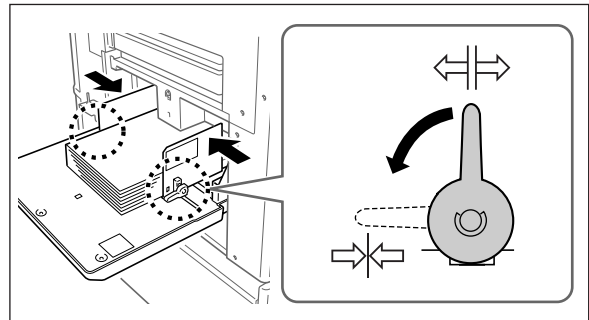
### 2 Open the Paper Feed Tray.



Pull the Paper Feed Tray to open it, until it comes to a rest.

### 3 Load paper.

- 1) Place paper in the printing orientation.
- 2) Slide the Feed Tray Paper Guides to fit to the sides of the paper. Then turn the right and left Feed Tray Paper Guides Levers to lock the guides.

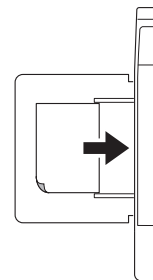


⇄ : Unlock

⇄✕⇄ : Lock

### Important!:

- Make sure that the Feed Tray Paper Guides fit tight up against the paper.  
Failure to do so can produce undesired results.
- When printing with the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, set it such that the long edge of the A4 paper follows the paper feed direction.

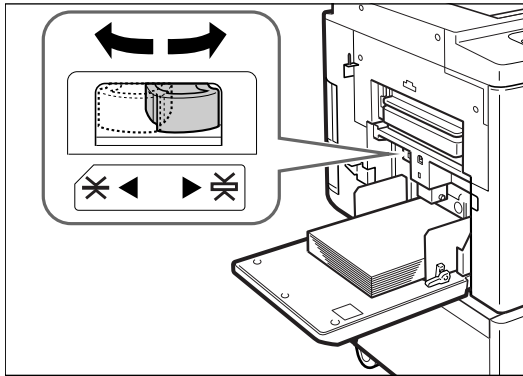




**Note:**

- Custom size paper must be registered on the Admin. Screen before use.  
 ↗ p.204  
 Failure to do so may create an incomplete master.

## 4 Select the paper feed pressure.



NORMAL ( ): For standard or thin paper

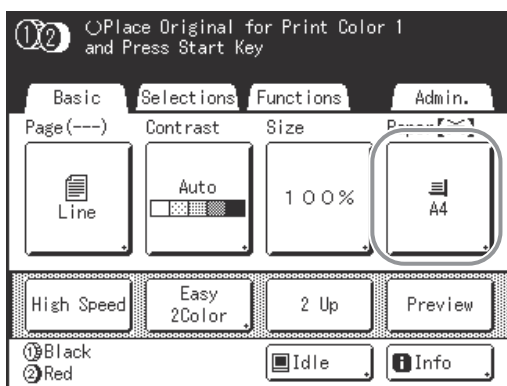
CARD ( ): For thick or smooth-surface paper

**Note:**

- The setting condition of the paper feed pressure is displayed at the top of the **[Paper]** button on the Basic Screen.

## 5 Check the Basic Screen.

- 1) Select a mode.
- 2) Touch **[MasterMake]** on the Operation Selection Screen.  
 The Master Making Basic Screen appears.

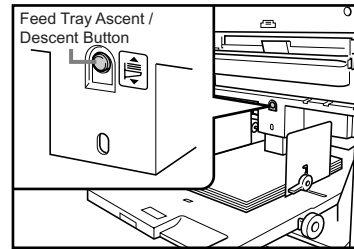


**Note:**

- The paper size is automatically detected. When the size display shows "Custom" even if standard-sized paper has been set, the Feed Tray Paper Guides are not properly set against the paper. Make sure that the Feed Tray Paper Guides fit tightly against the paper.  
 ↗ p.71

## Adding or Replacing Paper

When you add paper or replace with paper of a different size at the time of printing, press the Feed Tray Ascent / Descent Button to lower the Paper Feed Tray.



- The Paper Feed Tray is lowered while you press and hold the button, and when you release the button, the tray stops at that position.
- When the tray runs out of paper or you remove all papers, the tray is automatically lowered to the bottom.
- After paper has been replenished, the Paper Feed Tray automatically rises when you press the Key on the Control Panel.

**Important!:**

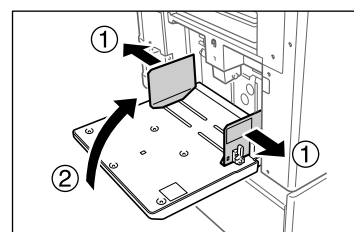
- When changing to a different paper size, remember to readjust the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and Paper Stopper.
- When changing to a different quality paper, remember to adjust the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever.

**Note:**

- When the Paper Feed Tray has been lowered to the bottom, if you press this button after paper has been replenished, the Paper Feed Tray rises.

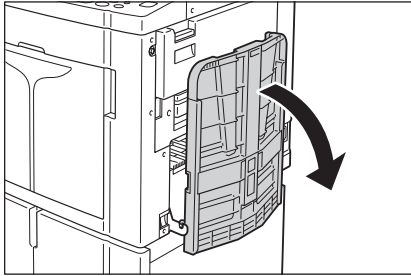
## Closing the Paper Feed Tray

Before closing the Paper Feed Tray, remove the paper and widen the Feed Tray Paper Guides to the limits. Then close the Paper Feed Tray.



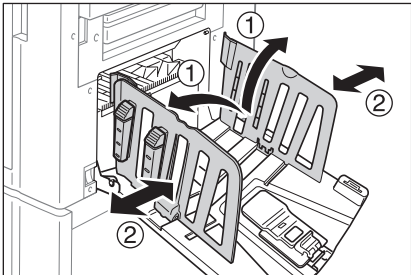
# Setting up the Paper Receiving Tray

## 1 Open the Paper Receiving Tray.



## 2 Position the Receiving Tray Paper Guides.

- 1) Raise the Receiving Tray Paper Guides.
- 2) Hold their lower part and slide them to fit to the paper width.

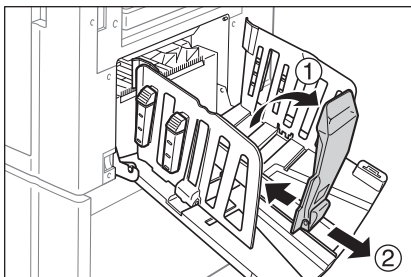


### Important!:

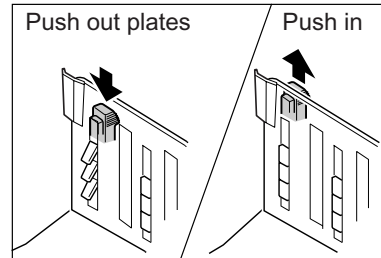
- For thick paper such as drawing paper, position the Receiving Tray Paper Guides a little wider than the actual paper width.

## 3 Set the Paper Stopper.

- 1) Raise the Paper Stopper.
- 2) Slide to fit the length of the paper.

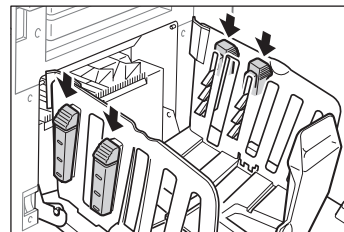


## 4 Adjust the Paper Arrangers.



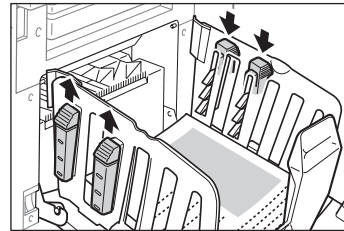
Alignment of paper is affected by sizes and strength of paper. Adjust the Paper Arrangers so that printed paper is aligned. Press the Paper Arranger to push the plates out, pull the plates up to pull them in.

### ◆ For plain paper



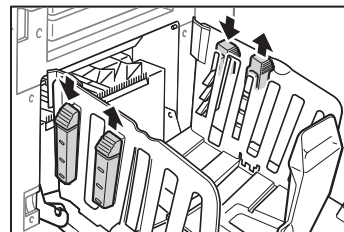
Press to open all four Paper Arrangers.

### ◆ For plain paper with images lopsided on page



Press to open the two Paper Arrangers on the more heavily printed side.

### ◆ For thick paper

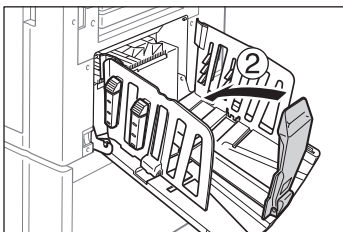
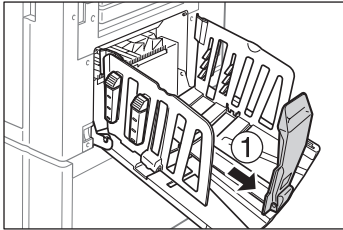


Press to open the two Paper Arrangers (right and left) closer to the machine.

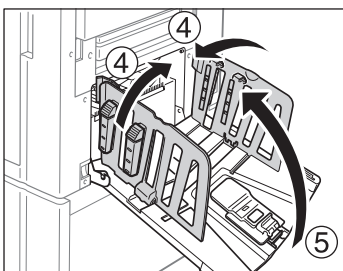
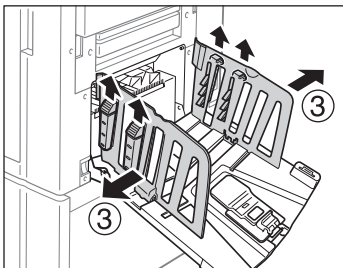
## Closing the Paper Receiving Tray

Remove all the printed copies and follow the steps below.

- 1) Slide the Paper Stopper to the edge of the Paper Receiving Tray and fold in.



- 2) Pull up the Paper Arrangers, slide the Receiving Tray Paper Guides to the left and right as far as they will move and fold in.



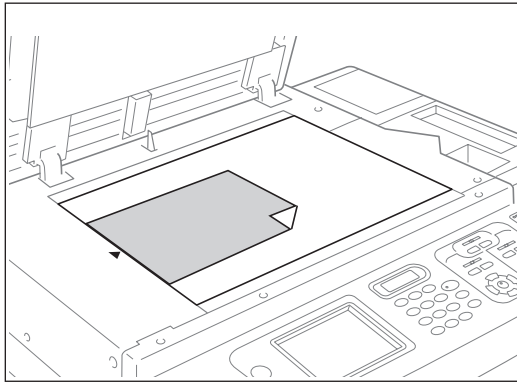
- 3) Close the Paper Receiving Tray.

# Placing the original

## When placing on the Glass Platen

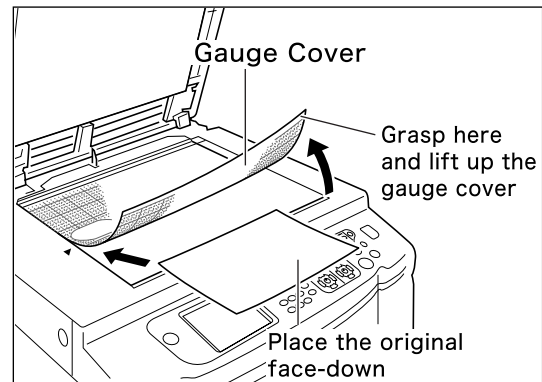
Open the Platen Cover and place the original face-down. Align the center of the original with the mark on the left-hand side of the glass. After placing the original, slowly close the Platen Cover.

Magazines, books, scrap books, etc. should be placed on the Glass Platen.



**Note:**

- If the Gauge Cover is installed, place the original underneath.




## When placing in the ADF unit (Option)

Use the ADF unit if you are printing multiple originals in succession.

Place originals so that the one to be scanned first is on the top. (When placing originals for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2, place the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 on the top.) Afterwards, align the ADF Original Guides with the page width and set originals fully to the rear of the ADF.

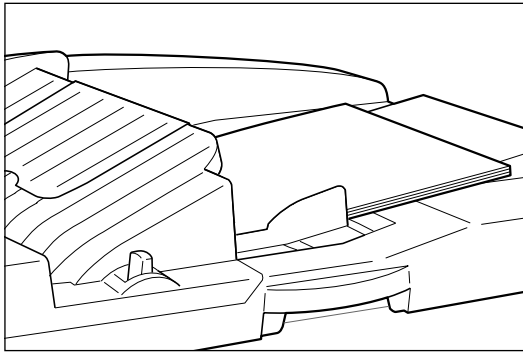
**Important!:**

- If the original is smaller than the paper size that can be set in the ADF unit, place the original on the Glass Platen.
- Do not place multiple originals of differing sizes or otherwise unsuitable originals into the ADF unit. It might cause paper jams and damage the machine.  
☞ p.180
- When printing two copies of an original at once, the print functions settings for each Print Drum (Cylinder) cannot be changed.
- Once the originals are placed into the ADF unit, "Auto Process" setting is turned ON. Press the  key to turn it OFF. Default "Auto Process" setting for the ADF unit can be changed on the Admin. Screen.  
☞ p.72, ☞ p.193

**Note:**

- Up to 50 sheets of 80 g/m<sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond) paper can be placed in the ADF unit.
- To print a proof copy after each master-making process, select **[ADF Semi-Auto]**.  
☞ p.178

## When using the ADF AF-VI:II

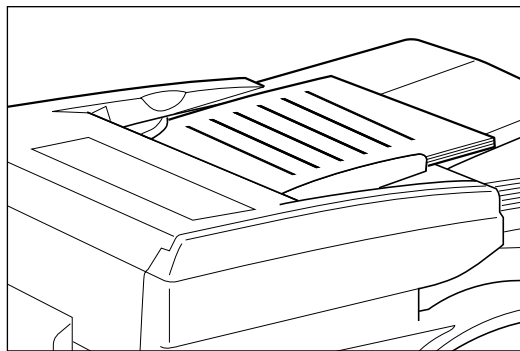


Set the original face-down.

### Important!:

- The placeable original size of 100 mm × 148 mm (3<sup>15</sup>/<sub>16</sub>" × 5<sup>13</sup>/<sub>16</sub>" ) and above.

## When using the ADF DX-1



Set the original face-up.

The side of the original that is read can be specified. For details about the settings, refer to [p.180](#).

### Important!:

- The placeable original size of 105 mm × 128 mm (4<sup>1</sup>/<sub>8</sub>" × 5<sup>1</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" ) and above.

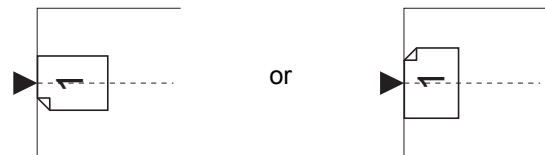
### Tip:

#### Setting Direction (direction of text on the original)

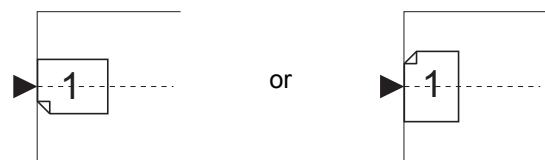
The original setting direction is decided by the number of pages set when using "Multi-Up Print" and "Layout" functions.

Set the original according to the direction of text on the original seen from the touch panel side.

### Align Top



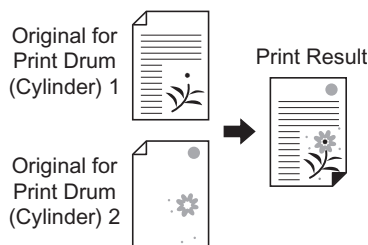
### Align Side



# Printing from Paper Documents

## Dual-Color Printing with 2 Originals

The operating procedure for Dual-Color Printing by scanning the original by color (for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2) is explained here.



### Important!:

Use paper that is 182 mm × 257 mm (7<sup>5</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" × 10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>8</sub>") (B5) or larger.




### Note:

To do Dual-Color Printing with one original by separating it into 2 colors, see p.99.

## 1 Make sure the machine is ON.

Check the Control Panel.

### Note:

- When the power is OFF, both the Display and the  key are off. Turn the power ON. p.38
- If the  key is lit, the machine is in Energy Saving mode. Press the  key to exit the Energy Saving mode.

## 2 Check for printing paper.

Make sure the paper is loaded.

To load or to change the paper, see the following page:

p.38

After replacing with paper of a different size, adjust the position of the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and Paper Stopper.

p.40

## 3 Check the Display.

### ◆ When the Recognition Screen is displayed.

Follow the message on the screen.

For details, see p.53.

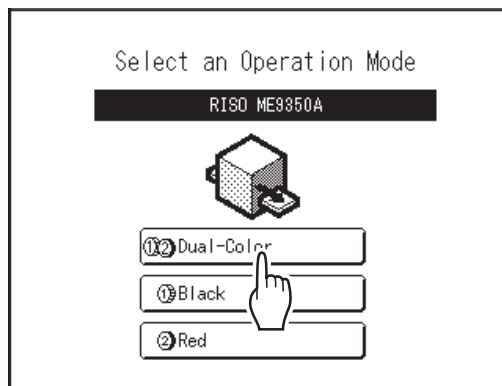
The initial screen will be displayed after the user has been identified.

### ◆ When the initial screen is displayed



Proceed to step 4.

The initial screen differs depending on the setting of "Display Priority" of "Admin."

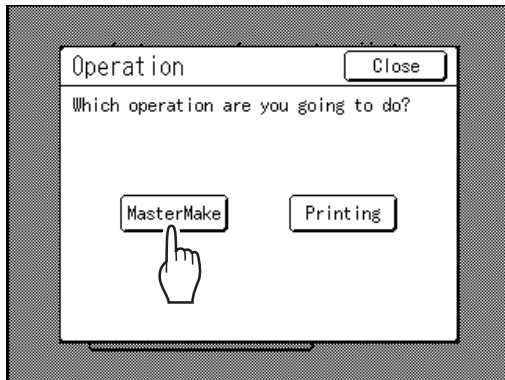
## 4 Touch [Dual-Color] on the Mode Screen.



### Note:

- If a Basic Screen other than the Dual-Color Printing Screen is showing, press the  key to display the Mode Screen.
- If A4 □ / L t t r □ is displayed next to the  button, the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set.

## 5 Touch [MasterMake] on the Operation Selection Screen.



The Master Making Basic Screen appears.

### Note:

When you see **[Data-Map]** in the Status Area, the machine is busy receiving original data from the computer. Please wait a moment.


## 6 Place the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

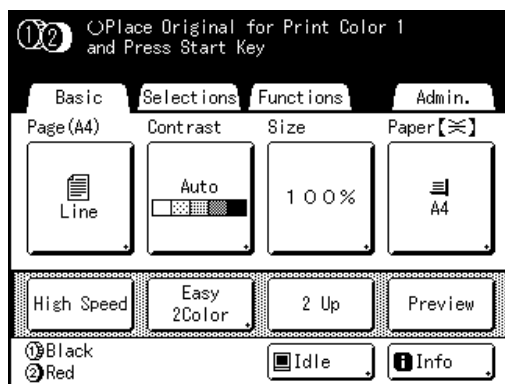
Place the original on the Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.

To place the original, see [p.42](#).

## 7 Configure print functions.

In the Master Making Basic Screen, select functions as needed.

Make sure the Master Making Basic Screen is displayed and make various settings if needed. If the Master Making Basic Screen is not displayed, press the  key.



### Note:

The following selections are available:

- Image ([p.64](#))
- Scanning Contrast ([p.66](#))
- Size ([p.67](#))
- Paper ([p.71](#))
- Auto Process ([p.72](#))
- Dot Process ([p.73](#))
- Contrast Adj ([p.74](#))
- Tone Curve ([p.75](#))
- Ink Saving ([p.76](#))
- 2 Up/Multi-Up Print ([p.77](#))
- Layout ([p.88](#))
- Book Shadow ([p.92](#))
- Top Margin ([p.94](#))
- Binding margin ([p.96](#))
- Max. Scan ([p.98](#))
- Preview ([p.109](#))
- Program ([p.147](#))
- Job Memory ([p.163](#))
- Idling Action ([p.172](#))
- Renew Page ([p.173](#))
- Output reversal ([p.176](#))
- ADF Semi-Auto<sup>\*1</sup> ([p.178](#))
- Storage Memory<sup>\*2</sup> ([p.220](#))
- Stamp<sup>\*2</sup> ([p.228](#))
- Job Separation<sup>\*3</sup>

\*1 This setting is available when the optional ADF unit is installed.

\*2 This setting is available only when a memory card is attached.

\*3 This setting is available when the optional Job Separator is installed.

## 8 Check the Paper Receiving Tray.

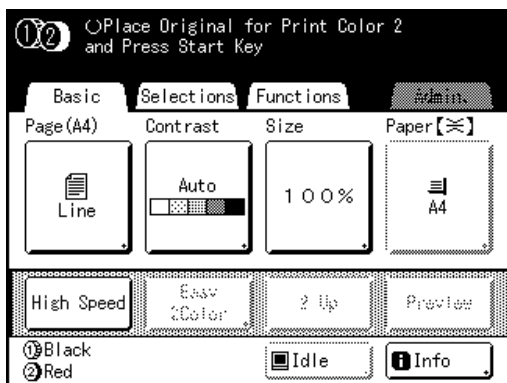
Adjust the position of the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and Paper Stopper to match the size of the paper used.

[p.40](#)

## 9 Press the key.

Starts scanning the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

Once the scanning is completed, the master is made for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, and one proof copy from Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 will be printed. Then, the Master Making Basic Screen for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 appears.



### Note:

- In step 6, if two originals have been placed together in the ADF unit, one proof copy from Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 only is printed, and the master is subsequently made on Print Drum (Cylinder) 2. Continue on to step 13.
- You can change the settings of “Auto Idling”.  
p.52
- When “Auto Process” is selected, the process will be different.  
p.72

## 10 Place the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

Place the original on the Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.

To place the original, see p.42

## 11 Set the print functions for the Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 original.

You can make various settings of the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 as needed.

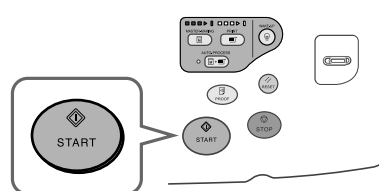
If you make no settings, the same settings as the first original are applied.

### Note:

The print functions that can be set for the Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 original are as shown below.

- Image (p.64)
- Scanning Contrast (p.66)
- Size (p.67)
- Dot Process (p.73)
- Contrast Adj (p.74)
- Tone Curve (p.75)
- Top Margin (p.94)
- Binding margin (p.96)

## 12 Press the key.



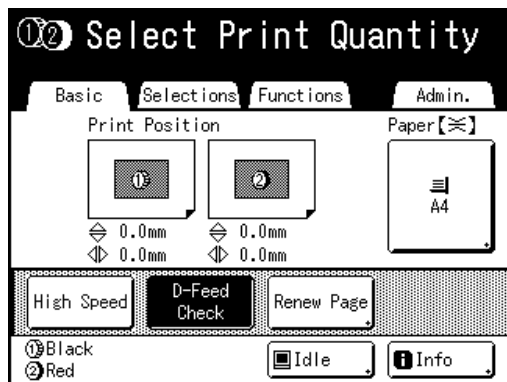
Starts scanning the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

Once the scanning is completed, the master is made for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2, and a Dual-Color proof copy will be printed.



### 13 Check the proof copy result.

When a proof copy is printed, the Print Basic Screen will be displayed automatically.



Check the proof copy; e.g., print position and density.

If necessary, change the print position and density.

- Print Position (p.117)
- Print Density (p.116)

After adjustment, press the **PROOF** key to print a proof copy.

#### Important!:

- When the machine has not been used for a long period of time, the print quality may suffer due to dry Ink on the Print Drum (Cylinder). Press the **PROOF** key to print proof copies several times.

#### Note:

- You can also adjust the print position (up and down only), the density, and the speed while the print process is in progress.

### 14 Enter the number of copies using the Print Quantity Keys.

The specified number is displayed on the Print Quantity Display.

#### Note:

- To change the number, press the **C** key, then re-enter the correct number.

### 15 Press the **START** key.

The specified number of copies will be printed.

#### Note:

- Press the **STOP** key to interrupt printing operation currently underway.
- When printing from a computer, if the machine is inactive for a certain period of time, it determines that the current job is completed, even if the actual printing is still under way. If another person accidentally initiates another job from the computer, this will cause a new master to be made, discarding the current one. To prevent this, you may set a "Reserve Period". We recommend that you activate the "Reservation" setting when printing leaflets, etc. to prevent interruption. (p.171)
- Easily restore the current settings by saving them into memory. Saved settings can be retrieved even when the **RESET** key is pressed, or after turning the power off. (p.163)

### 16 Press the **RESET** key when print job is complete.

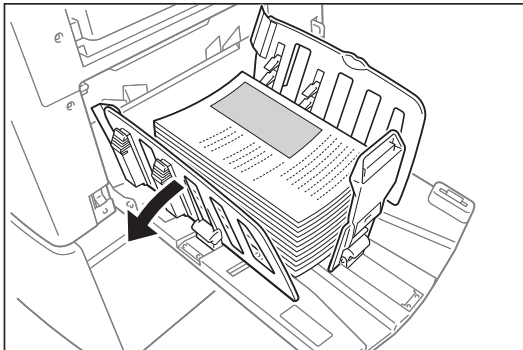
The setting returns to its default value.

#### Note:

- After printing is completed, the master remains on the Print Drum (Cylinder). To protect confidential documents from unauthorized duplication, use the Confidential feature to discard the master after printing. (p.169)
- Even if you do not press the **RESET** key, with the passage of a certain amount of time (factory default settings: 5 minutes), the settings will be automatically reset. (p.195)

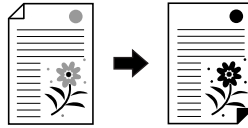
## 17 Remove the printed paper.

Open the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and remove the paper.



## Printing with Mono-Color

The operating procedure for Mono-Color Printing by using either Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 or Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 is explained here.






### Important!:

- For Mono-Color printing, either Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 or Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 may be used, but we recommend using mainly Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

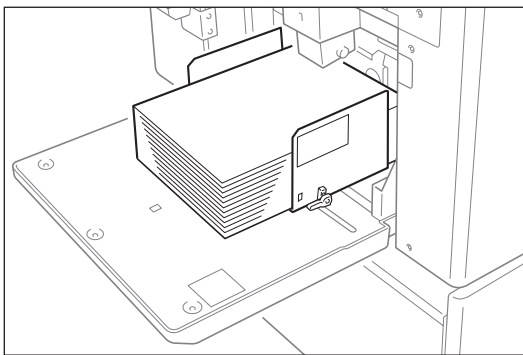
### 1 Make sure the machine is ON.

Check the Control Panel.

#### Note:

- When the power is OFF, both the Display and the  key are off. Turn the power ON.   
☞ p.38
- If the  key is lit, the machine is in Energy Saving mode. Press the  key to cancel Energy Saving mode.

### 2 Check for printing paper.



Make sure the paper is loaded.

To load or to change the paper, see the following page:

☞ p.38

After replacing with paper of a different size, adjust the position of the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and Paper Stopper.

☞ p.40

### 3 Check the Display.

#### ◆ When the Recognition Screen is displayed.

Follow the message on the screen.

For details, see ☞ p.53

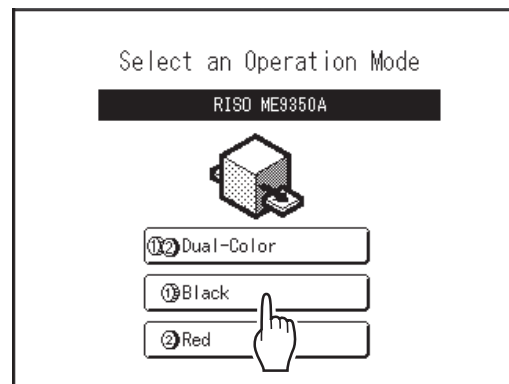
The initial screen will be displayed after the user has been identified.

#### ◆ When the initial screen is displayed



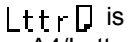

Proceed to step 4.


The initial screen differs depending on the setting of “Display Priority” of “Admin.”.

### 4 Touch the button of the Print Drum (Cylinder) to use on the Mode Screen.

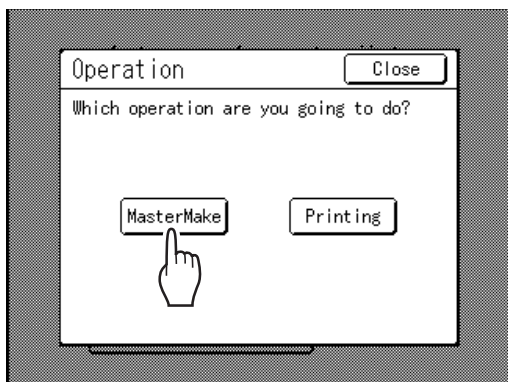


#### Note:

- The  button uses Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 for Mono-Color printing, the  button uses Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 for Mono-Color printing.
- If  is displayed next to the  button, the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set.
- The colors currently set for Print Drum (Cylinder) are displayed correctly on this screen.

- If the Mono-Color Printing Basic Screen is not showing, press the  key to display the Mode Screen.
- Printing with Drum (Cylinder) 1 is explained here. To use Print Drum (Cylinder) 2, see “Mono-Color Printing with Drum (Cylinder) 2” (p.52).

## 5 Touch [MasterMake] on the Operation Selection Screen.



The Master Making Basic Screen appears.

### Note:

- When you see **[Data-Map]** in the Status Area, the machine is busy receiving original data from the computer. Please wait a moment.

### Tip:

#### When using the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder)

If Print Drums (Cylinders) 1 and 2 are of the same color, the Print Drum (Cylinder) to be used may automatically change under the following conditions.


- Even if Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is selected, the original is automatically printed using Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 when the original × magnification is a standard size that exceeds the A4/Letter size.
- Even if Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 is selected, the original is automatically printed using Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 when the original × magnification is a standard size within the A4/Letter horizontal size.

## 6 Place the original.

Place the original on the Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.

To place the original, see p.42.

## 7 Configure print functions.

Make sure the Master Making Basic Screen is displayed and make various settings if needed. If the Master Making Basic Screen is not displayed, press the  key. In the Master Making Basic Screen, select functions as needed.



### Note:

The following selections are available:

- Image (p.64)
- Scanning Contrast (p.66)
- Size (p.67)
- Paper (p.71)
- Auto Process (p.72)
- Dot Process (p.73)
- Contrast Adj (p.74)
- Tone Curve (p.75)
- Ink Saving (p.76)
- 2 Up/Multi-Up Print (p.77)
- Layout (p.88)
- Book Shadow (p.92)
- Top Margin (p.94)
- Binding margin (p.96)
- Max. Scan (p.98)
- Preview (p.109)
- Program (p.147)
- Job Memory (p.163)
- Idling Action (p.172)
- Renew Page (p.173)
- Output reversal (p.176)
- ADF Semi-Auto<sup>\*1</sup> (p.178)
- Storage Memory<sup>\*2</sup> (p.220)
- Overlay<sup>\*2</sup> (p.225)
- Job Separation<sup>\*3</sup>

- \*1 This setting is available when the optional ADF unit is installed.
- \*2 This setting is available only when a memory card is attached.
- \*3 This setting is available when the optional Job Separator is installed.

## 8 Check the Paper Receiving Tray.

Adjust the position of the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and Paper Stopper to match size of the paper used.

☞ p.40

## 9 Press the key.

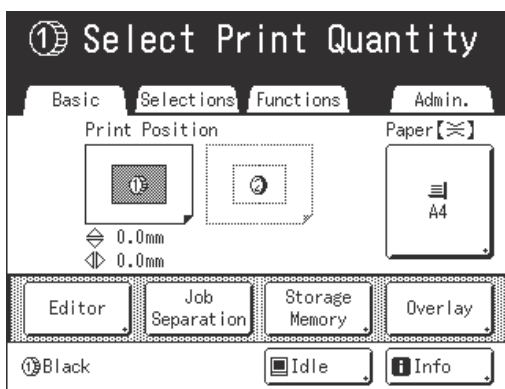
Starts scanning the original. A master is made once the scanning is completed, and a proof copy will be printed.

### Note:

- When “Auto Process” is selected, the process will be different.  
☞ p.72
- You can change the settings of “Auto Idling”.  
☞ p.52


## 10 Check the proof copy result.

When a proof copy is printed, the Print Basic Screen will be displayed.




Check the proof copy; e.g., print position and density. If necessary, change the print position and density.

- Print Position (☞ p.117)
- Print Density (☞ p.116)

After adjustment, press the  key to print a proof copy.

### Important!:

- When the machine has not been used for a long period of time, the print quality may suffer due to dry Ink on the Print Drum (Cylinder). Press the  key to print proof copies several times.


### Note:

- You can also adjust the print position (up and down only), the density, and the speed while the print process is in progress.

## 11 Enter the number of copies using the Print Quantity Keys.

The entered number is displayed on the Print Quantity Display.



### Note:

- To change the number, press the  key, then re-enter the correct number.

## 12 Press the key.

The specified number of copies will be printed.


### Note:

- Press the  key to interrupt printing operation currently underway.
- When printing from a computer, if the machine is inactive for a certain period of time, it determines that the current job is completed, even if the actual printing is still under way. If another person accidentally initiates another job from the computer, this will cause a new master to be made, discarding the current one. To prevent this, you may set a “Reserve Period”. We recommend that you activate the “Reservation” setting when printing leaflets, etc. to prevent interruption.  
☞ p.171
- Easily restore current settings by saving them into memory. Saved settings can be retrieved even when the  key is pressed, or after turning the power off.  
☞ p.163

### 13 Press the key when print job is complete.

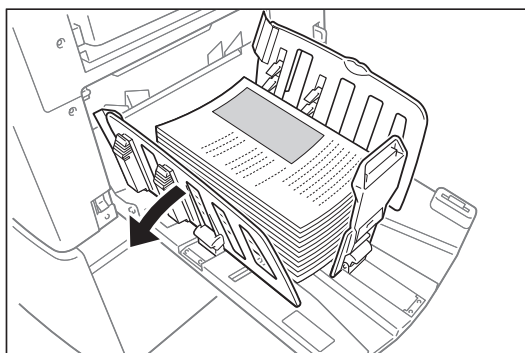
The setting returns to its default value.

**Note:**

- After printing is completed, the master remains on the Print Drum (Cylinder). To protect confidential documents from unauthorized duplication, use the Confidential feature to discard the master after printing.  
☞ p.169
- Even if you do not press the  key, with the passage of a certain amount of time (factory default settings: 5 minutes), the settings will be automatically reset.  
☞ p.195

### 14 Remove the printed paper.

Open the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and remove the paper.



**Tip:**

**Mono-Color printing with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2**

We recommend that Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 be used for Mono-Color printing, but you can also use Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

However, the paper size or the action of the machine differs from Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

**Important!:**

The paper sizes that can be used with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 are as follows:

- When using the high-speed function:  
Vertical paper dimension of 364 mm (14 11/32") (B4) to 432 mm (17") (Ledger)
- Other than the above:  
Vertical paper dimension of 257 mm (10 1/8") or above

**Note:**

When leaving a master made and wrapped around Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and only using Print Drum (Cylinder) 2, a warning message is displayed when printing. Follow the instructions on the screen. Also, Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 may automatically be set to confidential when a master is made.

**Tip:**

**Auto Idling**

When "Auto Idling" is set to ON, idling operations may be activated when master-making process is initiated.

Factory default is set to idle automatically at the beginning of the master-making when the machine is inactive for over 12 hours.

**Note:**

- When Mono-Color printing with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 may also idle during auto idling.

To toggle "Auto Idling" ON/OFF, or to modify the number of hours before activating next idling, go to the Admin. Screen.

☞ p.196

Idling can also be manually initiated when making a master.

☞ p.172

**Tip:**  
**Operations on the Recognition Screen**

When “User Management” is set by the administrator, the users will be asked to identify themselves (“User identification access”: if he/she is registered or not) during operations.

The user identification procedures will differ according to the Recognition and Identification System decided by the administrator.

**Note:**

- A PIN Code and USB Flash Drive are used in the Recognition and Identification System. Contact your administrator for the PIN Code and the USB Flash Drive you have to use.

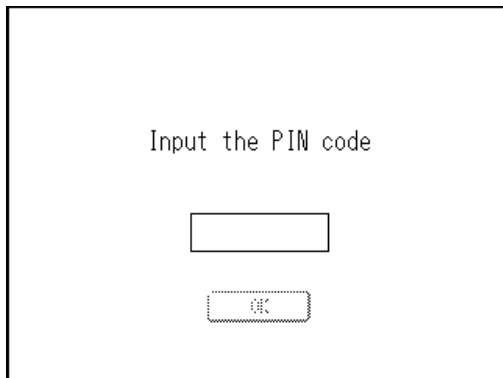
**When the PIN Code Input Screen is displayed**

Enter the PIN Code using the Print Quantity Keys and touch [OK].

The initial screen will be displayed after the user has been identified.

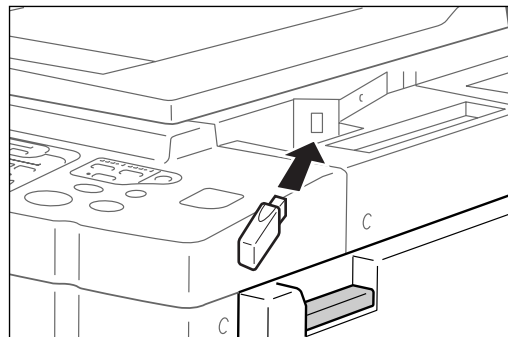
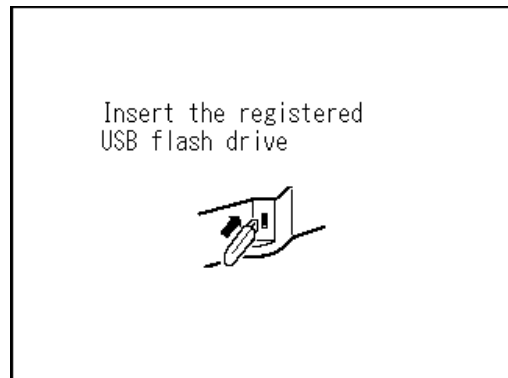
**Note:**

- If an incorrect PIN Code is entered, an error message will be displayed. Re-enter the correct PIN Code.



**When registered USB Flash Drive Screen is displayed**

Connect the registered USB Flash Drive to the USB slot.




The initial screen will be displayed after the user has been identified.

**Note:**

- If an unregistered or unusable USB Flash Drive is connected to the machine, an error message will be displayed. Connect a registered USB Flash Drive.

**Important!:**

- After printing is completed, press the  key to log out before leaving the machine. If you do not log out, the logged-in state will remain until “Auto Clear” is activated. During this time, anyone can use the machine (as you) without logging in.

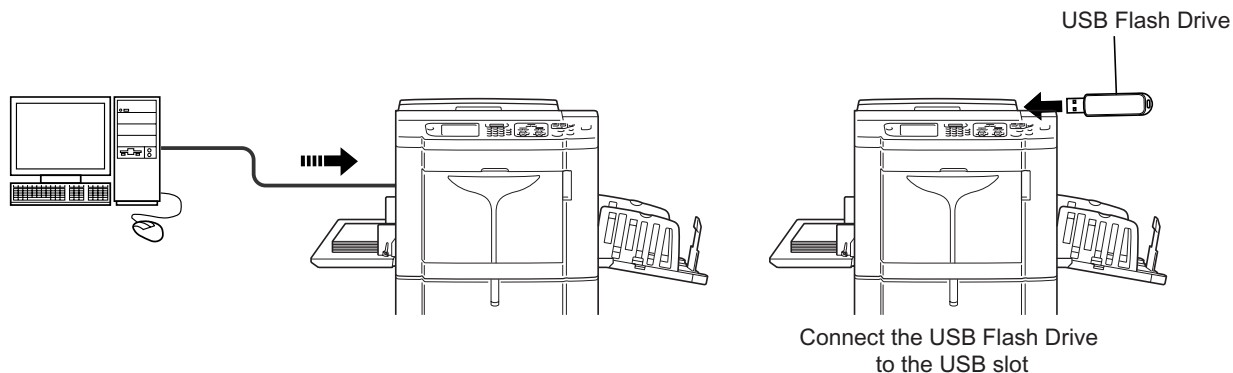
☞ p.195

# Printing from a Computer Data

## [Direct Print] [USB Job List]

This machine can directly print the original created on the computer by connecting the computer and machine by a cable. The data will be digitally processed into a master, thus achieving higher quality prints than the master-making of scanned originals.

Furthermore, a USB slot for connecting a USB Flash Drive is supplied with this machine so that you can print by connecting a USB Flash Drive that stores the data of originals to the machine even if the computer and machine are not connected by a cable.



**Note:**

- First, install a proper printer driver on your computer. See the “RISO Printer Driver User’s Guide” for installation details.
- This manual provides only a summary of functions available when printing from a computer.
- See the “RISO Printer Driver User’s Guide” for further details about sending data and other settings.

## Printing Computer Data [Direct Print]

The computer and printer must be connected by a cable.


**Note:**

- When “User Management” is set by the administrator, the users will be asked to identify themselves during operations. [☞ p.53](#)

### 1 Make sure the machine is ON.

Check the Control Panel.

**Note:**

- When the power is OFF, both the Display and the  key are off. Turn the power ON. [☞ p.38](#)
- The machine automatically wakes up from Energy Saving mode when data is sent from a computer, and it starts processing the data.

### 2 Check for printing paper.

Make sure the paper is loaded.

To load or to change the paper, see the following page. [☞ p.38](#)

After replacing with paper of a different size, adjust the position of the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and Paper Stopper. [☞ p.40](#)



### 3 Set printing options from your computer screen.

Use the printer driver.

#### Important!:

- Make sure to remove the checkmark from the "Collate" option in the Print dialog box.

### 4 Click [OK] in the print dialog box.

Data is sent from the computer.


When the machine receives data, a print job automatically starts in accordance with the printer driver settings.


Skip to step 6 if you are printing in "Full Auto".

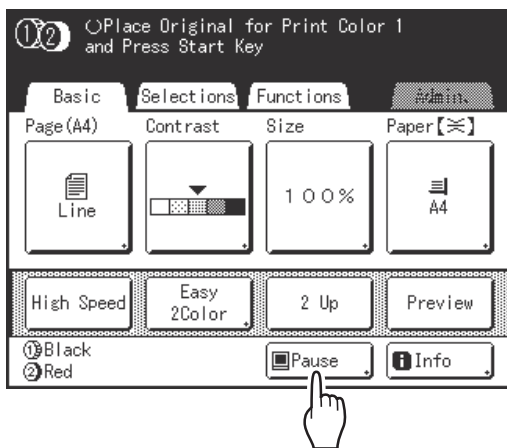
### 5 Perform printing from the control panel.

The displayed screen and operation procedure differ depending on the "Process" (Basic tab) setting of the printer driver.

#### ◆ Printing with Pause before "Master"

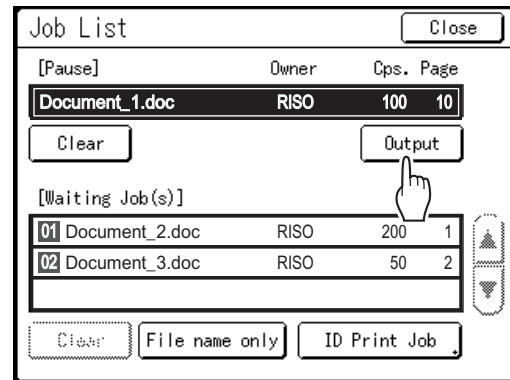
The Master Making Basic Screen in step 2) is paused depending on the use of the machine or Admin. settings. In this case, press the  key.

- 1) Touch .

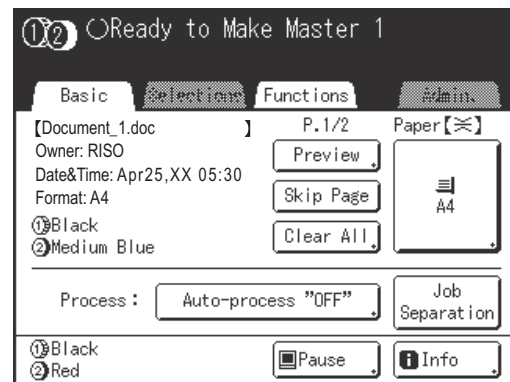



The Job List Screen is displayed.

- 2) Touch [Output].  
If you want to operate the ID print, touch [ID Print Job].  
p.56




The following screen appears.




- 3) Press the  key.  
After making a master, start printing.

#### ◆ Printing with Pause before "Print"



A master is made after receiving the data. The machine stops after printing a proof copy.

- 1) Check the proof copy and adjust the settings as needed.
- 2) Press the  key.  
Printing starts.

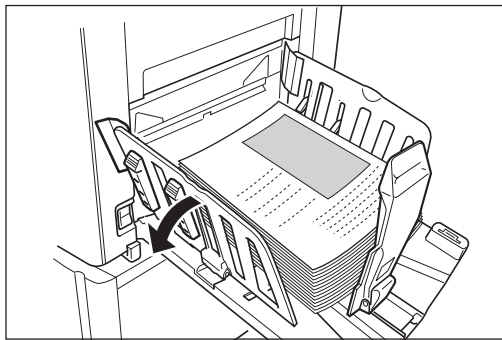
#### ◆ Printing with Auto-process "OFF"

- 1) Follow steps 1 to 3 in "Pause before "Master"". Stop after making a master and printing a proof copy.
- 2) Check the proof copy and adjust the settings as needed.
- 3) Press the  key.  
Printing starts.

**Note:**

- If the data contains multiple pages, repeat the same steps for each page.
- Entering the number of copies from the Print Quantity Keys will override the number specified in the Print dialog box.
- For "ID Print", printing starts with specified Auto Process mode after recognition.
- To manually stop a job during master-making or printing operation, press the  key. In master-making process, the machine will stop after the master is made. In printing process, the machine will stop printing. Press the  key to resume the job.

## 6 Remove the printed paper.

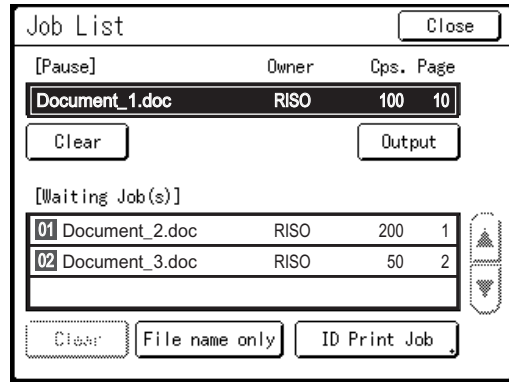


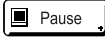
Open the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and remove the paper.

**Note:**

- After printing is completed, the master remains on the Print Drum (Cylinder). To protect confidential documents from unauthorized duplication, use the Confidential feature to discard the master after printing. [p.169](#)

**Tip:**  
**Job List Screen**

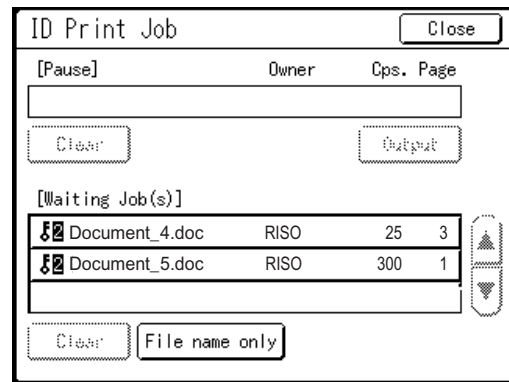


Once the data is received, touch  on the Basic Screen to review current Job List. From the Job List Screen, you can initiate output for jobs pausing for output, or cancel jobs that are "Paused/Data-Mapping/Waiting".

**Tip:**  
**ID Print**

The data sent from the printer driver as the "ID Print" is retrieved from the ID Print Job Screen and printed.

Touch **[ID Print Job]** to display the Recognition Screen, and follow the message on the screen. The timing of the Recognition Screen differs depending on the "User Management" settings done by the administrator. [p.133](#)



**Note:**

- To set the "ID Print" in the printer driver, a user registration number (ID) is required (one or two digits). Contact your administrator for the PIN Code or registered USB Flash Drive, and the user registration number (ID).

## Printing USB Data [USB Job List]

Even if the computer and machine are not connected by cable, you can print original data via a USB Flash Drive. It is useful when the computer and printer are placed in different places or printing with ME Series in outside location.

### Note:

- When “User Management” is set by the administrator, the users will be asked to identify themselves during operations.

### 1 Connect the USB Flash Drive to the computer.

#### Note:

- If the Recognition and Identification System (“Recognized by”) is set to “USB Flash Drive” in the “User Management”, it is also convenient for you to use the registered USB Flash Drive to output the data.

### 2 Set printing options from your computer screen.

Use the USB flash-via-Printer Driver.

#### Note:

- Make sure to remove the checkmark from the “Collate” option in the Print dialog box.




### 3 Click [OK] in the print dialog box.

The data created on the computer is stored in the USB Flash Drive.

### 4 Make sure the machine is ON.

Check the Control Panel.

#### Note:

- When the power is OFF, both the Display and the  key are off. Turn the power ON.   
☞ p.38
- If the  key is lit, the machine is in the Energy Saving mode. Press the  key to cancel the Energy Saving mode.

### 5 Check for printing paper.

Make sure paper is loaded.

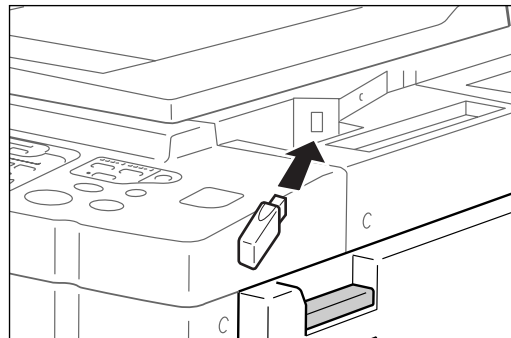
To load or to change the loaded paper, see following page.

☞ p.38

After replacing with paper of a different size, adjust the position of the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and Paper Stopper.

☞ p.40

### 6 Connect the USB Flash Drive that contains the original data to print to the USB slot.



If you use an unregistered USB Flash Drive to output the data, skip to step 9.

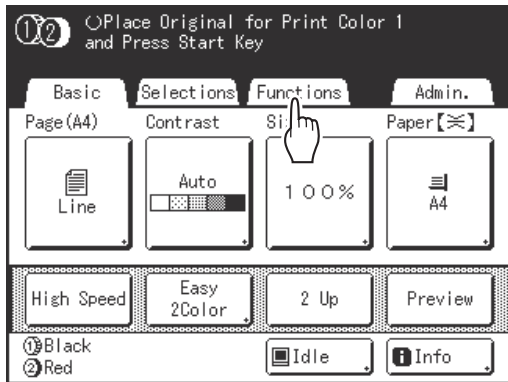
#### Important!:

- Do not remove the USB Flash Drive until the printing is completed. It might cause loss of data and settings or damage to the USB Flash Drive.

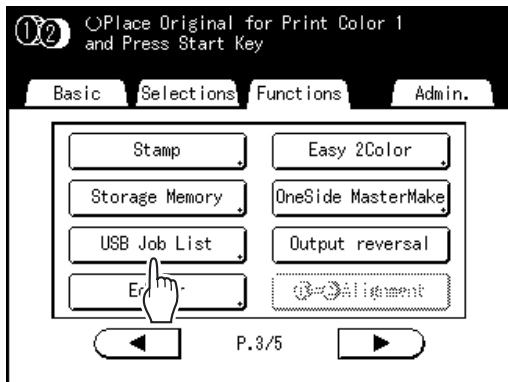
#### Note:

- If the “USB print (Auto Process)” has been set as the output method (Basic tab), connecting the USB Flash Drive starts master-making/printing process as per the “Process” setting. For detailed settings, refer to the “RISO Printer Driver User’s Guide”.

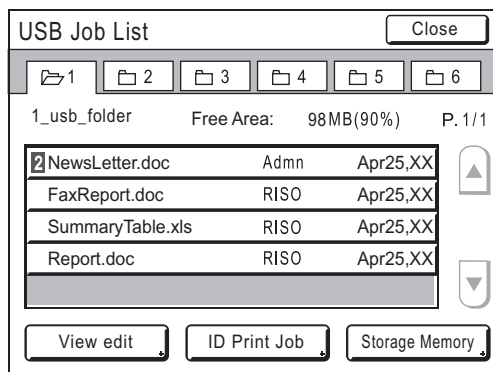
## 7 Touch [Functions] on the Master Making Basic Screen.



## 8 Touch [USB Job List].



The USB Job List Screen (with “Non-ID Print”) is displayed.  
(The “ID Print Job” button is displayed on the screen.)



## 9 Touch the data to print.

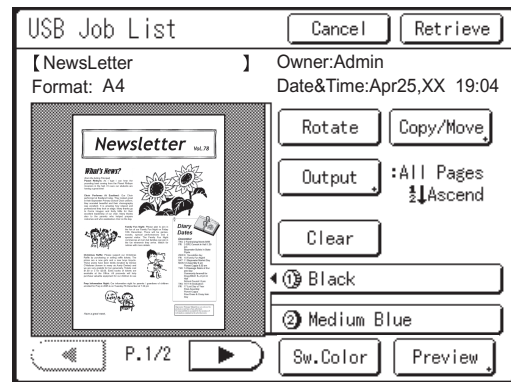
The “USB Job List” Retrieve Screen is displayed.  
If you are selecting data stored in a different folder, touch that folder’s tab.

### Note:

- To retrieve the ID print, touch [ID Print Job].
- When “Management Level” is set to “Low/ Admin tab only” in the “User Management”, [ID Print Job] will not be displayed.
- If the stored data is not shown on the screen, touch ▲ or ▼ to display it.

## 10 Confirm the retrieved data.

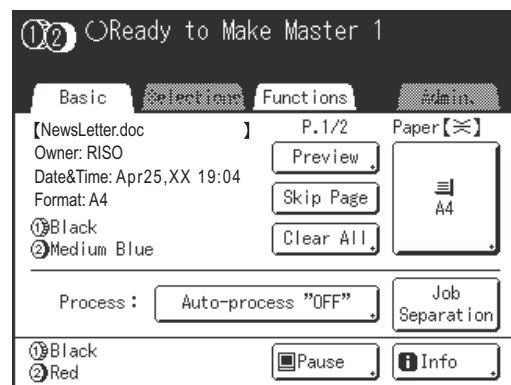
Use the thumbnail to check whether the specified data is the desired data or not.



From the “USB Job List” Retrieve Screen, you can confirm retrieved data and specify output settings. See p.223 for operational details.

## 11 Touch [Retrieve].

The data is retrieved and the following screen appears:



### Note:

- You can change the output directions and stop timing settings on the Master Making Basic Screen.  
For details, see p.60 and p.62.

---

## 12 Enter the number of copies using the Print Quantity Keys.

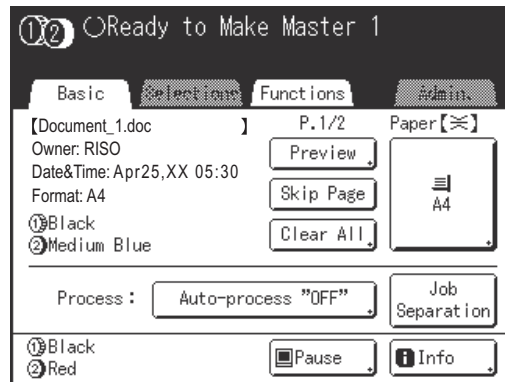
The entered number is displayed on the Print Quantity Display.

## 13 Press the key.

Data is printed.  
After this, follow the same operations for paper documents.

## Changing Output Directions

Output can be controlled from the Master Making/Print Basic Screens.



### [Preview]

You can check the master making image of the page currently awaiting creation.

### Note:

- In "Preview", all received original data is displayed as a master making image. The outside of print area is not actually printed.


### [Skip Page]

Cancels a pending page, and starts processing the next page. Use this button when current file has extra, unwanted pages.

### [Clear All]

Deletes all jobs currently in the queue. Use this button to delete a job sent by a mistake, or pending jobs no longer needed.

### Important!:

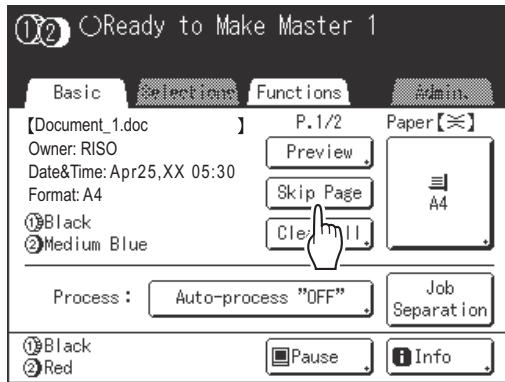
- **[Skip Page]** and **[Clear All]** are disabled during master-making or printing processes. Press the  key to modify directions while master-making or printing is in progress. (In master-making process, the operation will stop after the master is made. In print process, the print job is halted.)

### Note:

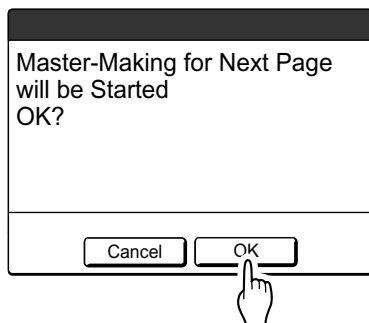
- You can delete the pending job even after you touch **[OK]** after pressing either the  key or the  key while waiting for a command (under Ready to Make Master/Ready to Print screens).

## When selecting [Skip Page]

### 1 Touch [Skip Page].



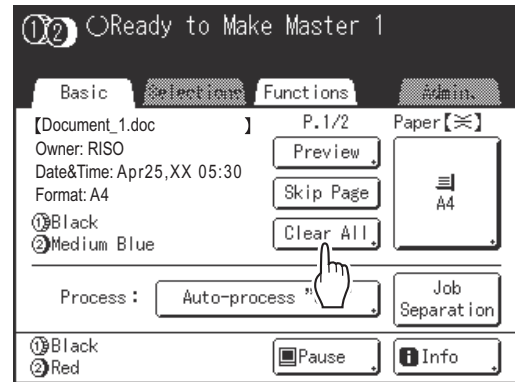
### 2 Touch [OK].



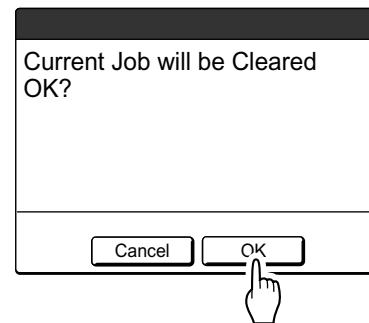
Stops processing current page and moves on to process the next page.

## When selecting [Clear All]

### 1 Touch [Clear All].



### 2 Touch [OK].




Clears current job.  
Starts processing next data in queue.

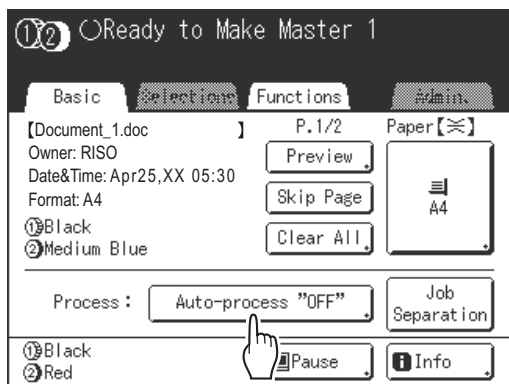
## Changing Stop Timing

Stop timing as set on the printer driver takes priority by default. However, the settings can be changed on the machine while the machine is halted.

**Note:**

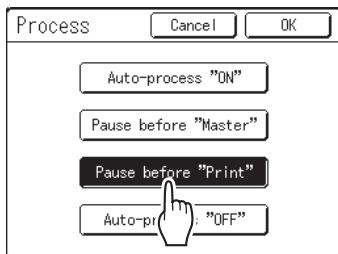
- If **[Auto-process]** is set to **[ON]** in the Printing Property of the printer driver, press the  key to stop the operation and make the changes.

**1 Touch the “Process” function button.**



The Process Screen appears.

**2 Select the desired function.**



- **[Auto-process "ON"]**: Makes a master then automatically prints.
- **[Pause before "Master"]**: The operation stops before making a master.
- **[Pause before "Print"]**: After a master is made and a proof copy is printed, the operation stops.
- **[Auto-process "OFF"]**: Stops before making a master, and again stops before printing.

**Note:**

- See [p.55](#) for details regarding operations after each stop.

**3 Touch [OK].**

Returns to Basic Screen. Process setting is updated.





# Functions for Master-Making

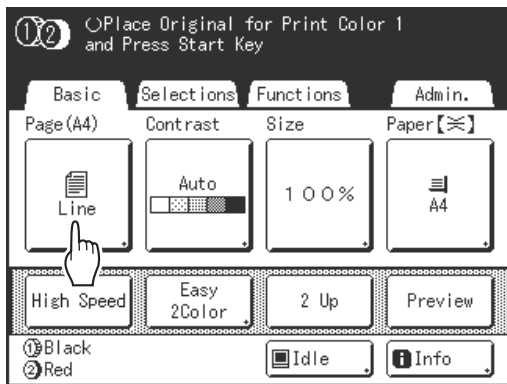
## Selecting Image Processing Mode [Image]

In order to make a master best suited for the original document, select an appropriate mode depending on whether original contains only text, photo, or both of them.

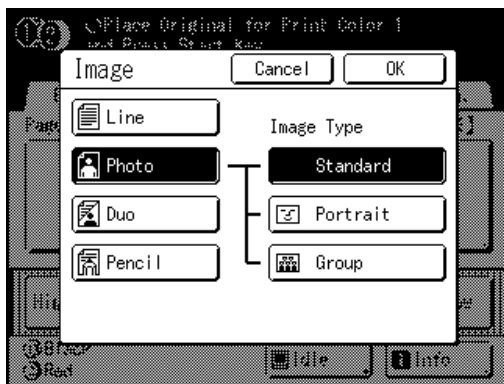
**Note:**

- Default Image Processing mode can be set on the Admin. Screen.  
p.193

### 1 Touch [Page] on the Master Making Basic Screen.



### 2 Select the appropriate Image Processing mode for the original.



- **[Line]:** Only text contained; e.g., text document, newspaper
- **[Photo]:** Only photos contained
- **[Duo]:** Both text and photos contained
- **[Pencil]:** Pencil drawings or lightly printed documents

Touch **[Photo]**, **[Duo]**, or **[Pencil]** to select more detailed settings.

Image (Detailed settings)	Description
<b>[Photo]</b>	
Standard	Select this setting for photos other than <b>[Portrait]</b> or <b>[Group]</b> .
Portrait	Select this setting for pictures of one or two individuals from the bust up. This type of image processing is particularly good for printing photos of faces.
Group	Select this setting for group photos that are over-exposed. This process is effective for restoring facial features that have got washed out because of flash. The Group setting is not for photos with faces that are overly dark. It may be more effective to select <b>[Standard]</b> for such photos.
<b>[Duo]</b>	
Line	Select this setting for printing small text clearly.
Photo	Select this setting for printing photos more clearly (brightly).
Shadow off	Select this setting for clearing the background color of the dark-colored originals (such as newspapers). <b>[Shadow off]</b> is selectable aside from <b>[Line]</b> and <b>[Photo]</b> .
<b>[Pencil]</b>	
Darker	Select this setting for printing faint originals clearly.
Lighter	Select this setting for printing cut-and-pasted pencil drawings with shadows.

### 3 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Master Making Basic Screen.  
Image Processing mode is updated.

**Note:**

- Some functions are not available in certain Image Processing mode settings.

	Line	Photo	Duo	Pencil
Dot Process	—	✓	✓	—
Contrast (Auto)	✓	—	—	—
Contrast (1-5)	✓	✓	✓	✓
Contrast Adj	—	✓	—	—
Tone Curve	—	✓	✓	✓

✓ : available    — : not available

- In **[Line]** mode, when **[Contrast]** is set to **[Auto]**, the background color of the original is automatically deleted.  
☞ p.66

# Selecting Scanning Contrast for the Original [Contrast]

Scanning contrast can be adjusted to accommodate background color or Ink density of the original. Specify by selecting Auto or numeric levels (1-5). In the Auto mode, "Contrast" is automatically adjusted to the background color of the original for printing.

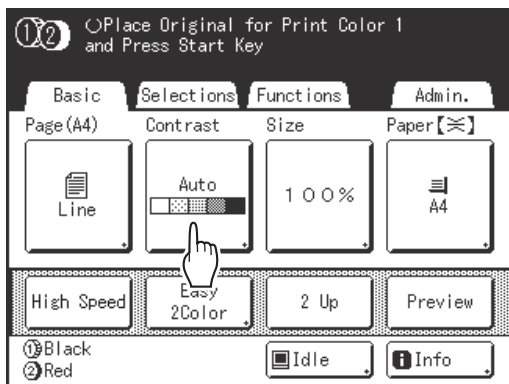
**Important!:**

- "Auto" is available only when Image Processing mode has been set to "Line".  
 ↪ p.64

**Note:**

- Default Scanning Contrast can be set on the Admin. Screen.  
 ↪ p.193

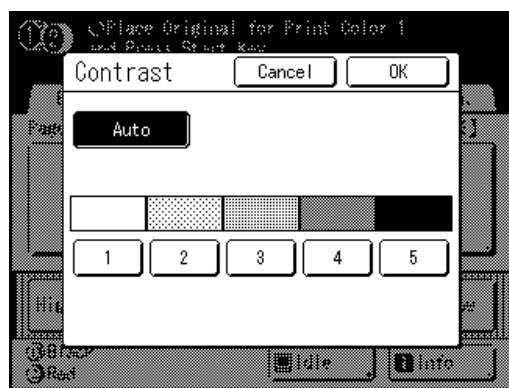
**1 Touch [Contrast] on the Master Making Basic Screen.**



**3 Touch [OK].**

Returns to the Master Making Basic Screen. Contrast is updated.

**2 Touch the desired contrast or [Auto].**



Levels of scanning contrast

- 1) [Swatch 1]: Lightest
- 2) [Swatch 2]: Lighter
- 3) [Swatch 3]: Standard
- 4) [Swatch 4]: Darker
- 5) [Swatch 5]: Darkest

# Enlarging/Reducing Originals [Standard Ratio]

## [Margin+] [Free] [Zoom]

The document can be printed enlarged or reduced. The following methods can be used to enlarge/reduce the original:

### ◆ Standard Ratio

Enlarging or reducing a standard-sized original (A4, B5, Letter, Legal, etc.) to print in another standard size.

### ◆ Auto

The original can be automatically enlarged or reduced and printed according to the paper size in the Paper Feed Tray.

### ◆ Margin+

Reducing the original slightly. This feature is useful when allowing binding margins, or when text or diagram extends beyond the printing area.

Specify reduction rate of 90%-99% on the Admin. Screen.

☞ p.195

#### Note:

- “Margin+” and “Standard Ratio” can be selected at the same time.

### ◆ Free

The top/bottom and left/right of the original can be enlarged or reduced and printed as desired.

Specify the enlarging/reducing between 50% and 200% in increments of 1%.

### ◆ Zoom

Allows you to specify numerical resize ratio.

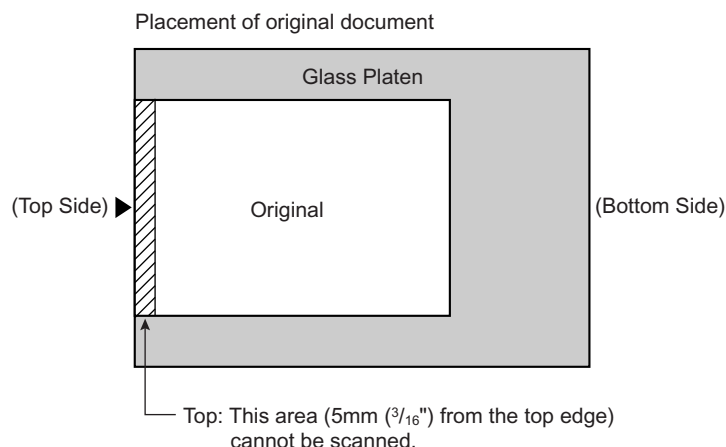
Specify the enlarging/reducing between 50% and 200% in increments of 1%.

#### Note:

- To avoid paper jam, flipping or Ink smudges on the back side by design the machine does not print too close to the edge. The top edge in particular needs 5 mm ( $\frac{3}{16}$ "") of margin space.

☞ p.19

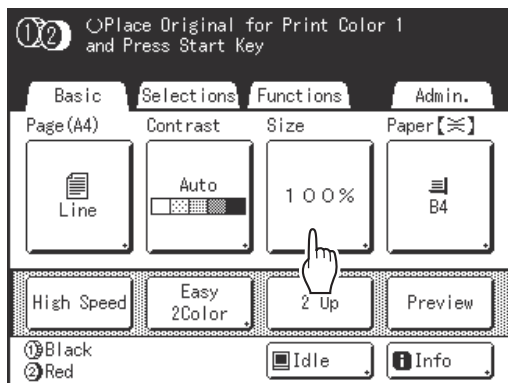
5 mm ( $\frac{3}{16}$ "") wide area on the top edge (marked ▲) of the Glass Platen or the optional ADF unit cannot be scanned, regardless of enlargement or reduction settings.



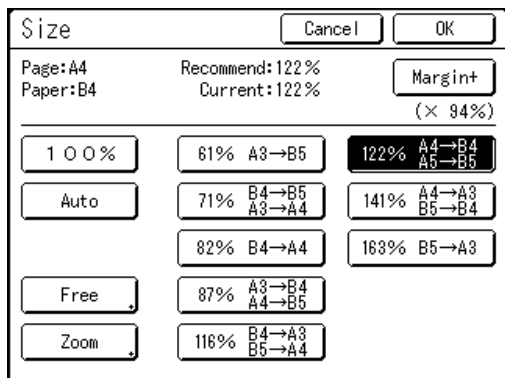
- Do not position the original within 5 mm ( $\frac{3}{16}$ "") of the top edge, or the top edge of its printed image will be cut off. This 5 mm ( $\frac{3}{16}$ "") margin will remain even in the “Max. Scan” setting.  
☞ p.98
- If the original document has no margin on its top edge, the top 5 mm ( $\frac{3}{16}$ "") of its print will be cut off even when “Margin+” is selected. Move the original about 5 mm ( $\frac{3}{16}$ "") inwards from the top edge of the glass platen and reduce the size.

## Enlargement and Reduction by Standard Ratio [Standard Ratio] [Margin+] [Auto]

### 1 Touch [Size] on the Master Making Basic Screen.



### 2 Touch the button corresponding to the desired size.



Touch **[100%]** to restore the original size.  
For original with no margins, touch **[Margin+]** before printing.

#### Important!:

- The “Margin+” setting is not available when “Auto”, “Free” or “Zoom” is selected.

#### Note:

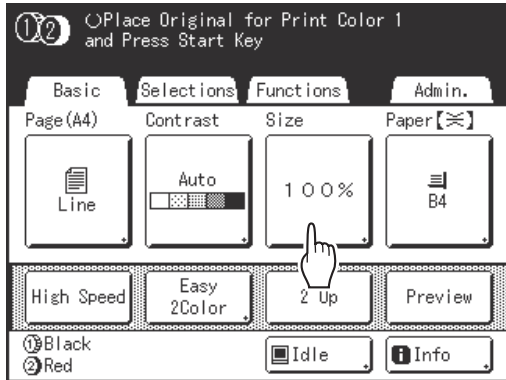
- If “Standard Ratio” and “Margin+” are used together, the “Current” field will indicate the combined result of “Standard Ratio” × “Margin-Plus Rate”.
- When the page size (original size) is not detected, “---” is displayed.

### 3 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Master Making Basic Screen.  
“Size” is updated.

# Enlargement/Reduction of a Changed Aspect Ration [Free]

## 1 Touch [Size] on the Master Making Basic Screen.



The reproduction size can be increased/ decreased in increments of 1%.

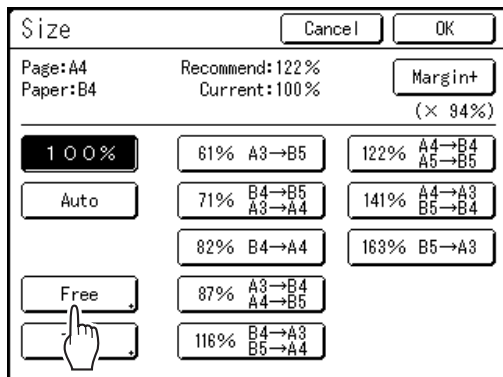
**Note:**

- Print Quantity Keys can also be used to enter numbers.
- Press the **C** key to restore the original size (100%).

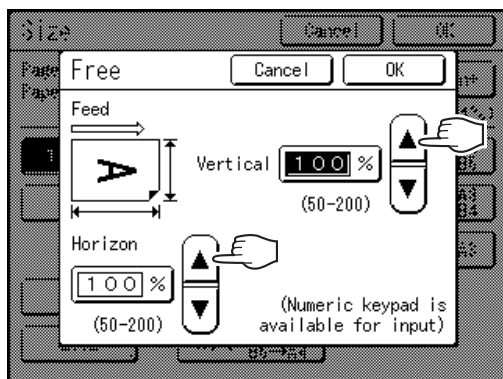
## 4 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Master Making Basic Screen. "Size" is updated.

## 2 Touch [Free].

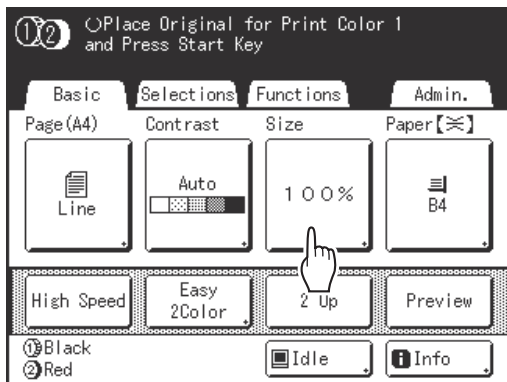


## 3 Touch **▲** or **▼** to adjust enlarging/ reducing in horizontal or vertical directions.

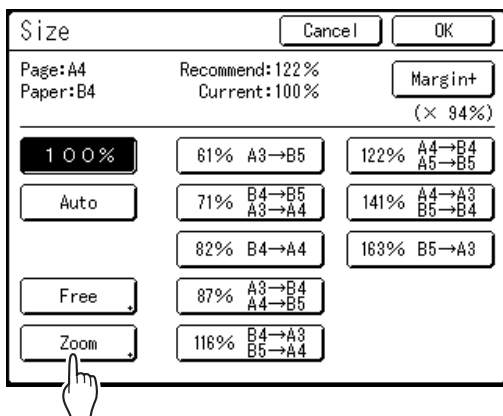


## Enlarging and Reducing with the Zoom Function [Zoom]

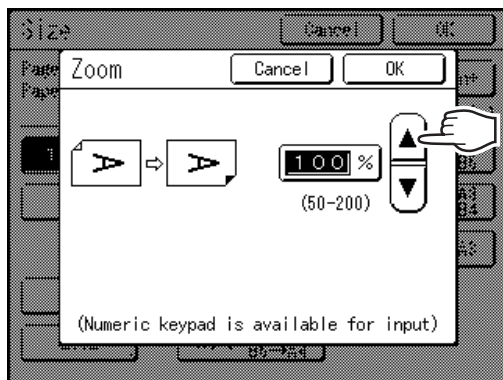
### 1 Touch [Size] on the Master Making Basic Screen.



### 2 Touch [Zoom].



### 3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to change ratio.



The reproduction size can be increased/ decreased in increments of 1%.

#### Note:

- Print Quantity Keys can also be used to enter numbers.
- Press the **C** key to restore the original size (100%).

### 4 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Master Making Basic Screen. "Size" is updated.



# Using Custom-Sized Paper [Paper]

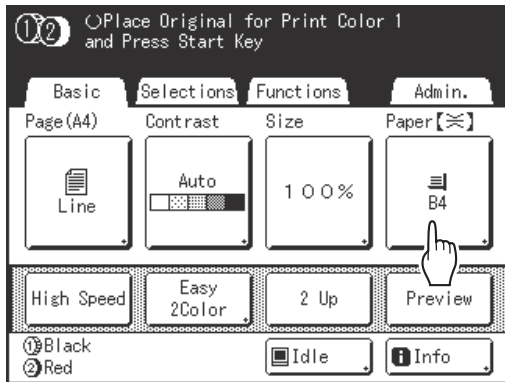
The machine automatically detects standard-sized paper in the Paper Feed Tray to create master of correct size for printing. However, because non-standard paper sizes cannot be detected, they must be manually specified before a master is made.

**Important!:**

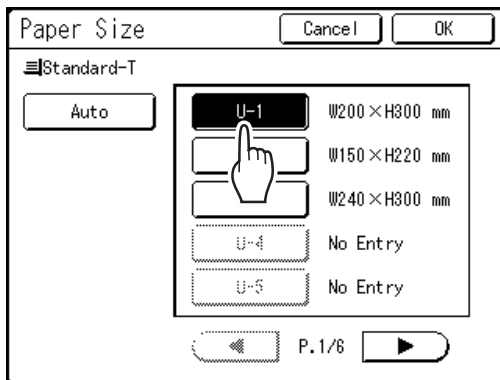
- Custom paper size must be registered on the Admin. Screen. Failure to do so may make an incomplete master.  
 ↪ p.204

**1 Touch [Paper] on the Master Making Basic Screen.**

Returns to the Master Making Basic Screen. Paper size is updated.



**2 Touch the desired paper size.**



**Important!:**

- Previously recorded custom paper sizes are displayed on this screen. Make sure to register any custom sizes not displayed here prior to use.  
 ↪ p.204


**Note:**

- Touch **[Auto]** to use standard-size paper.

**3 Touch [OK].**

# Automatic Printing [Auto-Process]

Master-making and printing can be performed automatically in sequence.

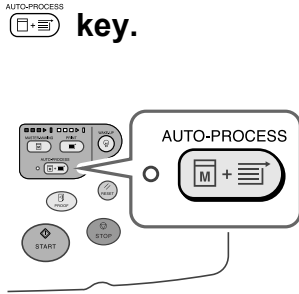
When “Auto-Process” is selected, simply enter the number of copies to print, then press the  key.

**Note:**

- When printing is completed, Print Quantity will restore the number originally entered.
- On the Admin. Screen, you can make such a setting that “Auto-Process” is always set to ON when you reset or start the machine.


 p.193

Press the  key.



The Auto-Process indicator turns on.

**Note:**

- To cancel “Auto-Process”, press the  key again. The indicator turns off.
- With factory default settings, if multiple originals are placed in the optional ADF unit and “Auto-Process” is set to ON, all originals will be printed automatically.
- When you use the ADF unit (option) for Dual-Color Printing, pay attention to the set order of originals. The master of the original to be scanned first will be made from Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

# Processing Photos with Dot Screen

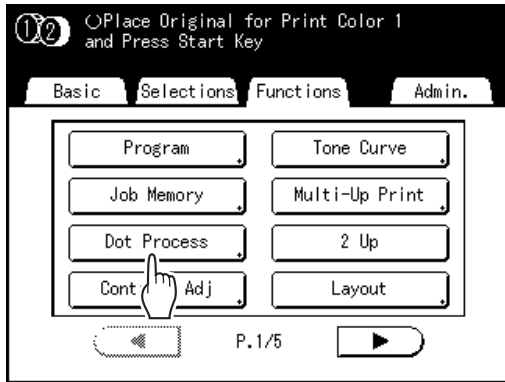
## [Dot Process]

“Dot Process” function processes photo originals with dot screening in order to print more clearly. Select from four types of dot patterns.

**Important!:**

- If an “Image” is set to “Line” or “Pencil”, “Dot Process” cannot be used.

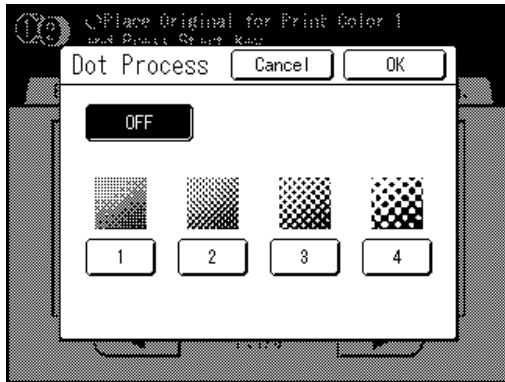
**1 Touch [Dot Process] on the Functions Screen.**



**3 Touch [OK].**

Returns to the Functions Screen. “Dot Process” setting is updated.

**2 Select a dot pattern.**



Number	1	2	3	4
Equivalent Lpi	106	71	53	34

**Note:**

- Touch [OFF] to cancel the “Dot Process”.

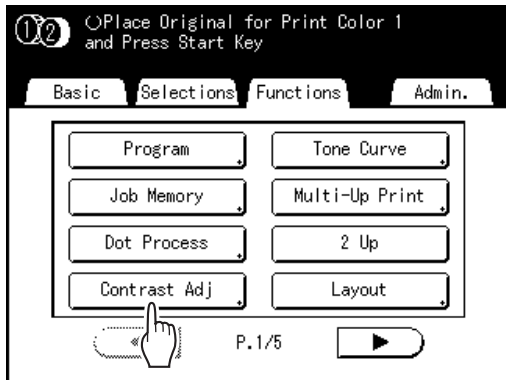
# Adjusting Photo Contrast [Contrast Adj]

For originals that have ill-defined photos, adjust the contrast to print more clearly. There are two ways to adjust the contrast.

**Important!:**

- If an "Image" is set to "Line", "Duo", or "Pencil", "Contrast Adj" cannot be used.

**1 Touch [Contrast Adj] on the Functions Screen.**



**2 Touch the button of the contrast to use.**



- **[Lighter]:** Lightens dark sections. Use this setting if the entire photo is underexposed and the target subject of the photo is ill-defined.
- **[Darker]:** Clarifies lighter portions. Use this setting if the entire photo is overexposed and the target subject of the photo is ill-defined.

**3 Touch [OK].**

Returns to the Functions Screen. Contrast Adj setting is updated.

# Adjusting Photo Gradation [Tone Curve]

You can adjust the light and shadow portions of a photo by 3 tones respectively.

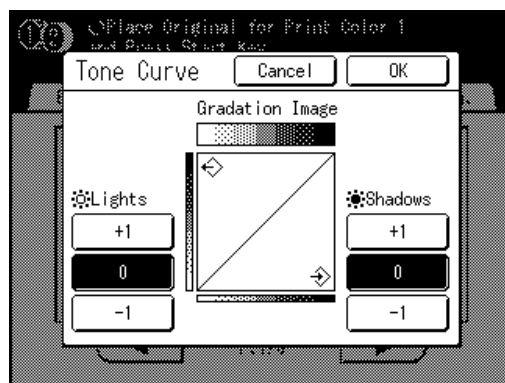
## Important!:

- If an "Image" is set to "Line", "Tone Curve" cannot be used.

## 1 Touch [Tone Curve] on the Functions Screen.



## 2 Touch the "Lights" and "Shadows" adjustment buttons.



- **Lights:** Adjusts the portion of the picture most exposed to light.
- **Shadows:** Adjusts the portion of the picture least exposed to light.

Use [+1] or [-1] to strengthen or weaken each respectively.

## 3 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Functions Screen. Tone Curve setting is updated.

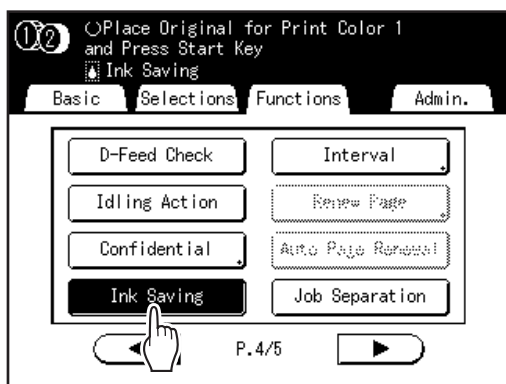
# Saving Ink [Ink Saving]

“Ink Saving” function makes a master that requires less Ink when printing.


**Important!:**

- The Ink consumption saving process may result in lighter prints than usual.
- This function is not available at the time of printing. It must be selected before the master-making process is started.
- “Contrast” and “Print Density Adjustment” functions are not available when “Ink Saving” is selected.
  - ☞ p.66
  - ☞ p.116

## Touch [Ink Saving] on the Functions Screen.



“Ink Saving” is set.

“ Ink Saving” will appear in the message area.

**Note:**

- “Ink Saving” is a useful function for master-making. Even if this function is set or canceled during printing, it doesn't reflect on the master that is currently rolled around the Print Drum (Cylinder). The setting will be reflected on the next master.

---

# Printing Multiple Originals on One Sheet

## [2 Up] [Multi-Up Print]

“Multi-Up” function prints multiple originals on one sheet.

### ◆ 2 Up

Prints two copies of the same original side-by-side on one sheet of paper.

#### Note:

- Using the optional ADF unit, two different originals can be printed side-by-side on one sheet of paper.

### ◆ Multi-Up Print

One or multiple originals (up to 4) can be printed on a single sheet of paper.

The border lines between the originals (shadows) will not be printed and you can get a clearer copy.

“Multi-Up Print” has the following three types:

- Single-Original: A single original is printed multiple times.
- Multiple-Original: Multiple originals are printed multiple times.
- Multi-Up Tickets: You can print multiple long, thin custom originals such as tickets.

Single-Original and Multiple-Original can print in quantities of 2, 4, 8 and 16 respectively.

#### Important!:

- Use standard-sized paper when using the “Multi-Up” function. With custom-sized paper placed, you cannot perform “Multi-Up” printing even when the size is stored on the Admin. Screen.

#### Note:

- “2 Up” and “Multi-Up” functions cannot be used with the following functions:
  - Auto 90°Rotation
  - Top Margin
  - Book Shadow
  - Binding margin
  - Size (Auto)
  - Original Scanning Size in Scanning Mode **[Auto]**
  - Easy 2Color
  - Ink Saving (If you change the “Image” settings between originals in Multiple-Original)

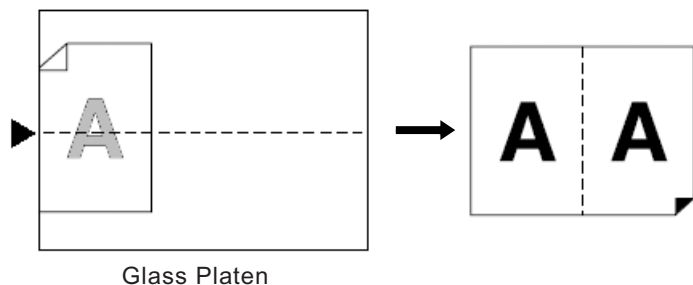
## Original Orientation and Print Results

---

The orientation of the original differs depending upon the number of images. The orientation and print results for each possibility are shown below.

### 2 Up

Prints two copies of the same original side-by-side on one sheet of paper.



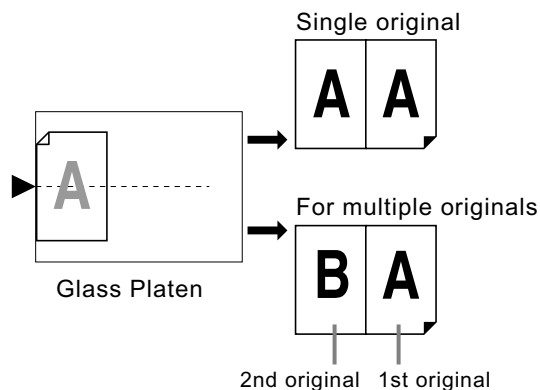
### Multi-Up Print

For Single-Original and Multiple-Original:

**Note:**

- When “Multiple-Original” is used in Multi-Up Print, the actual number of pages to be scanned is specified. In the case that the actual number of pages in the document is less than the number of pages specified in the mode settings, set equivalent number of blank pages in the machine to make up for the specified number. (For example, if you want to make eight pages and there are only three originals, add a blank page to the originals and set the four sheets for scanning.)

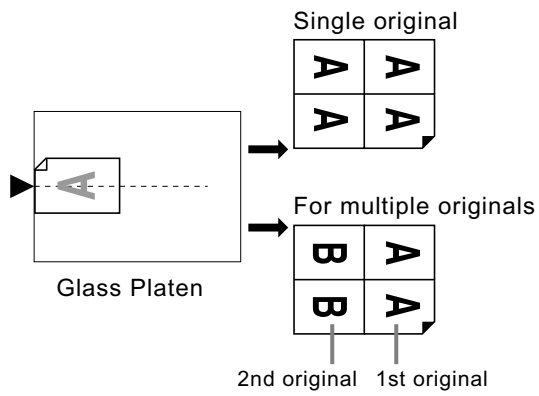
### ◆ 2 Up (2 on 1)



Up to 2 originals can be scanned.

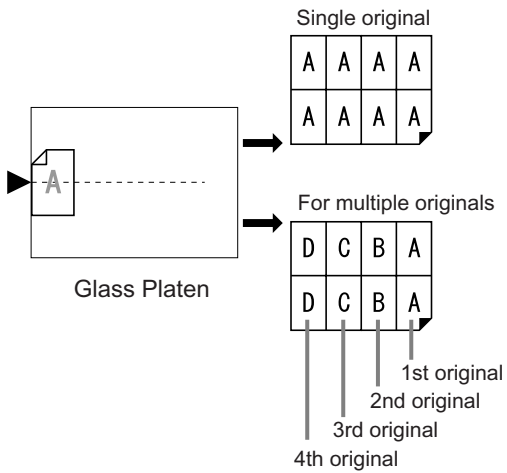


◆ 4 Up (4 on 1)



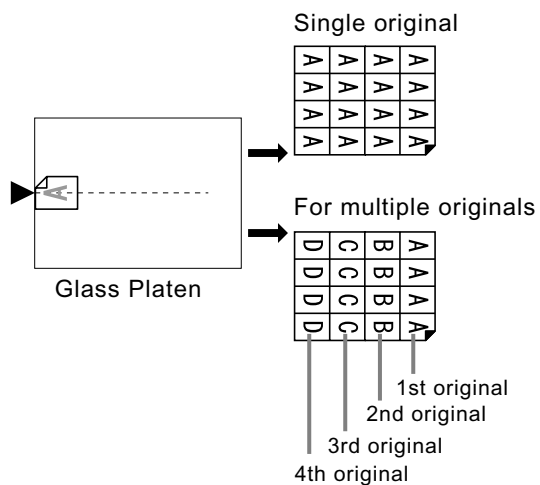
Up to 2 originals can be scanned.

◆ 8 Up (8 on 1)



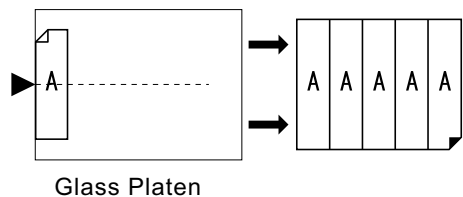
Up to 4 originals can be scanned.

◆ **16 Up (16 on 1)**



Up to 4 originals can be scanned.

◆ **For Multi-Up Tickets:**



“Multi-Up Tickets” cannot be used with multiple originals.  
The number of images printed is determined by the width of the ticket.

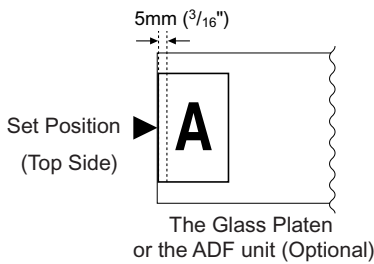
## Margin

Leave a margin of at least 5 mm ( $\frac{3}{16}$ " ) on the top edge of the Glass Platen or the optional ADF unit. Allowing a proper margin is critical in well-balanced Multi-Up positioning.

☞ p.19

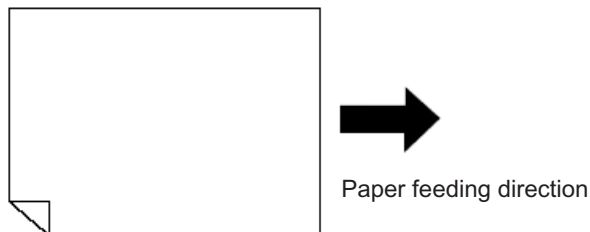
### Note:

- A margin on the top edge will remain regardless of the enlargement or reduction settings.



## Orientation of Print Paper

Always place paper in the Paper Feed Tray as shown below.



## Multi-Up Interval

“Multi-Up” scans a number of sheets of the original.

The interval between the first scan and the second scan is called “Multi-Up Interval”.

Replace originals or change settings for the second scan during the “Multi-Up Interval”.

### Note:

- Default “Multi-Up Interval” can be set on the Admin. Screen. The factory default is 15 seconds. ☞ p.195

## 2 Up Operation

### 1 Select a Print mode

Select Mono-Color or Dual-Color print.

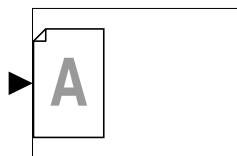
**Note:**

- See p.29 for how to select a print mode.

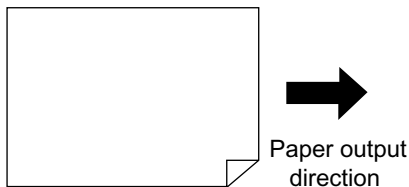
### 2 Set the original and print paper.

**Important!:**

- Pay attention to the orientation of the original. For "2 Up", make sure to place the original as shown below. The same is true when using the optional ADF unit.



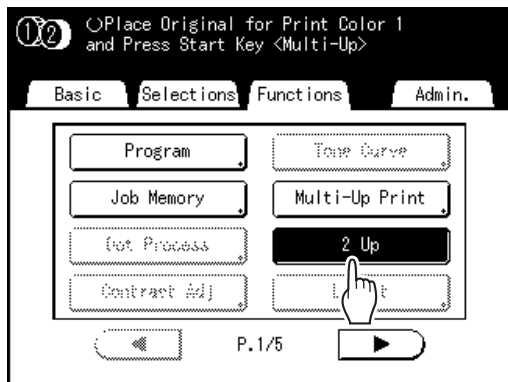
- Make sure to load paper as shown below.



**Note:**

- With the optional ADF unit you can print two different originals side by side on a single sheet of paper (2 in 1 printing). Set the two originals one above the other.
- To print two copies of the same original side by side on a single sheet of paper (2 Up printing), set the original on the Glass Platen.

### 3 Touch [2 Up] on the Functions Screen.



### 4 Make necessary settings.

Afterwards, perform the same operation as the normal master-making and printing process.

The reproduction size needs to be set according to the combination of the original size and printing paper size.

Set the reproduction size by referring to the following tables:

		Original			
		A4	B5	A5	B6
Printing Paper	A3	100%	116%	141%	163%
	B4	87%	100%	123%	142%
	A4	71%	82%	100%	116%
	B5	61%	71%	87%	100%

		Original			
		A6	B7	A7	B8
Printing Paper	A3	200%	---	---	---
	B4	173%	200%	---	---
	A4	138%	163%	200%	---
	B5	122%	141%	173%	200%

		Original	
		Letter	Statement
Printing Paper	Ledger	100%	127%
	Legal	77%	100%
	Letter	66%	100%
	Statement	50%	66%

### 5 Press the key.

Starts scanning the original.

# Operation for Multi-Up Printing

## 1 Select a Print mode.

Select Mono-Color or Dual-Color print.

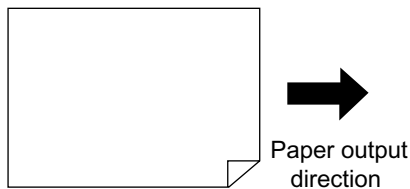
**Note:**

- See p.29 for how to select a print mode.

## 2 Set the original and print paper.

**Important!:**

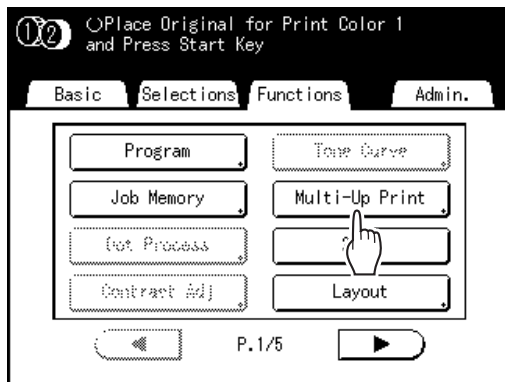
- Pay attention to the orientation of the original. p.78
- Make sure to load paper as shown below.



**Note:**

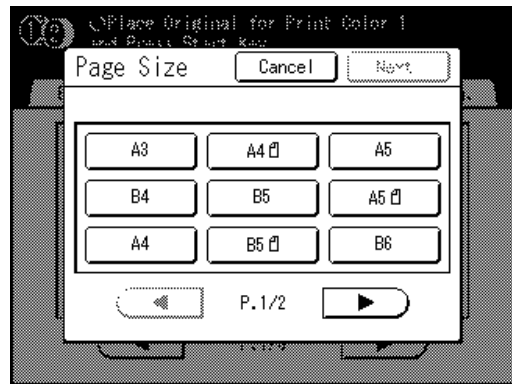
- It is convenient to place all originals in the optional ADF unit when using the “Multiple-Original” mode. p.42

## 3 Touch [Multi-Up Print] on the Functions Screen.

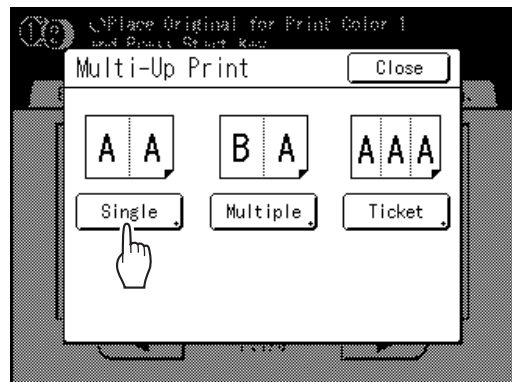


## 4 Select a Page Size to use.

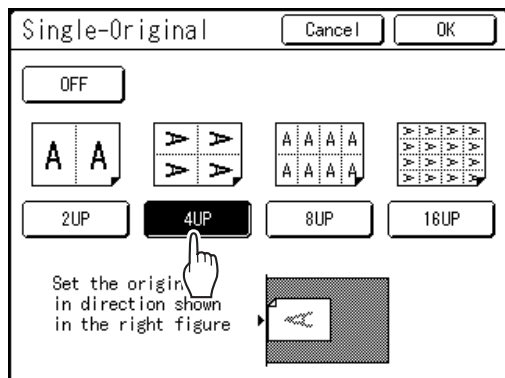
Touch the button to match the original size and touch [Next>].



## 5 Touch [Single] for Single-Original, touch [Multiple] for Multiple-Original.



## 6 Touch the button of the number of images to use.



To cancel the “Multi-Up Print” settings, touch **[Cancel]**.

## 7 Touch **[OK]**.

Returns to the Functions Screen.  
 “Multi-Up Print” setting is updated.  
 The reproduction size is automatically set according to the selected number of images based on the paper size and original size to use.

## 8 Make necessary settings.

Make various settings as needed.

### Important!:

- When the reproduction size is set before setting Multi-Up Print, the reproduction size is invalidated and changes to the size setting suitable for the selected number of images.
- In the case of Mono-Color or Dual-Color printing, the image of the 2nd original and subsequent originals can be changed to something different from the image of the 1st original.



## 9 Press the key.

Scanning the original starts.


In the case of Dual-Color printing, set the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 continuously.

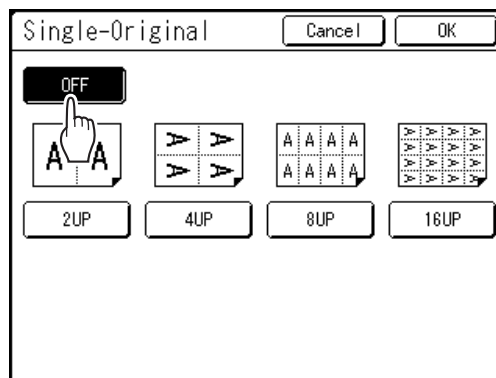
Afterwards, perform the same operation as the normal master-making and printing process.

### Important!:

- When displaying the message “Place Another Original and Press Start Key. To Cancel, Press Stop Key”, the machine waits for the next original to be loaded. Set the next original and press the  key while waiting (interval) time. Press the  key to cancel the “Multi-Up Print” mode.
- The Glass Platen and the optional ADF unit cannot be used at the same time. If using the Glass Platen to scan the first sheet of the original, you must continue to use the Glass Platen to scan the rest of the original.
- To scan the original with the optional ADF unit and use the “Single-Original”, you need to set the original twice.

### Note:

- When “Multiple-Original” is used in Multi-Up Print, the actual number of pages to be scanned is specified. In the case that the actual number of pages in the document is less than the number of pages specified in the mode settings, set an equivalent number of blank pages in the machine to make up for the specified number or press the  key in the status of waiting for the next original. Master-making starts. [p.78](#)
- When using the “Auto Process” setting, printing will continue automatically when originals are set in the optional ADF unit.
- To cancel a “Multi-Up Print” setting once it has been confirmed, follow step 3, touch **[OFF]** and then **[OK]** on the screen.



## Operation for Multi-Up Tickets

For "Multi-Up Tickets", the specification of the short edge size of the original (the width) is used to calculate the number of images that can be printed on one sheet of paper (long edge of the print paper divided by ticket width). A ticket width of between 50 mm (2") and 210 mm (8.3") can be specified.

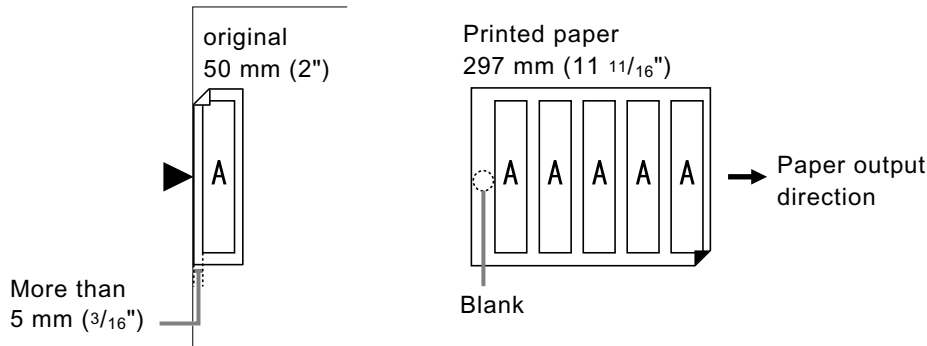
Ex.)

Ticket width 50 mm (2")

Long edge of the print paper 297 mm (11<sup>11/16</sup>") (A4 size)

$297 \div 50 = 5$  with a remainder of 47

In this example, 5 images print on one sheet of paper.



### 1 Select a Print mode.

Select Mono-Color or Dual-Color print.

**Note:**

- See p.29 for how to select a print mode.

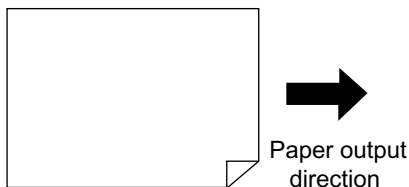
### 2 Set the original and print paper.

Place the original on the Glass Platen.

For Dual-Color printing, place the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

**Important!:**

- Make sure to load paper as shown below.

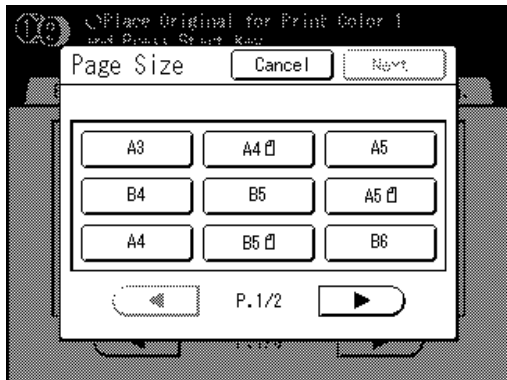


### 3 Touch [Multi-Up Print] on the Functions Screen.



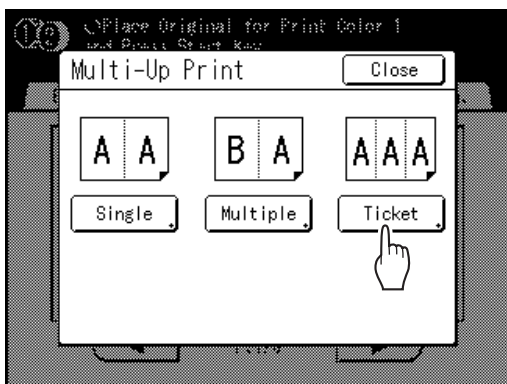
#### 4 Select a Page size.

Touch either one of the Page size button and touch **[Next>]**.  
 (In “Multi-Up Tickets”, the Page Size selection will not affect the rest of the procedures.)

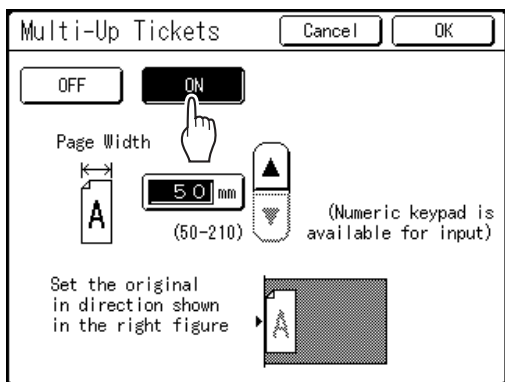


The Multi-Up Print screen is displayed.

#### 5 Touch **[Ticket]**.

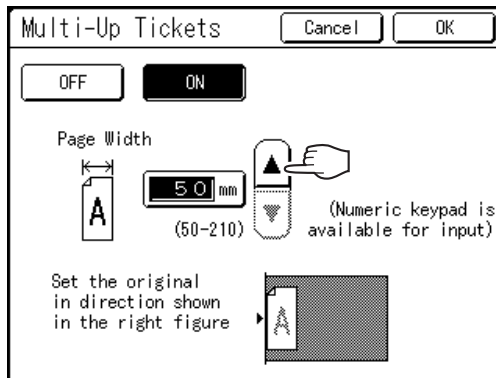


#### 6 Touch **[ON]**.



You can specify the “Page Width”.

#### 7 Touch **▲** or **▼** to specify the page width.



#### Important!:

- If you have enlarged/reduced size in step 9 (setting print functions), be careful about the following points:
  - Specify the ticket width after enlarging/reducing.
  - If you enlarged the size, make sure that the bigger size does not exceed the specified original’s “Page Width” or the short edges of the print paper.
  - When enlarging, make sure to prepare paper that fits the enlarged size.

#### 8 Touch **[OK]**.

Returns to the Functions Screen.  
 “Multi-Up Tickets” setting is updated.

#### 9 Make necessary settings.

Make various settings as needed.



## 10 Press the key.

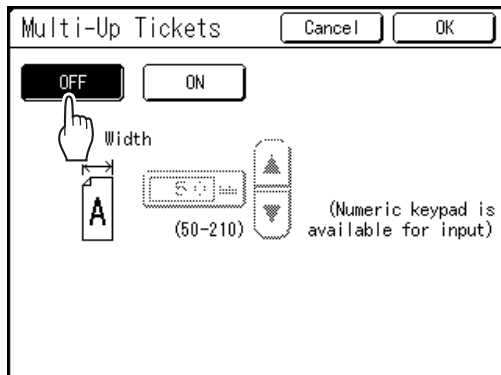
Starts scanning the original.

For Dual-Color printing, place the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

Afterwards, perform the same operation as the normal master-making and printing process.

### Note:

- To cancel a “Multi-Up Print” setting once it has been confirmed, follow step 3, touch **[OFF]** and then **[OK]** on the screen.



# Laying out continuous originals on one sheet of paper [Layout]

Continuously arranging several originals on one sheet of paper is called “Layout”. This function is convenient when you want to save paper and make stapled documents.

## Important!:

- “Layout” function cannot be used with “Easy 2Color” or “Auto 90°Rotation”.

## Setting items

### ◆ Page Size setting

Set the size of original to use.

#### Important!:

- The reproduction size is determined from the page size and printing paper size. When the reproduction size is not appropriate, an error message is displayed. In such case, use a printing paper of different size or change the size of the original.

### ◆ Number of images

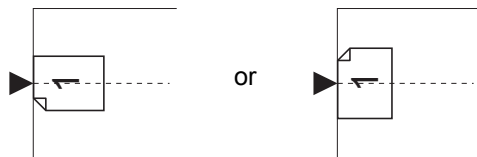
Set the quantity of originals to be laid out on one sheet of paper.

- 2UP
- 4UP
- 8UP
- 16UP

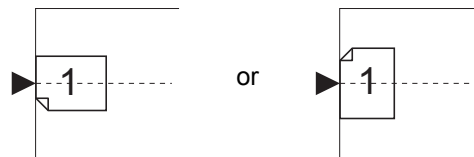
### ◆ Original orientation (direction of text on the original)

The original orientation is determined by the set number of images. Set the original according to the orientation of characters on the original seen from the front side.

#### Align Top



#### Align Side

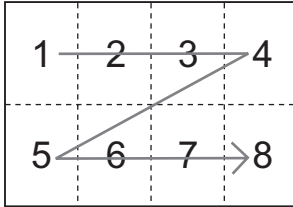


◆ **Layout order**

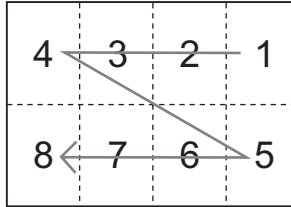
Set the order of the images when the printed paper is placed in the orientation that allows the characters on the original to be read.

Ex.) Number of images: 8UP, Original orientation (orientation of characters on the original): Align Side

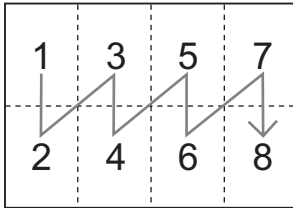
**L-top to R**



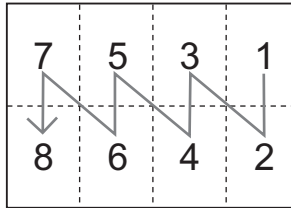
**R-top to L**



**L-top to B**



**R-top to B**



**Note:**

- Depending on the “Number of images” and “Original orientation” settings, the possible settings for “Layout order” differ.

### 1 Select the Print mode.

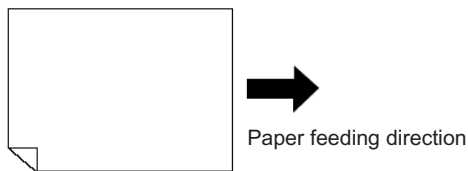
Select Mono-Color or Dual-Color print.  
To select the print mode, see p.29.

### 2 Set the original and print paper.

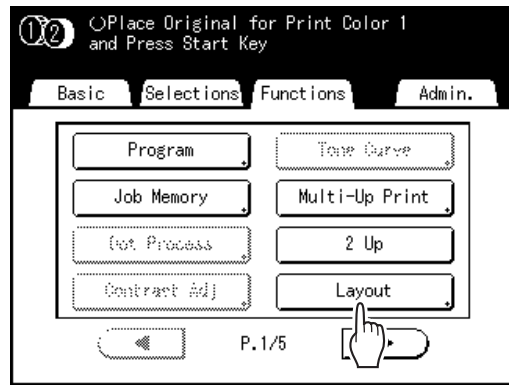
Place the original on the Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.  
For Dual-Color printing, set the original for the Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.  
To place the original, see p.42.

**Important!:**

- Be careful with the orientation of the original.
- When the ADF unit is used, after the set original is scanned by a designated number of images, the images are automatically laid out in the order of Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 to Print Drum (Cylinder) 2. Therefore, when the number of originals used for one Print Drum (Cylinder) is smaller than the number of images (when there is margin), master-making is not performed correctly even if all originals are set.  
For example, for Dual-Color printing of four originals, you cannot let the 4th image to be scanned as a margin by setting the 1st to 3rd pages as the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and the 4th to 6th pages as the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.  
When the number of originals used for one Print Drum (Cylinder) is smaller than the number of images, insert a number of blank sheets to offset the shortage between the originals for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and the originals for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 or set the originals for each Print Drum (Cylinder).
- Make sure to set the printing paper in the orientation shown in the figure below (the long side points in the direction of transfer).

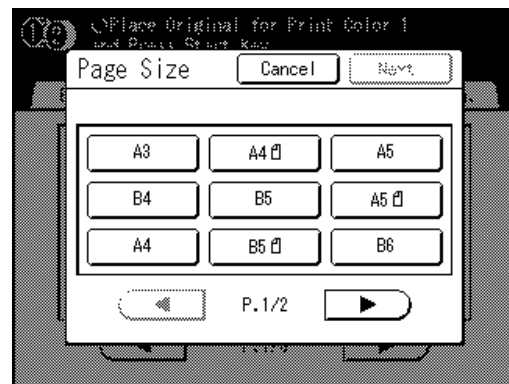


### 3 Touch [Layout] on the Functions Screen.



### 4 Select the page size to use.

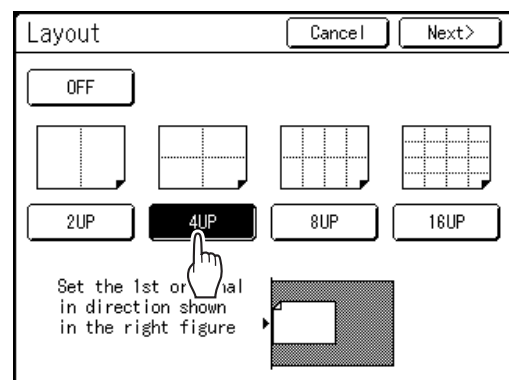
Touch the button corresponding to the size of the original and touch [Next>].



The reproduction size is automatically set and the Layout Screen is displayed.

### 5 Touch the button for the number of images to set.

Touch the button for the number of images to be laid out and touch [Next>].



**Important!:**

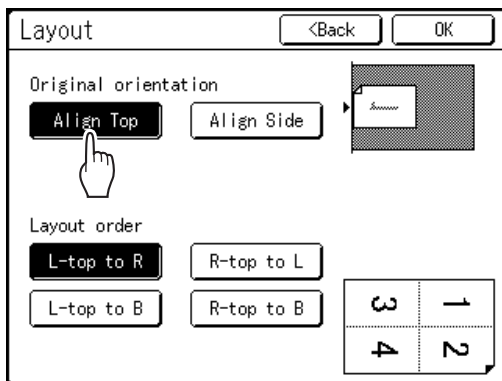
- Check if the orientation of the originals has been set in the direction determined for the set number of images.

**Note:**

- To cancel the Layout setting, touch **[Cancel]**.

**6 Set the orientation of characters of the original.**

Select **[Align Top]** or **[Align Side]** for the orientation of characters on the original seen from the touch panel side.



**7 Touch the layout order button to set.**

**8 Touch [OK].**

"Layout" is set and the Functions Screen appears.

**9 Configure print functions.**

Set various functions as needed.

**10 Press the  key.**

Scanning of 1st page of the original starts.

**Note:**


- When you set the original in the ADF unit in step 2, after the original is scanned with the designated number of images, one proof copy is made from Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and the master is made for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 in succession.

**11 Scan all originals and make a master.**

When you set the original on the Glass Platen, replace the original and repeat steps 9 and 10.

**◆ For Mono-Color printing:**


Repeat scanning until the set number of images have been scanned.

When the number of originals is smaller than the number of images, after all originals are scanned, touch  and then **[Yes]**. The unscanned part becomes blank.

When original scanning is complete, a master is made and the Printing Basic Screen is displayed.

**◆ For Dual-Color printing:**

Repeat scanning until scanning the set number of images of the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

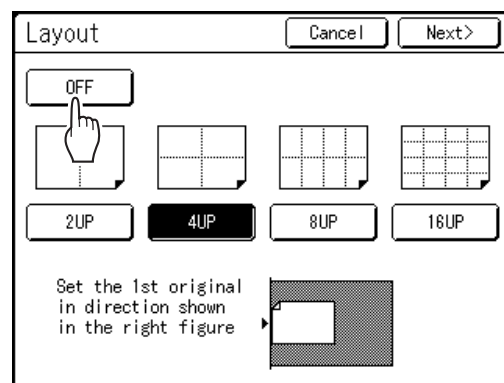
When the number of originals is smaller than the number of images, after all originals are scanned, touch  and then **[Yes]**. The unscanned part becomes a blank.

Sequentially, set the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 and repeat steps 9 to 11. When original scanning is complete, a master is made for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2, and the Printing Basic Screen is displayed.

Afterwards, perform the same operation as the normal master-making and printing process.

**Note:**

- The original is laid out in the scanned order.
- If you want to cancel the layout setting after setting the number of images, perform step 3 to display the Layout Screen. Touch **[OFF]** and then **[OK]**.



# Printing from Bound Documents

## [Book Shadow]

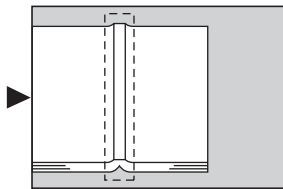
You can erase the binding “spine” shadow in the center when printing from such bound originals with facing as magazines and books.

You can select the area to be erased (erasure width).

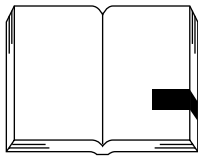
Moreover, magazines or books can be spread open on the Glass Platen and their pages printed onto separate sheets.

### Important!:

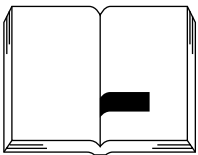
- If “Book Shadow” is selected during Dual-Color printing, the settings are applied to both Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 (the setting cannot be applied to just Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 or just Print Drum (Cylinder) 2).
- Be sure to place and align the original on the center of the Glass Platen as shown below.



- If the erasure width is set to "Auto", the following image areas are also erased (or half-toned).
  - A continuous black image area (non-white) from the edge of the original



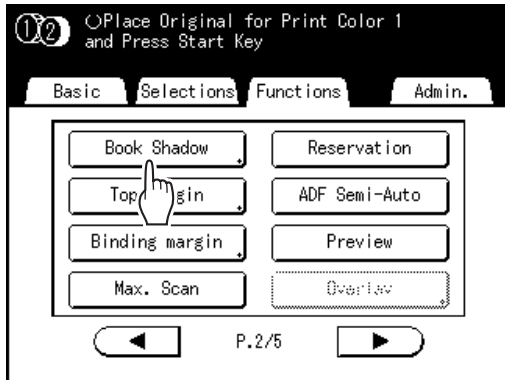
- A continuous black image area from the center of the original



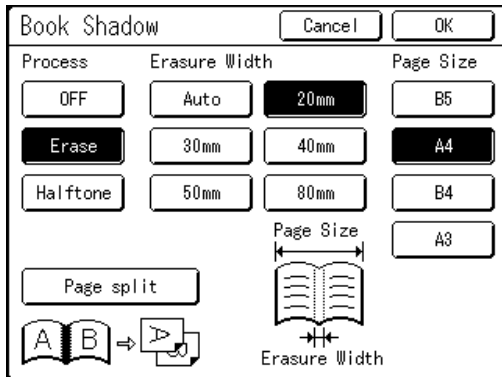
### Note:

- Book Shadow function cannot be used with the following functions:
  - Top Margin (when **[Page split]** is selected)
  - Binding margin
  - Ink Saving
  - Scanning Contrast (**[Auto]**)
  - Multi-Up Print
  - Easy 2Color
  - Scanning Side -ADF
  - Layout
- If a Gauge Cover is installed, remove the Gauge Cover and then use the “Book Shadow”.  
If you use the “Book Shadow” with the Gauge Cover installed, the surrounding image gets black on the master.

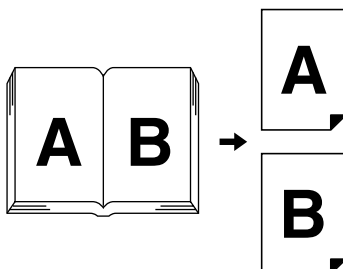
# 1 Touch [Book Shadow] on the Functions Screen.



# 2 Touch the shadow processing method.



- **[OFF]**: Book Shadow is not performed.
- **[Erase]**: Erases shadows near the center and around the original.  
The erasure width for the binding shadow can be selected.  
Select the size of spread original from "Page Size".
- **[Halftone]**: Photo processes the center shadow for a natural feel and deletes shadows that it can around the original.
- **[Page split]**: Print out two separate pages from spread original. Select the size of spread original from "Page Size".



## Note:

- In this case, "B" is printed first.

## Important!:

- In Dual-Color printing, "Page split" is not available. Use this function with Mono-Color printing.
- When "Page split" is set, use A4 or B5 as printing paper.
- To set the reproduction size, it is recommended to use **[Auto]**.

# 3 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Functions Screen.  
"Book Shadow" setting is updated.

## Note:

- When "Page split" is set, the original is scanned twice.
- If you are scanning a thick book such as an encyclopedia, raise the hinge of the platen cover and press down the cover for best results.



# Cutting the Top Margin of the Original and Printing [Top Margin]

You can cut the top portion of the margin to between 0 to 99 mm (0.0" to 3.9") and make a master. This feature enables you to skip the registration marks\* on the original and print on the finish-sized paper without any of these marks.

A margin on the paper periphery is required even if you use "Top Margin" function.

**\* About the Registration Mark**

In the field of commercial printing, it is normal to print on paper that is larger than the finished size and then cut down to the finished size afterwards. The symbol that indicates the position to cut in this event is known as the registration mark.

**Important!:**

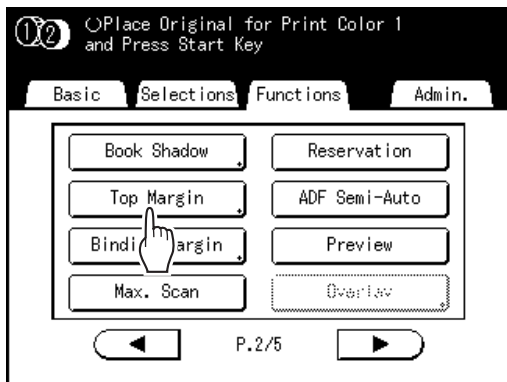
- When setting both the "Size" and "Top Margin", cut the Top Margin within the specified range and then enlarge/reduce the original.
- Do not use "Auto Reproduction Size".
- This function cannot be used with "Multi-Up Print" or "2 Up".

When performing Dual-Color printing, [Top Margin] can be set separately for each of the original of Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and the original of Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

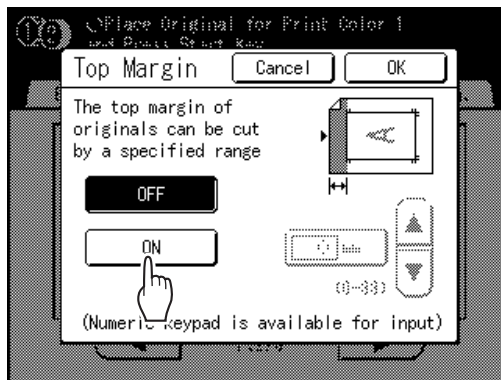
**1 Place an original.**

Place the original face-down on the Glass Platen. To place the original, see p.42

**2 Touch [Top Margin] on the Functions Screen.**

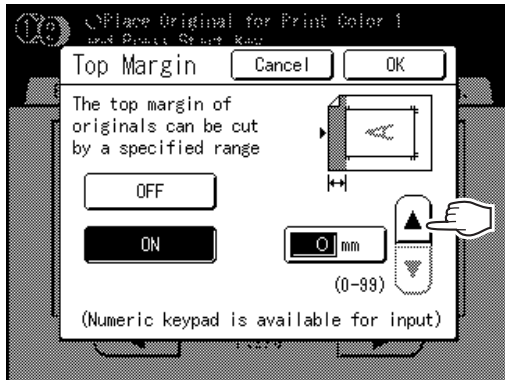


**3 Touch [ON].**





#### 4 Touch ▲ or ▼ to specify the cut width.



You can set from 0 to 99 mm (0.0" to 3.9").

**Note:**

- Print Quantity Keys can also be used to enter the numbers.

#### 5 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Functions Screen. Top Margin setting is updated.

# Adjusting the Master-Making position

## [Binding margin]

You can make a master by putting the binding margin on either the top, bottom, left and right of the original. The adjustable range is from 0 to 50 mm (0.0" to 1<sup>31</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" ) on the top, bottom, left and right.

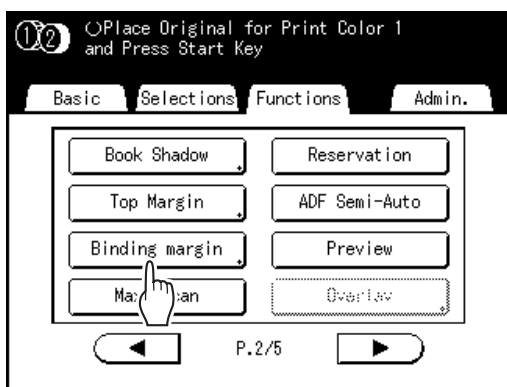
**Important!:**

- “Binding margin” is a function for adjusting the master-making position and not a function for adding a binding margin.
- When the original has no margin, the image may extend out of the area for master-making. The part that is outside the master-making area is not used for master-making.
- The position of the binding margin is the side that appears first when printed copies are discharged to the Paper Receiving Tray.
- The binding margin can be set to either the Top, Bottom, Right, and Left of printed copies.
- When auto reproduction is set, move the image to where it should appear after the magnification has been adjusted.
- This function is available with “Auto 90°Rotation” and “Rotate”.

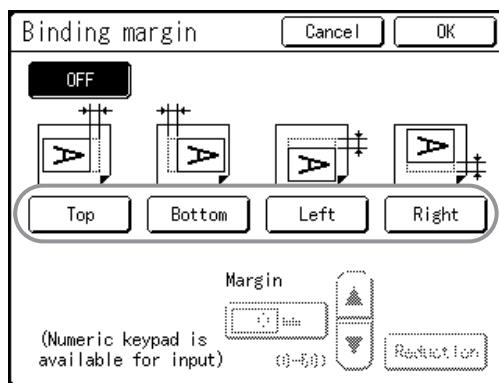
**Note:**

- When the Print Position Adjustment on the control panel is used in combination with the binding margin, the Output Print Position can be moved up to approx. 65 mm (2 <sup>9</sup>/<sub>16</sub>" ) vertically and approx. 60 mm (2 <sup>3</sup>/<sub>8</sub>" ) horizontally with respect to the position of the original image.
- “Binding margin” is not available with the below functions.
  - Multi-Up Print
  - 2 Up
  - Overlay
  - Scanning Side -ADF

**1 Touch [Binding margin] on the Functions Screen.**



**2 Touch [Top], [Bottom], [Left] or [Right] to adjust.**



**3** Touch ▲ or ▼ to specify the shift distance.


**Note:**

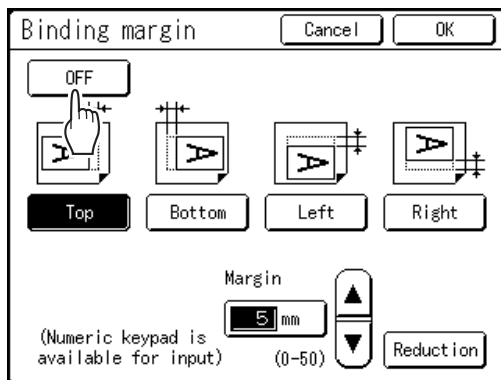
- Print Quantity Keys can also be used to enter a value.
- When you touch **[Reduction]**, the image without a Shift designated for the Margin mode becomes the print image and the size is reduced around the center of the print image so that the original is completely printed within the paper.

**4** Touch **[OK]**.

The binding margin shift is set and the Functions Screen appears.

**Note:**

- When you want to cancel the once fixed binding margin, either press the  key or touch **[OFF]** in step 2, and then touch **[OK]**.



# Making a Master that Utilizes the Maximum Printing Area [Max. Scan]

When a master is made, automatic paper size detection and image size adjustment applies to allow appropriate print margins. This is to prevent paper jams, and keep the internal roller free of Ink stains.

By selecting "Max. Scan", maximum printing area will apply to the scanned image, regardless of the print paper size or original document size.

Be sure to check the sizes of the original document and the printing paper first.

## ◆ Maximum Printing Area

ME 9450: Ledger 291 mm × 425 mm (11<sup>15</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" × 16<sup>23</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" )

ME 9450: Letter 291 mm × 203 mm (11<sup>15</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" × 8")

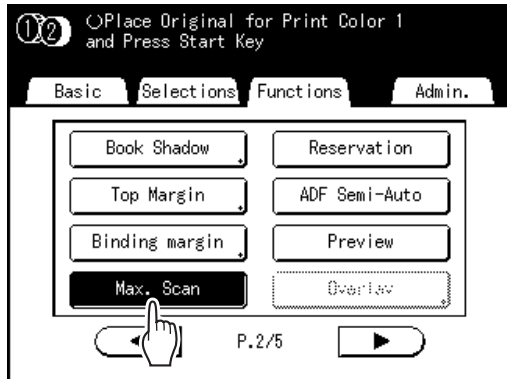
ME 9350/6350: A3 291 mm × 413 mm (11<sup>15</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" × 16<sup>1</sup>/<sub>4</sub>" )

ME 9350/6350: A4 291 mm × 203 mm (11<sup>15</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" × 8")

## Important!:

- The 5 mm (<sup>3</sup>/<sub>16</sub>" ) margin on the top cannot be scanned even in the "Max. Scan" setting.
- Do not use print paper smaller than the area of the image made on the master. This may cause Ink stains.
- The entire surface of the Glass Platen must be clean.  
By scanning the maximum size, dirt found outside the original document area will also be included in the master.  
This may cause the internal roller to be stained with Ink.

## Touch [Max. Scan] on the Functions Screen.

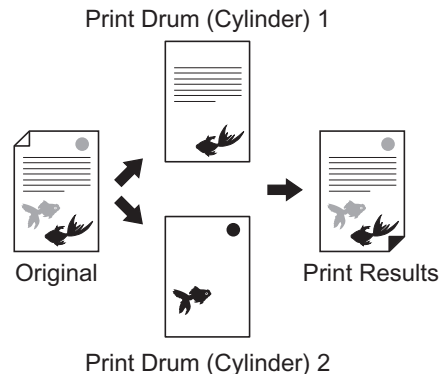


"Max. Scan" is selected.

# Dual-Color Printing with 1 Original

## [Easy 2Color]

“Easy 2Color” is a function for making a master by dividing the data into a dark-colored part and a light-colored part when scanning one original with the scanner. The dark-colored part is assigned to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and the light-colored part is assigned to Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 when making a master. Use “Sw.Color” to switch the allocation of original on Print Drums (Cylinders).



### Important!:

- In this section, the explanation is based on the condition that black is set for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and red is set for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

## Easy 2Color Types

There are two types/six ways for “Easy 2Color”.

### ◆ Separating by contrast of the original

In this separation method, the dark and light sections of the original are automatically detected.

- Red Color
- Hand Writing--1
- Hand Writing--2

### ◆ Separating by specified area

Draw around the part of the original that you want to print with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 by using a recommended pen.

- Specified Area
- Separation Sheet
- Color Editor

### Important!:

- When “Red Color”, “Hand Writing--1”, “Hand Writing--2”, or “Color editor” is used, “Image” automatically set to “Line”.
- When using an original containing a mixture of texts and photos or a photo original, you are recommended to select “Specified Area” or “Separation Sheet”.
- When either “Red Color”, “Hand Writing--1” or “Hand Writing--2” is selected in “Easy 2Color”, “Scanning Contrast” is automatically set to “Auto”.  
Moreover, when “Specified Area” or “Separation Sheet” is selected, you cannot select “Auto” for “Scanning Contrast”.
- The data that has been separated in “Easy 2Color” cannot be saved as storage data.
- Storage data and USB Flash Drive data cannot be used as the original for Easy 2Color. (excluding Color editor)

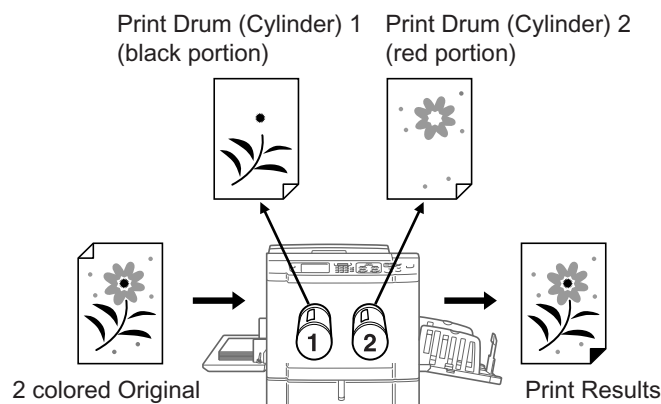
### Note:

- A button for frequently used separation can be displayed on the Functions Screen. If you select either one of the separations by “Easy 2Color” under Admin. Screen, the button with the name of the selected separation can be displayed on the Functions Screen.
- This function cannot be used with the following functions:
  - Scanning Contrast (“Auto” is not available when “Specified Area” / “Separation Sheet” is selected.)
  - Multi-Up Print
  - Size
  - Editor
  - Stamp
  - OneSide MasterMake
  - 2 Up
  - Book Shadow
  - Layout
  - Binding margin

### Red Color

Separates the colors of an original created with black and light red.

The master of the black portion of the original is created on Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, the red portion on Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 (Reversed when **[Sw.Color]** is selected).



### Important!:

- If you are creating an original on a computer, use orange for red.

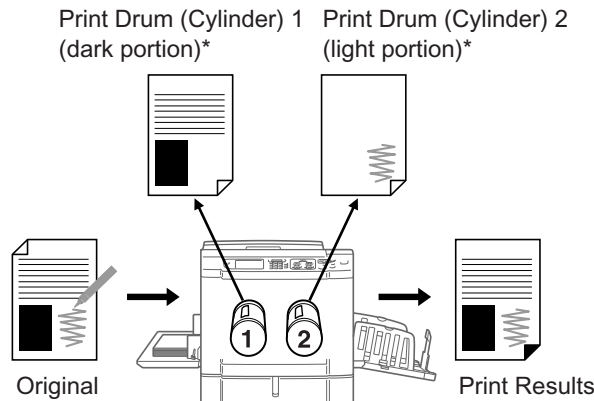
## Hand Writing--1

Separates lighter images written with the recommended pen, pencil or mechanical pencil from black printed images by a copier or laser printer.

The master of the prior original is created on Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, the handwritten portion on Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 (Reversed when **[Sw.Color]** is selected).

### Note:

- Do not use a ballpoint pen to write.  
Red writing may be detected as black.
- Use H to 2B for mechanical pencils.

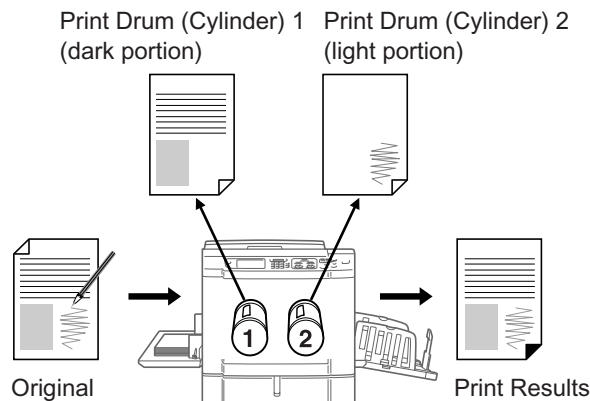


\* For details about Contrast, see “About Red Color, Hand Writing--1, Hand Writing--2 Originals” (p.104).

## Hand Writing--2

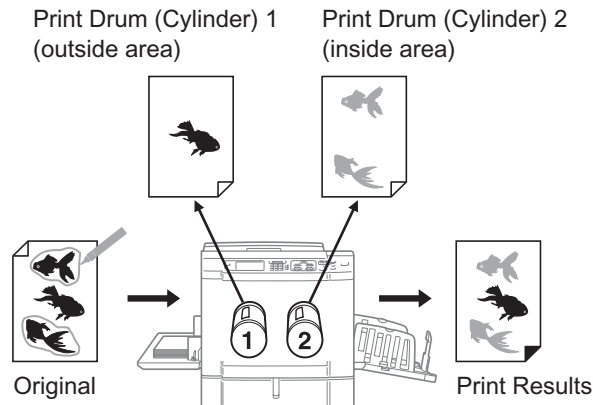
Separates handwriting written using the recommended pen or red pencil on originals from black printed images by a RISO printer or Ink-jet printer (documents printed with a lighter shade of black, or with water-based Ink, etc.).

The master of the prior original is created on Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, the handwritten portion on Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 (Reversed when **[Sw.Color]** is selected).



## Specified Area

Separates the original that has been circled directly upon with the recommended pen in the desired area. The master of portion outside the specified area is created on Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, the portion within the specified area is created on Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

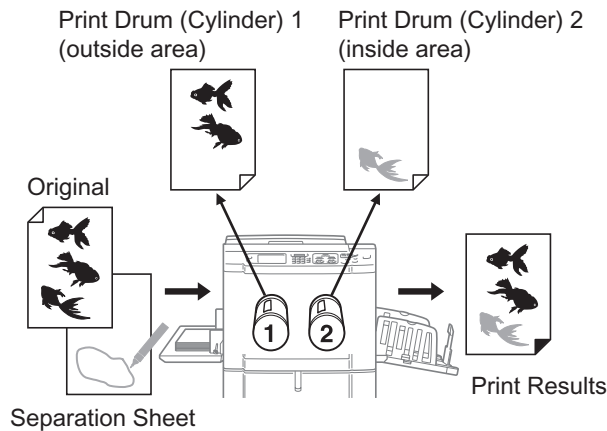


### Important!:

- Use "Separation Sheet" if the original contains photos or color images.
- The optional ADF unit is not available for this function. Set the original on the Glass Platen.

## Separation Sheet

Separates the original using a Separation Sheet that is circled on using the recommended pen for the desired area. The master of the portion outside the specified area is created on Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, within the specified area is created on Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

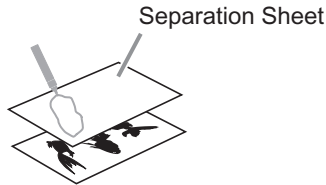




**Note:**

- About the Separation Sheet

Use the Separation Sheet if you are using an original that you cannot write on. Also use the Separation Sheet for separating originals with photos or color images. The Separation Sheet should be a white sheet of paper the same size as the original. Place the sheet on the original and draw around the area to be printed by Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 with the pen.

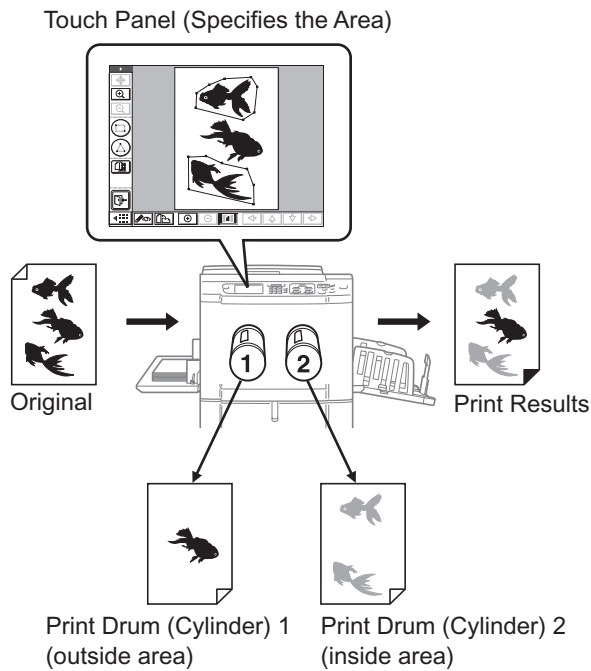


**Color editor**

This function is used to execute Dual-Color print only by specifying the desired areas to be separated on the touch panel after scanning a paper original.

Also this function can be used by calling storage data.

Assign the part outside the area to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and that inside area to Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 to make a master.



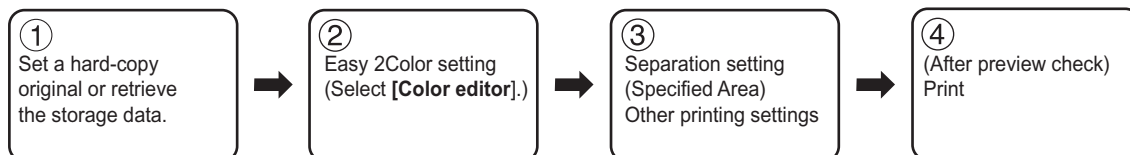
**Important!:**

- To use “Storage Memory”, an optional Document Storage Card is required.
- The edit function cannot be used with the Color editor. When you want to edit the specified area, select “Editor” from the Functions Screen.

### Flow of operation (except for Color editor)



### Flow of operation (Color editor)



**Tip:**

**About Red Color, Hand Writing--1, Hand Writing--2 Originals**

The “Easy 2Color” function separates colors by detecting light and dark portions of the original. This function does not detect colors. The master of the dark portion of the original is created on Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 (black) and the light portion on Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 (red).

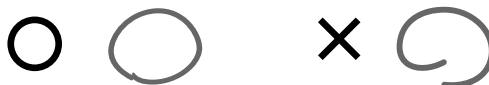
- Even if the pen is red, the contrast of the writing is dark, so it will be detected as black. In addition, if the contrast is extremely light, neither a red nor black master will be made.
- We recommend a Sans-Serif font of 8 point or larger for the original. For Serif fonts, please use 18 point or larger font (In case of Hand Writing--2, use 12 point or larger.). If the text is too small, even text in black will be detected as red.
- Text that is of average contrast (not dark and not light) will be created on both a black and red master. This will cause the text edges to appear fuzzy (text will be both red and black, text will be missing, etc.).
- Contrast and tone level will determine whether photos, gradations or shaded areas are printed in black or red. When there are photos or gradations, you are recommended to use the Separation Sheet.

**Tip:**

**About the Specified Area, Separation Sheet**

Use the recommended pen to create the area to be specified. If you specify the area with a non-recommended pen, separation may not properly occur.

- Make sure to properly connect the edges of the area you draw with the pen. If the edges are not connected, the specified area may not be recognized.



- The line width of the specified area should be between 1 mm (3/64") to 3 mm (1/8") (2.25 to 4.5 points). Lines less than 1 mm (3/64") or wider than 3 mm (1/8") will not be recognized as a specified area.

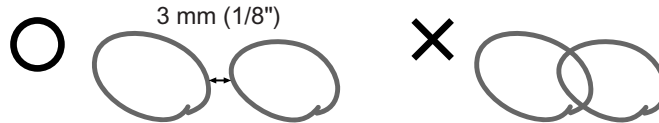
———— 1 mm (3/64") (2.25 pt)

———— 3 mm (1/8") (4.5 pt)

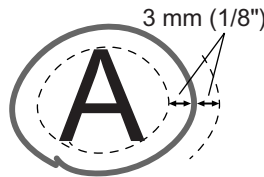
- Areas that are 10 mm × 10 mm ( $25/64$ " ×  $25/64$ " ) or less will not be recognized as a specified area.
- Do not create dark points on the pen line.



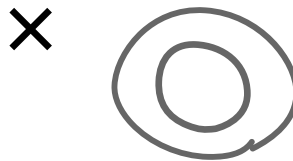
- Up to 20 pen areas can be created on one original. An error will occur if you select more than 20 areas.
- Do not overlap the pen areas. If the edges touch, the specified area may not be recognized. Leave 3 mm ( $1/8$ " ) or more space between pen-enclosed areas.



- Make sure the pen line is approximately 3 mm ( $1/8$ " ) away from text or an image of the original. Sections within 3 mm ( $1/8$ " ) of the pen line will be lost.



- Do not enclose an area within an area. If you do so, the inner pen area will not be recognized.



- Specified areas outside of the print area will not be separated.

# Operating Procedures for Easy 2Color

## 1 Select a Print mode.

Select Dual-Color print.

**Note:**

- See p.29 for how to select a print mode.

## 2 Set the original and print paper.

Place the original on the Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.

To place the original, see p.42.

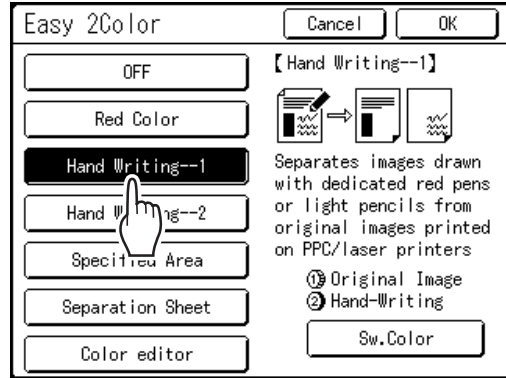
**Important!:**

- When “Specified Area” is used, set the original on the Glass Platen.
- When the original is set on the Glass Platen, do not remove the original until a Dual-Color proof copy has been printed (step 7).

## 3 Touch [Easy 2Color] on the Functions Screen.



## 4 Touch the button of the separation to use.



When [Color editor] is selected, the subsequent operations differ. For details, see p.108.

**Note:**

- The part for which a master is being made is displayed in the lower right section of the screen at Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 (1) and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 (2).  
Touch [Sw.Color] to switch the color separations.
- To cancel the setting of “Easy 2Color”, touch [Cancel].

## 5 Touch [OK].

Easy 2Color is set and returns to the Functions Screen.

## 6 Configure print functions.

Make various settings as needed.

**Note:**

- When “Preview” is set, after the separation is completed, the machine stops once. You can check if the original has been correctly separated.  
p.109

## 7 Press the key.

The scanning of original starts. Afterwards, perform the same operation as the master-making and printing process for normal Dual-Color printing.

## Setting an Original with the Separation Sheet

For the “Separation Sheet”, you must scan the Area Specification Sheet prior to scanning the original.

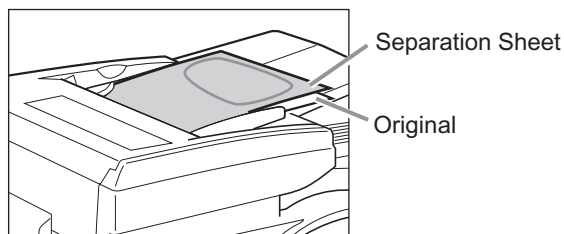
### 1 Place the Separation Sheet.

#### ◆ When placing on the Glass Platen

Place the Separation Sheet on the Glass Platen face-down by aligning the center, and close the Platen Cover.

#### ◆ When placing in the optional ADF unit

Set the original face-up.  
To place the original, see [p.42](#).  
You can set the original and the Separation Sheets at one time. In that case, set the Separation Sheet on top of the original.



#### Important!:

- See “Originals” ([p.18](#)) for the types of paper that you can use with the ADF unit.

### 2 Configure print functions.

Make various settings as needed.

### 3 Press the key.

The scanning of Separation Sheets starts.  
Once the scan has completed, the Master Making Basic Screen appears.

### 4 Place the original.

#### ◆ When placing on the Glass Platen:

Remove the Separation Sheet from the glass platen and place the original as described in step 1.

#### Note:

- Scrap books, etc. should be placed on Glass Platen.

#### ◆ When placing one sheet at a time into the ADF unit:

Place the original as described in step 1.

#### ◆ When placing two sheets together into the ADF unit:

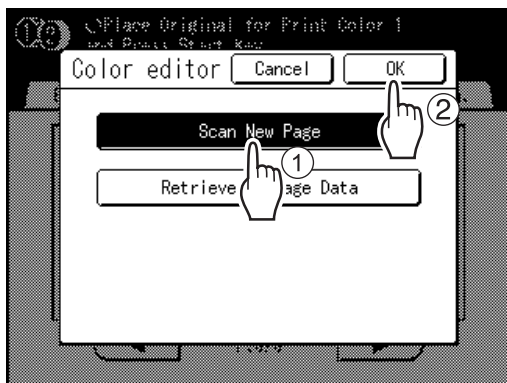
The original is automatically scanned.

### 5 Press the key.

The scanning of original starts.  
Afterwards, perform the same operation as the master-making and printing process.

## Use the Color editor

- 1 Display the [Color editor] Screen.**  
Perform steps 1 to 3 of “Operating Procedures for Easy 2Color” (p.106) and touch **[Color editor]**.
- 2 Select the original and touch [OK].**

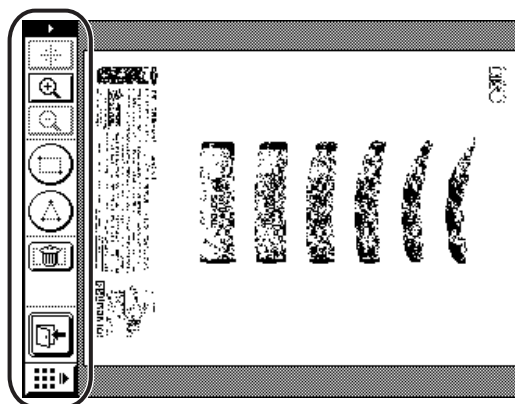


**Note:**

- The explanation here is made according to the steps in **[Scan New Page]**. When **[Retrieve Storage Data]** is selected, the Storage Selection Screen is displayed.

- 3 Set the scanning conditions and touch [OK].**  
The scanning of original starts.  
When the scanning is completed, the basic editor screen is displayed.

- 4 Specify the separation area.**  
Create an area for separation in Diagonal-Corner or Multi-Point. After creation of the area, touch **[Exit Editing]** and select **[Print]** or **[Save]**.



Refer to the “RISO Editor User’s Guide” in a separate volume for information on input method and Basic Screen / operation of the editor.

# Checking the Print Image Prior to Making Master [Preview]

You can check what the actual master will look like by previewing an image of the scanned original or an image of the data sent from a computer. This function is handy for making sure that the “Easy 2Color” separation was successful, and for checking the layout or final image of a Multi-Up job.

The operation and display timing differ depending upon the mode.

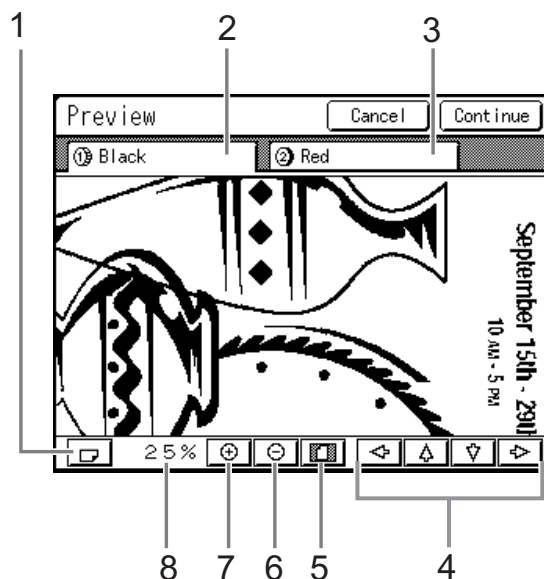
Mode name (original type)	When to set	When to display	If “Auto Processing” is ON
Printing from the Original Document	When setting functions related to Master Making (settings from Functions)	After Scanning the Original	Scans the original, then temporarily stops to display the preview.
Scan Mode	When setting functions (master making functions) related to Scanning (setting from Functions)	After Scanning the Original	There is no "Auto Process" in scan mode, but if multiple originals are placed in an ADF unit, you can touch <b>[Close]</b> after viewing the preview to start scanning the next original.
Printing Original Data from a Computer	Stopping the print job prior to making a master (Semi-Auto(Print)/Auto Process OFF), after the machine has received the original data	After <b>[Preview]</b> is touched	A preview is not shown if data is sent from the printer driver with “Auto Print” “ON”.
Retrieving Stored Data/ USB Flash Drive data and printing	When selecting data to be printed on the <b>[Storage Selection]</b> Screen (set on the <b>[Storage Retrieve]</b> Screen)	Immediately after touching <b>[Preview]</b>	When you touch <b>[Retrieve]</b> , the data is retrieved and the Master Making Basic Screen for saved data is displayed.
	When touching <b>[Retrieve]</b> on the <b>[Storage Retrieve]</b> Screen/ <b>[USB Job List]</b> Screen and retrieving saved data (set on the Master Making Basic Screen for saved data)	Immediately after touching <b>[Preview]</b>	Displays immediately when you touch <b>[Preview]</b> on the retrieved screen. When you touch <b>[Close]</b> , you will return to the Master Making Basic Screen for saved data.

### Note:

- It shows the scanned original as-is. A margin is required when actually printing. Check to make sure that the margins are sufficient. Also, the actual print is confined to the maximum printing range of the Print Drum (Cylinder), so the image may be cut off. [p.19](#)
- If you are Dual-Color printing, a Dual-Color preview will be displayed after the original has been scanned on Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.
- Even if a single original has been separated using the “Easy 2Color” function, each of the separated results is displayed.
- In “Direct Print” operation, **[Preview]** will be displayed on the Master Making Basic Screen when data is received from the computer.  
[p.56](#)

## Actions Available on the Preview Screen

---



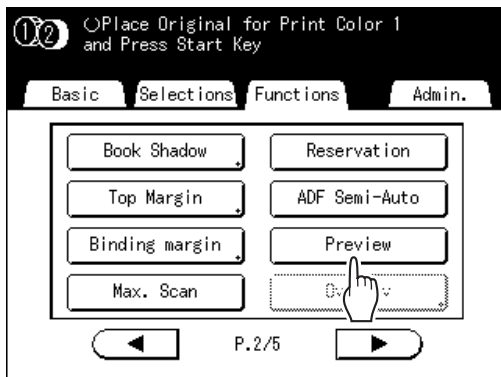
- 1) Rotate Image Button**  
Allows you to rotate the displayed image 90 degrees.
- 2) Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 Original**
- 3) Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 Original**
- 4) Scroll Button**  
The image moves in the direction of the displayed arrow.
- 5) Show All Button**  
Shows the entire image.
- 6) Reduce Button**  
Shrinks the preview display each time it is touched.
- 7) Enlarge Button**  
Magnifies the preview display each time it is touched.
- 8) Displays the size of the current display.**



## Checking and Printing the Preview Display

The operational procedures for "Printing from the Original Document" are explained below.

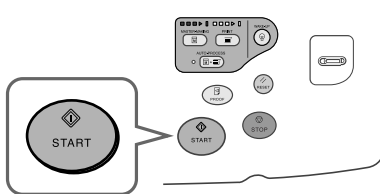
- 1 Place an original.
- 2 Touch [Preview] on the Functions Screen.



Preview setting is updated.

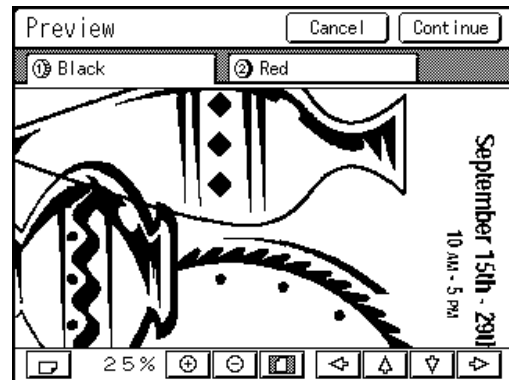
- 3 Make necessary settings.  
Make various settings as needed.

- 4 Press the  key.



A scan of the original begins, and can be previewed on the Preview Screen.

- 5 Check the preview image.



**Note:**

- You can use various controls on this screen to check the image.  
p.110

- 6 Touch [Continue].

A master is created.  
After this, please follow the same operations for paper documents.

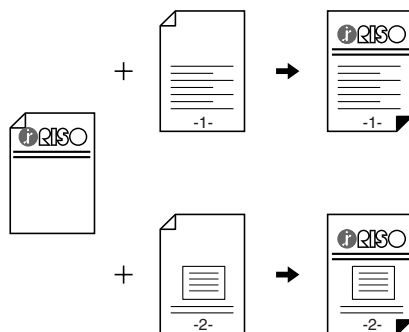
**Note:**

- Touching [Cancel] will cancel the image, returning to the Master Making Basic Screen. To resume preview operation, repeat from step 3.

# Switching Masters of Just One Print Drum (Cylinder) [OneSide MasterMake]

When Dual-Color printing, you can switch just one of the two originals and print.

This is a handy function when printing different letters using the same letterhead. Simply create another master for the text, retaining the original master for the letterhead.



## 1 The Dual-Color print is executed.

### Note:

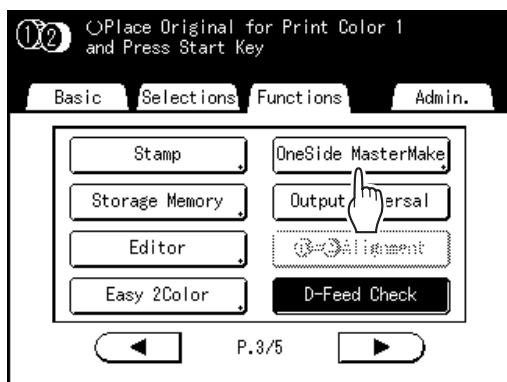
Recommended to use the “Reservation” function

- If the machine is used as a network printer, when you are trying to perform OneSide MasterMake, the machine may start master-making after receiving another person’s job. To prevent this from occurring, it is recommended to use the “Reservation” function.

When “Reservation” is turned on, the machine can safely continue printing for a certain period of time without being interrupted by printing by others.

☞ p.171

## 2 Touch [OneSide MasterMake] on the Functions Screen.



## 3 Touch the button of the Print Drum (Cylinder) for which you are changing the original.



Returns to the Functions Screen. OneSide MasterMake setting is updated.

### Note:

- When the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, A4 □ / L t t r □ is displayed next to the (1) button.

## 4 Place the changed original.

Place the original on the Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.

To place the original, see ☞ p.42.

## 5 Make necessary settings.

You can configure functions to apply to the new original as needed.

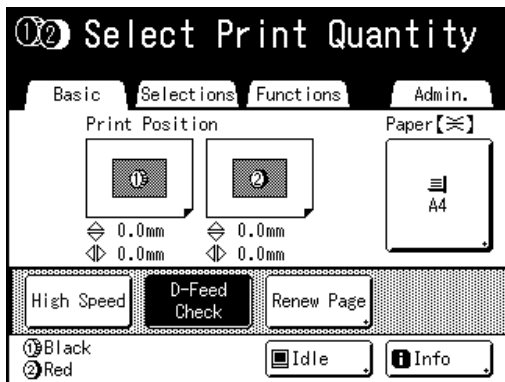
If you make no settings, the same settings as the first print are used.

## 6 Press the key.

A master is made on the Print Drum (Cylinder) specified in step 3 and Print Basic Screen appears.

## 7 Check the proof copy result.


When a proof copy is printed, the Print Basic Screen appears.



Check the proof copy; e.g., print position and density.

If necessary, change print position and density.

- Print Position (☞ p.117)
- Print Density (☞ p.116)
- Interval Printing (☞ p.122)
- Jump Wing Control (☞ p.123)

After adjustment, press the  key to print a proof copy.

## 8 Enter the number of copies using the Print Quantity Keys.

The specified number is displayed on the Print Quantity Display.

## 9 Press the key.

The specified number of copies will be printed.

# Functions for Printing

## Changing the Print Speed

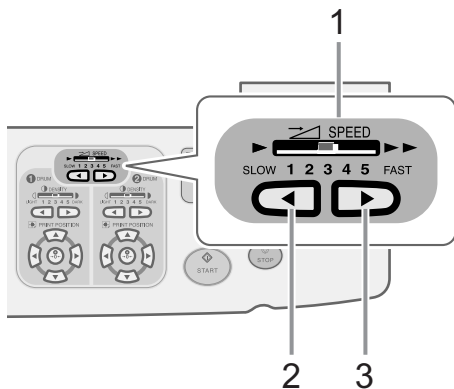
### [Print Speed Adjustment]

You can select the print speed from five levels; from 60 to 120 sheets/minute.  
You can adjust the print speed while printing is in progress.

#### Note:

- Set the default print speed on the Admin. Screen.  
The factory default is level 3 (approximately 100 sheets/minute).  
☞ p.193

Press the ◀ or ▶ key to adjust the print speed.



- 1) **Print Speed Indicator**  
Shows the current setting of the print speed.
- 2) ▶ **Key**  
Increases the print speed incrementally.
- 3) ◀ **Key**  
Decreases the print speed incrementally.

#### Indicator level and print speed

Indicator Level	1	2	3	4	5
Print Speed (sheets/minute)	Approx. 60	Approx. 80	Approx. 100	Approx. 110	Approx. 120

#### Note:

- The Functions Screen has a “High Speed” function for faster printing.  
☞ p.115

# Printing at High Speed [High Speed]

By using “High Speed”, you can print faster than you can by simply adjusting the “Print Speed”.

## Setting “High Speed”

### Important!:

- When internal temperature of the machine is lower than 15°C (59°F), “High Speed” button is grayed out and cannot be used. Use the normal print speed adjustment (1 to 5) until the internal temperature of the machine is higher than 15°C (59°F). The time it takes for the internal temperature to rise depends upon the machine environment.
- If Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is removed and Mono-Color printing is performed with Drum (Cylinder) 2 at a print speed of “High Speed”, use paper of 364 mm (14<sup>11/32</sup>) (B4) to 432 mm (17") (Ledger) in the vertical paper dimension.

### Touch [High Speed] on the Functions Screen.



“High Speed” is set and the Print Speed indicator on the control panel turns off.

### Note:

- To slow down printing speed from “High Speed”, press the ◀ key on “Print Speed” adjustment keys / indicator.
- By registering to the DirectAccess area, you can set “High Speed” by a single touch during the printing process.  
☞ p.202

# Adjusting the Print Density

## [Print Density Adjustment]

You can select the print density from five levels by each Print Drum (Cylinder).  
You can adjust the print density while printing is in progress.

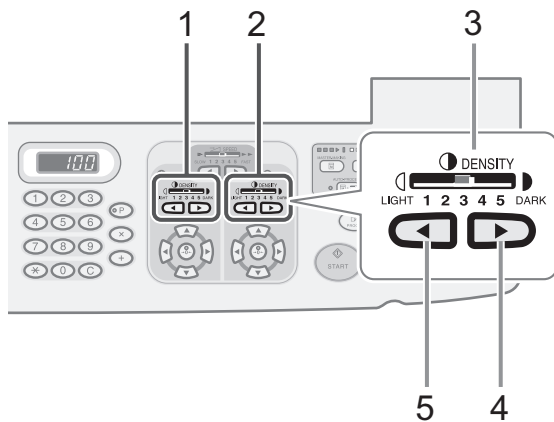
### Important!:

- “Print Density” is not available when **[Ink Saving]** is selected.  
☞ p.76

### Note:

- The default print density can be set on the Admin. Screen.  
The factory default is set at level 3 (Standard).  
☞ p.193

Press the ◀ or ▶ key to adjust the print density.



- 1) **Adjusting the print density used for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1**
- 2) **Adjusting the print density used for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2**
- 3) **Print Density Adjustment Indicator**  
Shows the current setting of the print density.
- 4) ▶ **Key**  
Increases the print density incrementally.
- 5) ◀ **Key**  
Decreases the print density incrementally.

# Adjusting the Print Position

## [Print Position Adjustment] [1=2 Alignment]

The print position on the paper can be adjusted for each Print Drum (Cylinder).


Adjustment range Vertical direction:  $\pm 15\text{mm}$  ( $\pm 19/32''$ ) Horizontal direction:  $\pm 10\text{mm}$  ( $\pm 25/64''$ )

The positioning may be adjusted while printing is in progress.

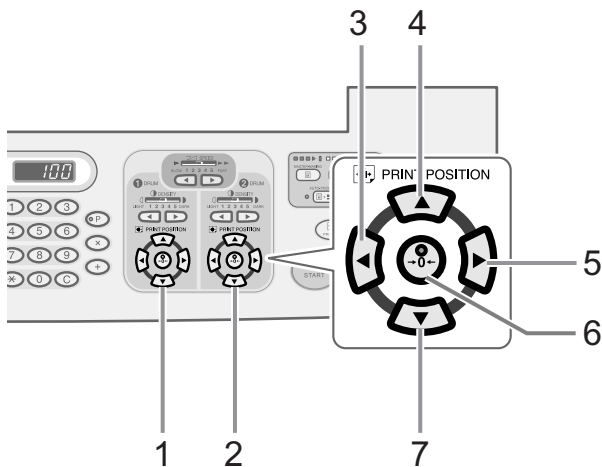
### Important!:

- After adjusting the print position, print a proof copy to check the result.  
     ☞ p.120


### Note:

- The numerical value formed by "Print Position Adjustment" is the target. Set the actual position by verifying and adjusting the printed material.
- Just after adjusting the print position of only one Print Drum (Cylinder), traces of the previous print position remain, which may cause blurred printing. If this occurs, make several proofs until the remaining image disappears.  
     ☞ p.120
- When adjusting the print position of both Print Drums (Cylinders) to the same location, you can do so by simply adjusting one Print Drum (Cylinder). The other will be adjusted to the same print position.  
     ☞ p.118
- Print position adjustment values for each Print Drum (Cylinder) are retained after printing is completed, to be applied for subsequent master making processes. The values will be retained until the  key is pressed or power is turned off.


Press the , ,  or  key to move up or down.

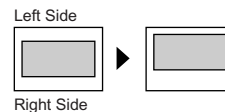



- 1) Adjusting the print location for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1
- 2) Adjusting the print location for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2

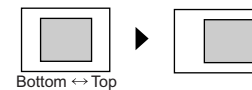
- 3)  Key  
 Each press shifts the print position downward in steps of about 0.5 mm ( $1/64''$ ).





- 4)  Key  
 Press the key to move the print image about 0.5 mm ( $1/64''$ ) to the left on the paper.

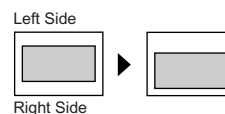


- 5)  Key  
 Each press shifts the print position upward in steps of about 0.5 mm ( $1/64''$ ).

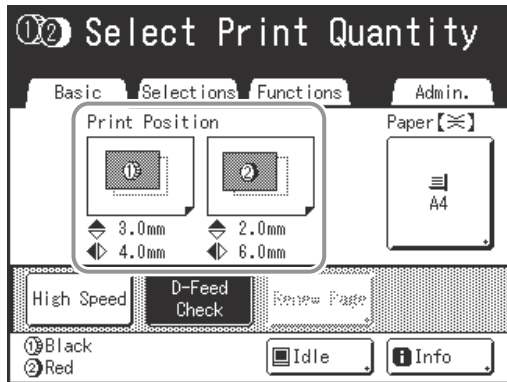


- 6)  Key/Indicator  
 Press to return to original position. When returning the position during printing, press this key for one or more seconds. When the print position is in the position before adjustment, the indicator turns on.

- 7)  Key  
 Press the key to move the print image about 0.5 mm ( $1/64''$ ) to the right on the paper.



The Print Basic Screen shows current vertical/horizontal adjustment.

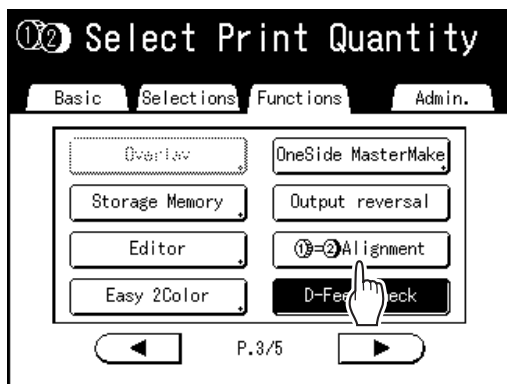


## Adjusting the Print Position of Both Print Drums (Cylinders) Together

### 1 Adjust the print position of one of the Print Drums (Cylinders).

The adjustments are displayed on the Print Basic Screen.

### 2 Touch [①=② Alignment] on the Functions Screen.

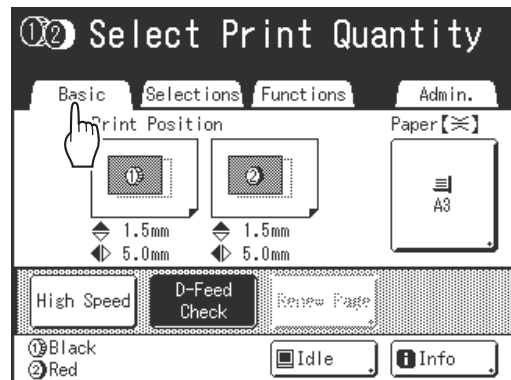


The other Print Drum (Cylinder) is adjusted to the same print position.

**Note:**

- If both Print Drums (Cylinders) were adjusted separately, it is adjusted to match the position of the last-adjusted Print Drum (Cylinder).

### 3 Touch [Basic] to check the Print Basic Screen.





**Tip:****Making Fine Adjustments to the Print Position**

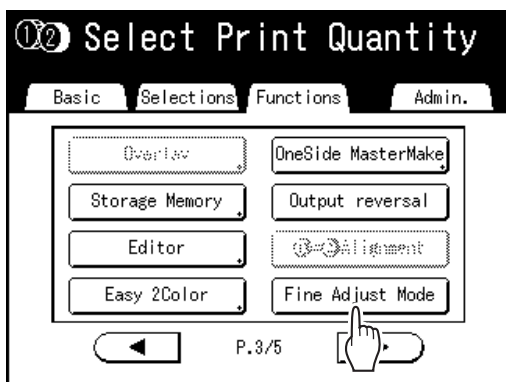
If the settings are such that "Fine Adjust Mode" can be set, the print position can be finely adjusted in 0.1 mm ( $1/254$ "") increments (the normal increment is 0.5 mm ( $1/64$ "")).

**Note:**

If you want to use "Fine Adjust Mode", please contact your dealer (or authorized service representative).

**[Fine Adjust Mode]** is displayed on the Functions Screen if "Fine Adjust Mode" can be used.

If you touch and highlight (in b/w) **[Fine Adjust Mode]**, "Fine Adjust Mode" is activated and you can make print position adjustments in increments of 0.1 mm ( $1/254$ ""). The increments return to 0.5 mm ( $1/64$ "") when set to "OFF".



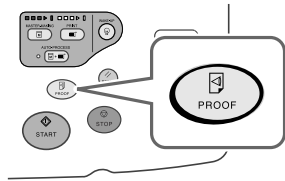
# Printing Proof Copies [Proof]

After making adjustments to the print position or density, check the print quality in a proof copy. Proof copies are not counted towards the number of copies displayed on the Print Quantity Display.

**Note:**

The machine will continue to print proof copies if the  key is held down.

Press the  key.



A single proof copy is printed.

# Prevent Paper Jams When Using Special Paper [D-Feed Check]

This printer monitors for multiple paper feeds. If a feed of more than one sheet is detected, the print job automatically stops and “D-Feed Check” is executed.

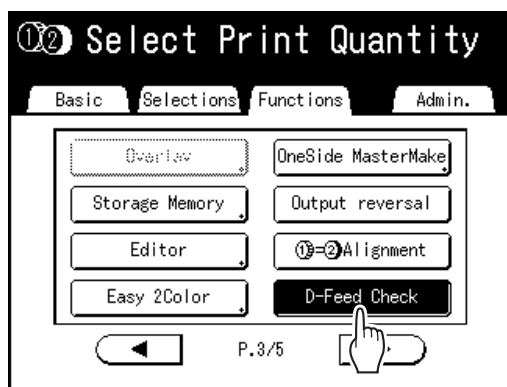
The multiple paper feed detector is calibrated for normal print paper. Depending on the type of paper used, double feeding may be detected and an error displayed even when one sheet of paper is properly supplied. In the following instances, please set “D-Feed Check” to “OFF”:

- When a multi-feed detection message is occasionally displayed, even though no multi-feed has occurred
- When using dark paper (black, red, dark blue)
- When using paper already printed on the back side

## Note:

- In the factory settings, “D-Feed Check” is set to “ON”.  
     ☞ p.193

## Touch [D-Feed Check] on the Functions Screen.

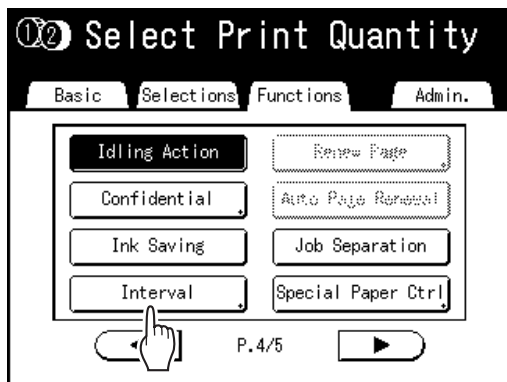


The button changes from being highlighted (b/w) to the normal display, and “D-Feed Check” is set to “OFF”.

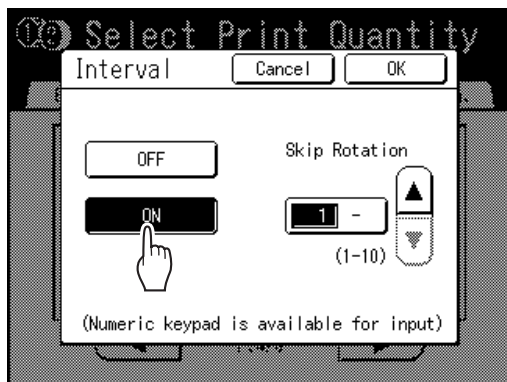
# Extending the drying time [Interval]

A sheet of paper is normally fed and printed with each Print Drum (Cylinder) rotation, but by extending the paper feed interval, the Ink has more time to dry, which prevents Ink marks on the back of the next sheet. The paper feed interval (skip rotation) can be set from 1 - 10.

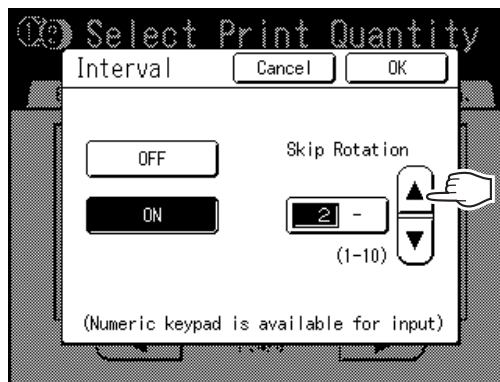
**1 Touch [Interval] on the Functions Screen.**



**2 Touch [ON].**



**3 Touch  or  to set the number of Skip Rotations for the Print Drum (Cylinder).**



**Note:**

- Print Quantity Keys can also be used to enter numbers.
- If you are using extended paper and set the Print Drum (Cylinder) skip rotation to an odd number, the actual skip rotation is the "Set Number +1".  
 ↪ p.205

**4 Touch [OK].**

Returns to the Functions Screen. Interval setting is updated.

# Paper Feed/Output Settings for Special Paper and Printing Types

## [Jump Wing Control] [Special Paper Ctrl]

Paper feed and output settings can be adjusted when using special paper or uneven print finishes.

### ◆ Jump Wing Control

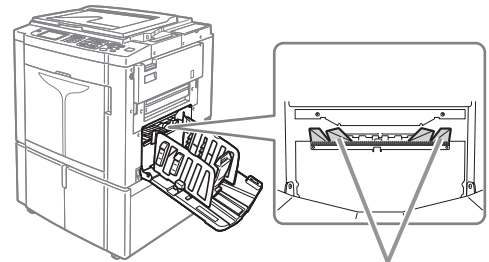
The following steps retrieve pre-configured custom settings for the Paper Jumping Wing. Use this feature to eject certain printing paper that is hard to eject with automatically adjusted normal Paper Jumping Wing setting.

#### Important!:

- “Jump Wing Control” feature is not available unless pre-configured.
- Only one setting can be pre-configured.
- To pre-configure or to change settings, please contact your dealer (or authorized service representative).

#### Note:

- The Paper Jumping Wing is a device which helps eject printed paper onto the Auto-control Stacking Tray or the Paper Receiving Tray. It automatically adjusts according to the position of the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever (standard or thick).



Paper Jumping Wing

### ◆ Special Paper Ctrl

You can save settings for easy retrieval next time. The “Special Paper Ctrl” menu contains the following options:

#### Paper Feed Adj.

Adjust Standard Feed Tray position and paper-feed amount to suit special paper characteristics. For adjustment methods, please contact your dealer (or authorized service representative).

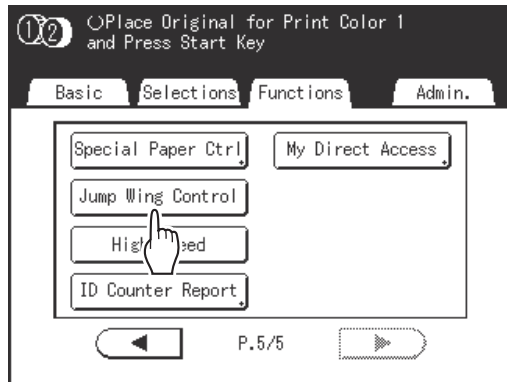
#### Paper Eject Adj

Some types of original image/paper may be printed with an uneven or blurred finish due to air blow or separation fan settings. This option can be used to change air blow, separation fan settings. For adjustment methods, please contact your dealer (or authorized service representative).

## Setting the Jump Wing Control [Jump Wing Control]

---

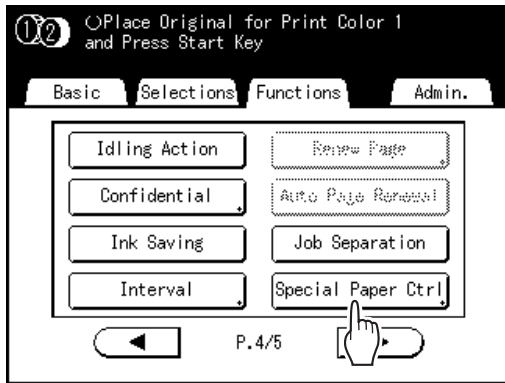
**Touch [Jump Wing Control] on the Functions Screen.**



“Jump Wing Control” is selected.

# Saving settings and renaming the parameter names in the Parameter List

**1 Touch [Special Paper Ctrl] on the Functions Screen.**

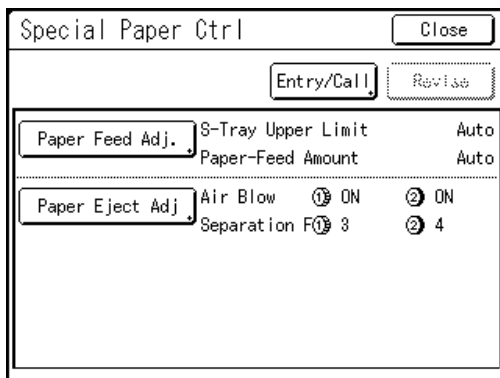


**2 Adjust [Paper Feed Adj.] and [Paper Eject Adj].**

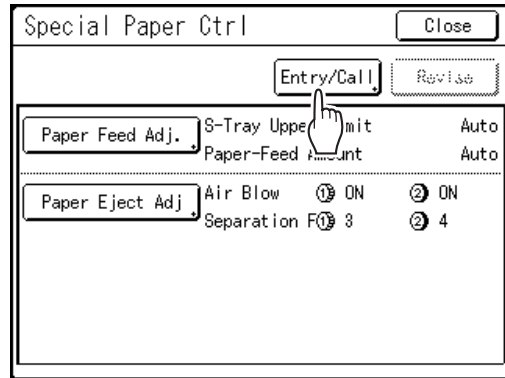
**Note:**

- For details of adjustments, see p.123.

**3 Confirm the adjustments on the Special Paper Ctrl Screen.**

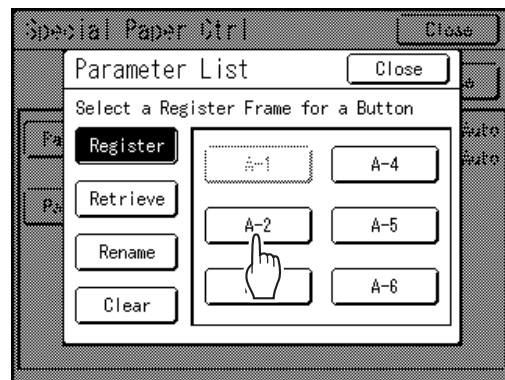


**4 Touch [Entry/Call].**



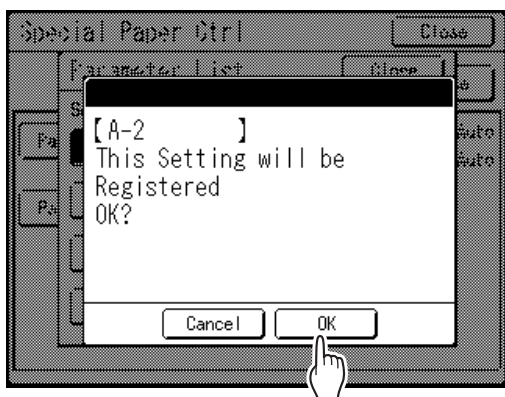
Parameter List Screen is displayed.

**5 Touch an unused button.**



Unused buttons are displayed with a solid line. Used buttons are grayed out and are not available.


## 6 Touch [OK].



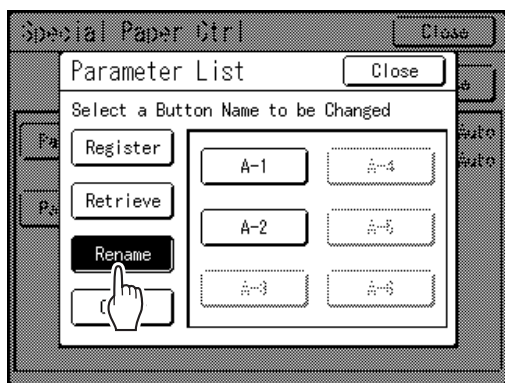
Returns to the Parameter List after the settings have been saved.

The name of each parameter can be changed for your convenience. To change parameter names, proceed to the next step.

### Note:

- After registering the settings, touch **[Close]** on the Parameter List Screen to return to the Special Paper Ctrl Screen.
- Touch **[Close]** on the Special Paper Ctrl Screen to return to the Functions Screen. Printing will be done with the registered settings.
- If you do not wish to print after registering the settings, press the  key on the control panel.

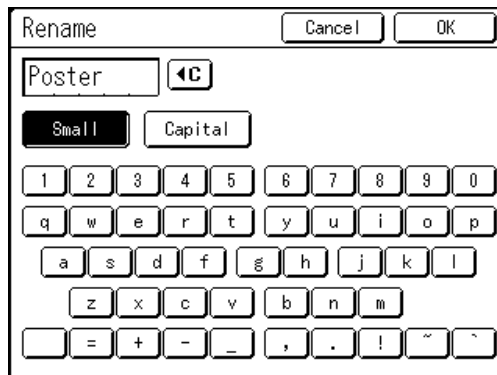
## 7 Touch [Rename].



## 8 Touch the button to rename.

Unregistered buttons are grayed out and are not available.



## 9 Touch the character buttons to enter a new name.



Change capitalization by selecting the **[Small]** or **[Capital]** button.

 p.157

### Note:

- To delete the current name, touch  button or press the  key.

## 10 Touch [OK] after entering all the characters.

Returns to the Parameter List Screen and the name is updated.

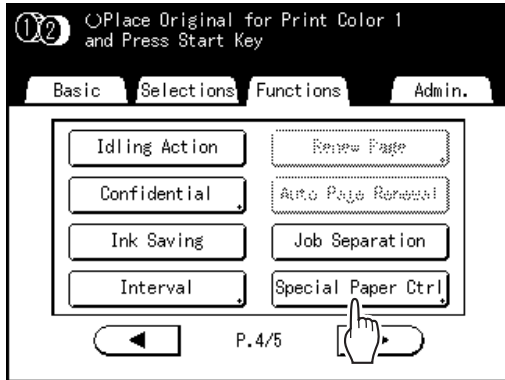
## 11 Touch [Close].

Returns to the Special Paper Ctrl Screen.

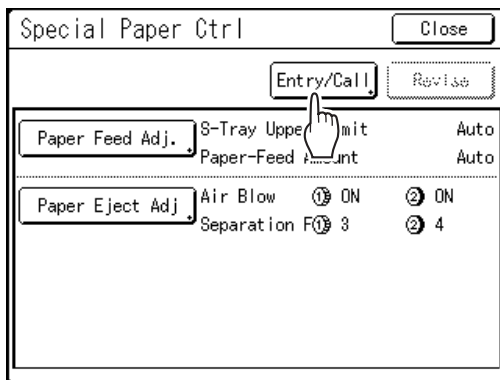


# Retrieving Settings from the Parameter List

**1 Touch [Special Paper Ctrl] on the Functions Screen.**

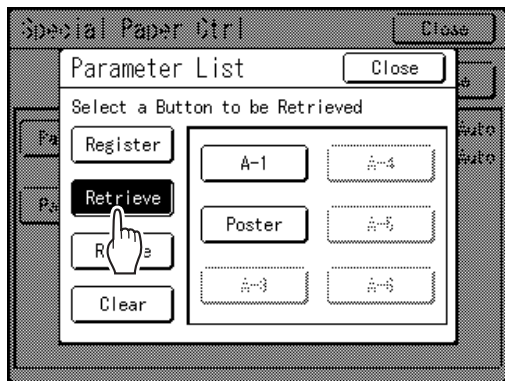


**2 Touch [Entry/Call].**



Display the Parameter List Screen.

**3 Touch [Retrieve].**



**4 Touch the button to retrieve.**

Unregistered buttons are grayed out and are not available.

Returns to the Special Paper Ctrl Screen and the desired setting is retrieved.

Confirm the settings made.

**Note:**

- Repeat steps 2 to 5 to retrieve other settings.

**5 Touch [Close].**

Returns to the Functions Screen and the settings are updated.

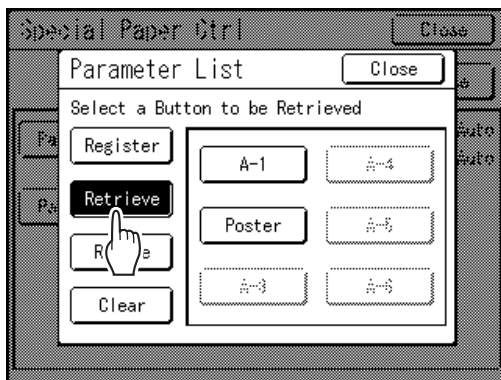
After this, follow the same operations for normal printing.

## Making changes to Special Paper Ctrl Setting

### 1 Display the Parameter List Screen.

Follow steps 1 to 2 (p.127).

### 2 Touch [Retrieve].



### 3 Touch the button to change.

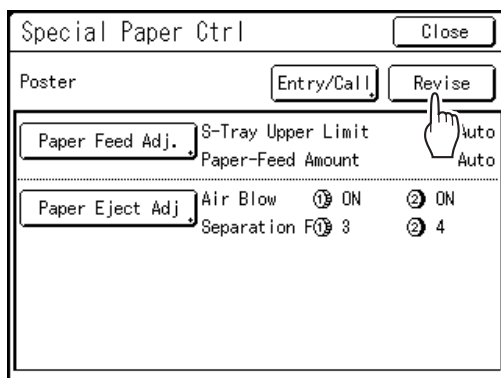
### 4 Change the setting parameters.

Parameters for the following can be changed:  
 “Paper Feed Adj.” and “Paper Eject Adj”.

**Note:**

- For details of changes, see p.123.

### 5 Touch [Revise] on the Special Paper Ctrl Screen.



### 6 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Special Paper Ctrl Screen after parameters have been revised.

## Clearing Special Paper Ctrl Settings

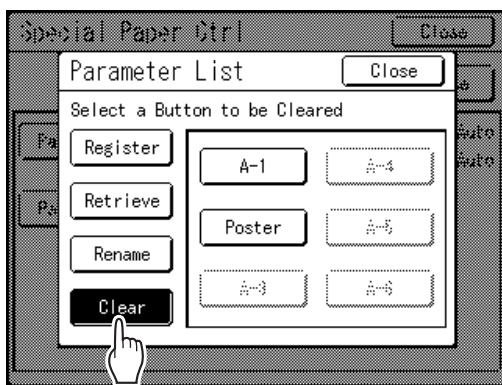
### 1 Display the Parameter List Screen.

Follow steps 1 to 2 (p.127).

#### Important!:

- First, check whether the setting can be cleared.  
(Retrieve the appropriate setting and follow the steps beginning with step 2.)
- Cleared settings cannot be recovered.

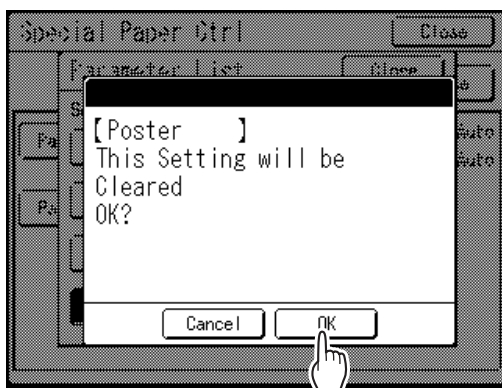
### 2 Touch [Clear].



### 3 Touch the button to clear.

Unregistered buttons are grayed out and are not available.

### 4 Touch [OK].



Returns to the Parameter List Screen. The selected setting is cleared.

### 5 Touch [Close].

Returns to the Special Paper Ctrl Screen.

# Advanced Features

## Setting Up User Management [User Management]

This machine is equipped with a User Management function to ensure security and enhance user management. The User Management function has 3 Management Levels. The following features are available according to the level.

Feature	Management Level		
	High/Full Management	Mid/ID Print Only	Low/Admin tab Only
<b>[ID Counter Report]</b> for managing the number of prints/masters. <a href="#">p.186</a>	Available	Available For ID print only	Not Available
<b>[Limit]</b> for setting the upper limit of the number of copies/masters per user set. <a href="#">p.141</a>	Available	Available	Not Available
<b>[ID Print]</b> for printing data sent from PC. <a href="#">p.56</a>	Available	Available	Not Available
<b>[My Direct Access]</b> for registering the frequently-accessed functions displayed in the Direct Access Area. <a href="#">p.190</a>	Available	Not Available	Not Available
Saving scanned originals for <b>[ID Print]</b> . <a href="#">p.56</a>	Available	Not Available	Not Available
Allowing only the administrator to change the <b>[Admin.]</b> settings. <a href="#">p.196</a>	Available	Available	Available

All users must be registered to manage the machine at the High/Full Management level. Also, users must input a PIN Code (or connect a registered USB Flash Drive) to use the machine.

This section explains settings for using the User Management function and how to make those settings set by the Administrator.

### Management Level and Access Timing of User Identification Access

When “Management Level” is set to “High/Full Management” or “Mid/ID Print Only”, the users will be asked to identify themselves (“User identification access”) during operations. The Recognition and Identification System can be selected from either “PIN Code” or “USB Flash Drive” which is set by the administrator in advance.

	When Operating the Machine	When Outputting the ID Print
High/Full Management	<p>User identification access is required</p>	<p>User identification access is not required</p>
Mid/ID Print Only	<p>User identification access is not required</p>	<p>User identification access is required</p>
Low/Admin tab only	<p>User identification access is not required</p>	<p>ID Print cannot be performed</p>

### User Management Options

To activate the User Management function, the administrator must set up User Management. The setting options of User Management and details are explained below.

#### ◆ “Recognized by” (☞ p.133)

Select the Recognition and Identification System.

**PIN Code:** When user identification access is required, input the PIN Code.

Set up to 8 digits for each user in “Create User”.

**USB Flash Drive:** When user identification access is required, connect the registered USB Flash Drive to the USB slot. Prepare the number of USB Flash Drives for the individual users and register them with the machine.

**OFF/Delete:** Delete the information registered in User Management (administrator/user registration included), and return to the factory settings.

#### Important!:

- If the “Recognized by” setting is changed, all settings in User Management, including the administrator’s registration, will be deleted. Set “Recognized by” first, then operate other settings.

#### ◆ “Management Level” (☞ p.135)

Select the Management Level from among 3 levels.

**High/Full Management:** Users require identifying themselves when operating the machine and when the ID Print is output.

**Mid/ID Print Only:** Users require identifying themselves when the ID Print is output.

**Low/Admin tab only:** Manages the users without any use of security features. Users don’t require identifying themselves when operating the machine and cannot perform ID print. This level allows only the administrator to change the [Admin.] settings.

For details, see the table of ☞ p.130.

◆ **Create User (☞ p.136)**

Register the administrator/users.

Up to 100 users (administrator included) can be registered.

Set following options when registering.

- PIN Code or USB Flash Drive

**PIN Code:** A PIN Code can be set for user identification access.

We recommend that you prepare a list of the registered users and record the user registration numbers (ID) and PIN Codes for each user.

Notify each user about the set PIN Code and user registration number (ID).

**USB Flash Drive:** A USB Flash Drive can be set for user identification access.

We recommend that you record which USB Flash Drives you distribute to which user.

Distribute to each user a registered USB Flash Drive and a user registration number (ID).

- **Rename**

• **Group:** User groups can be set.

• **Limit:** The upper limit of the copies/masters can be set.

• **Disable:** User identification access can be enabled or disabled.

Registered settings can be changed or cleared.

In order to register users or operate other settings in User Management, the administrator must be registered in advance. The User Management functions are activated after registering the administrator.

◆ **Rename Group (☞ p.145)**

Set a group name when operating group management.

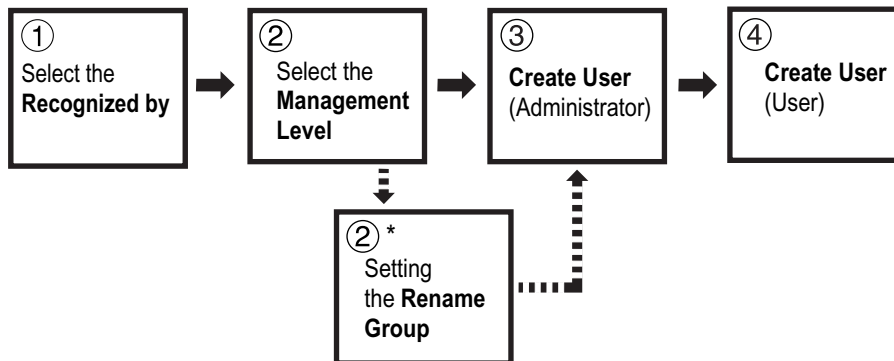
Up to 32 groups can be registered.

◆ **Reset Counter (☞ p.146)**

Clear the usage counters of all users and groups.

**Operation flow of User Management**

We recommend that you set up User Management in following order.



\*Set when you want to count user usage by group using “ID Counter Report”. See ☞ p.186.

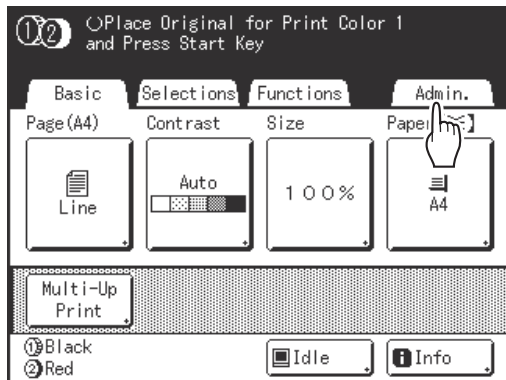
## Selecting Recognition and Identification System

Set the Recognition and Identification System using “Recognized by” in advance when setting up User Management.

### Important!:

- If “Recognized by” is changed, all settings in User Management, including the administrator’s registration, will be cleared.

### 1 Touch [Admin.] on the Basic Screen for each mode.



### 2 Touch [OK].

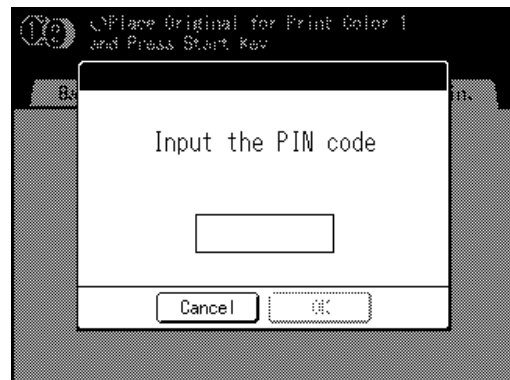


Skip to step 4 if the administrator is not registered. If the administrator is already registered, the Recognition Screen is displayed here. See step 3.

### 3 Identify the administrator.

#### ◆ When “Recognized by” is set to “PIN Code”

Input the administrator’s PIN Code.

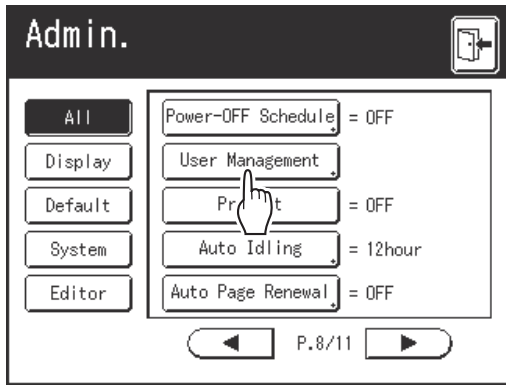


#### ◆ When “Recognized by” is set to “USB Flash Drive”

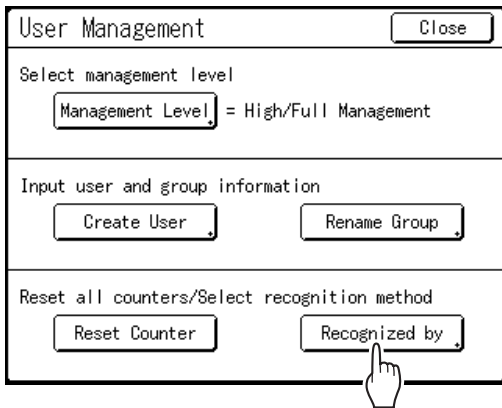
Connect the administrator’s registered USB Flash Drive to the USB slot.



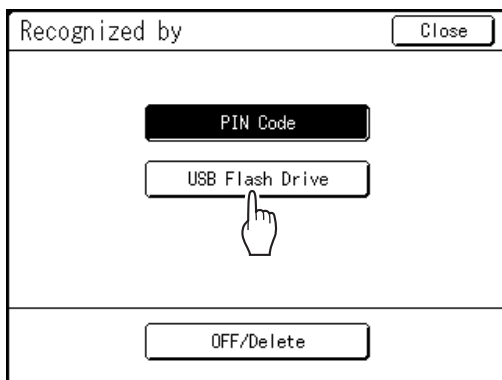
### 4 Touch [User Management].



### 5 Touch [Recognized by].



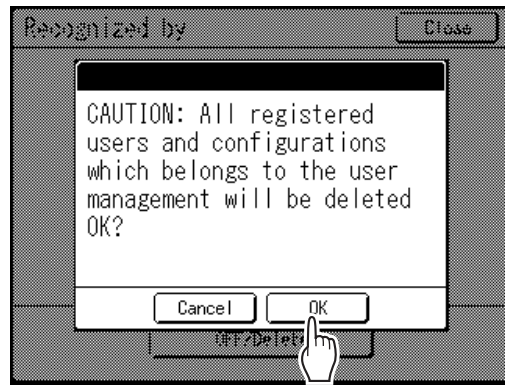
### 6 Touch the button to select the “Recognized by” option.



**Note:**

- If you touch **[OFF/Delete]**, all settings set in User Management will be deleted and returned to the factory settings.

### 7 Touch [OK].



Returns to the User Management Screen. “Recognized by” is updated.

Continue User Management settings. See the subsequent pages.



# Setting Up the Management Level

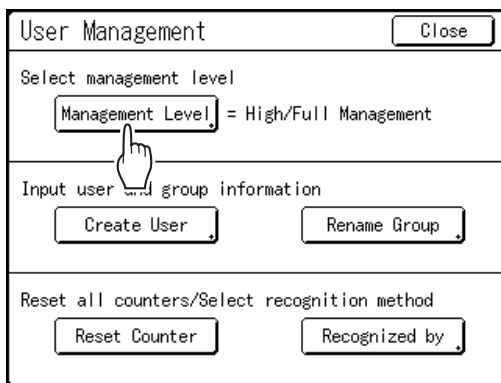
## Important!:

- Set “Recognized by” in advance.  
   ☞ p.133

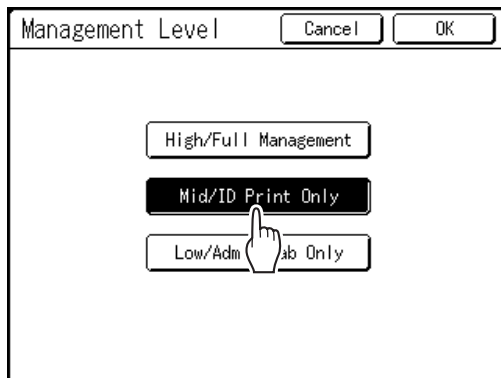
## 1 Display the User Management Screen.

Follow steps 1 to 4 in “Selecting Recognition and Identification System” (☞ p.133).

## 2 Touch [Management Level].



## 3 Touch the button to select the “Management Level” option.



See ☞ p.130 for details about Management Level options.

## 4 Touch [OK].

Returns to the User Management Screen.  
 “Management Level” is updated.

You can continue registering users and renaming groups if needed.

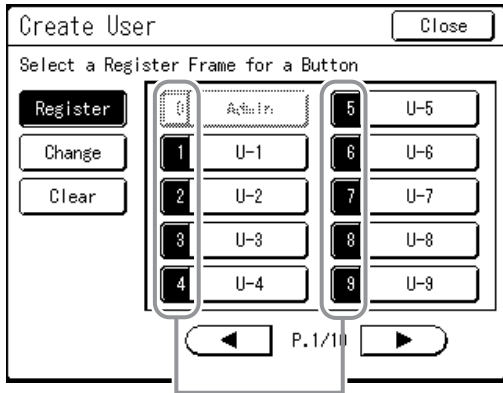
To close the User Management settings, touch **[Close]** on the User Management Screen to return to the Admin. Screen.

# Registering Administrator/Users

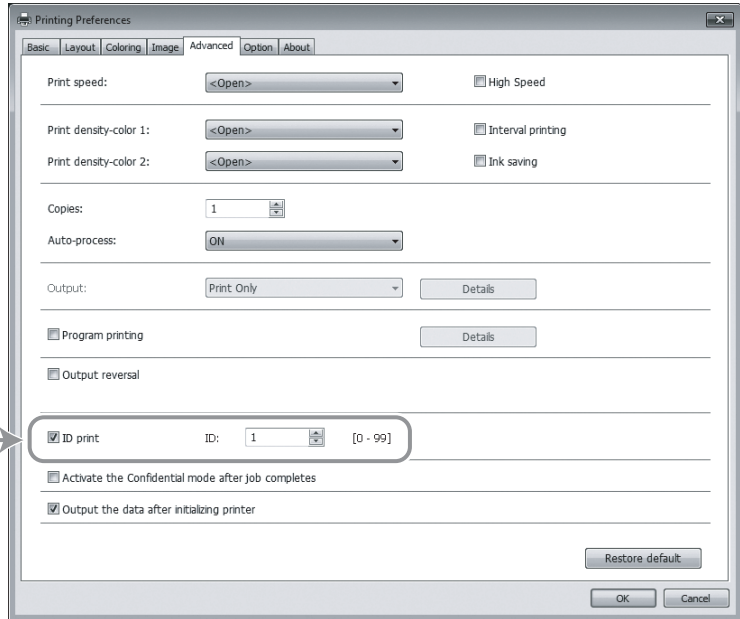
In order to activate the User Management function, the administrator must be registered. Up to 100 users can be registered (administrator included).

**Note:**

- The user registration number (ID) is required when operating “ID print” from the printer driver.



User Registration Number (ID) →



◆ Basic operation for registering administrator/users

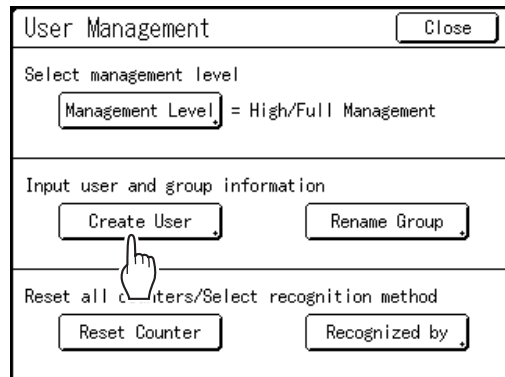
**1 Display the User Management Screen.**

Follow steps 1 to 4 in “Selecting Recognition and Identification System” (p.133)

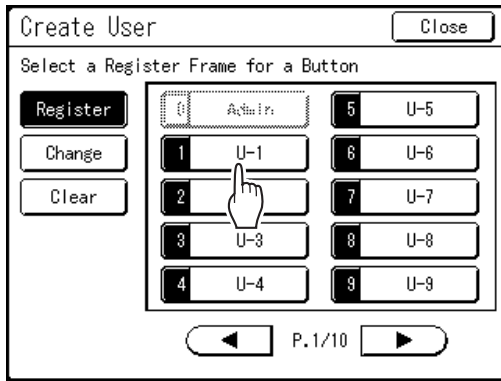
**Important!:**

- Set “Recognized by” in advance.
- If you set the group to assign, we recommend that you set “Rename Group” first. (p.145)

**2 Touch [Create User].**



### 3 Touch an unused button.



Unused buttons are displayed with a solid line. Used buttons are grayed out and are not available. (Another user has been registered.)

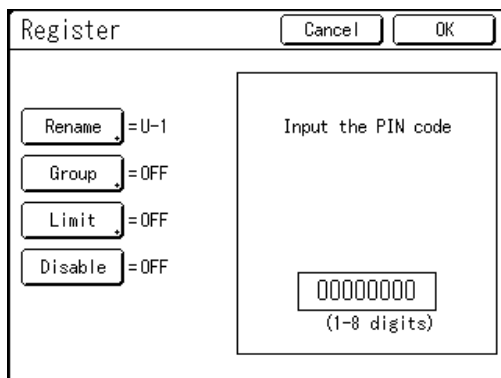
#### Important!:

- Be sure to register the administrator first.
- If the administrator is not registered, buttons are not available except “0 Admin”.
- The “0” button is only available to the administrator. Even if you rename this button, it will be treated as the administrator.

### 4 Input the PIN Code or connect the USB Flash Drive.

#### ◆ When “Recognized by” is set to “PIN Code”

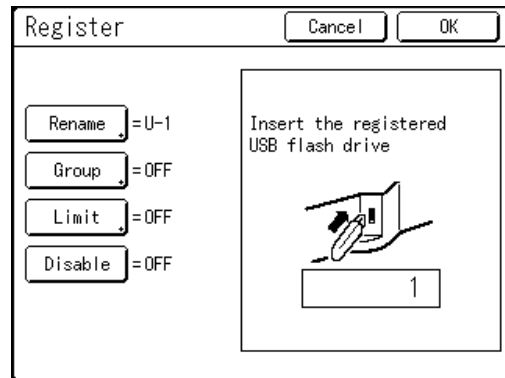
Input the PIN Code using the Print Quantity Keys.



Up to 8 digits can be input.  
Press the **C** key to clear the PIN Code.

#### ◆ When “Recognized by” is set to “USB Flash Drive”

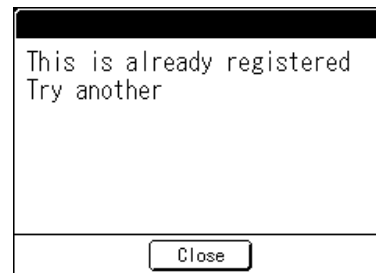
Connect the registered USB Flash Drive to the USB slot.



The number that identifies the registered USB Flash Drive is displayed.

#### Note:

- If you register multiple USB Flash Drives, we recommend that you ready them to be distinguished later (for example, put a user name on the USB Flash Drive).
- If you input the assigned PIN Code (“Recognized by”: PIN Code) or connect the USB Flash Drive that you already registered (“Recognized by”: USB Flash Drive), the following message is displayed when touching [OK].



Touch **[Close]** and input the unassigned PIN Code or connect the unregistered USB Flash Drive.

### 5 Set various settings.

Do the following settings if needed.

- Rename (p.139)
- Group (p.140)
- Limit (p.141)
- Disable (p.142)

## 6 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Create User Screen.  
The administrator or the user is registered.  
To register multiple users, touch **[Register]** and repeat steps 3 to 6.

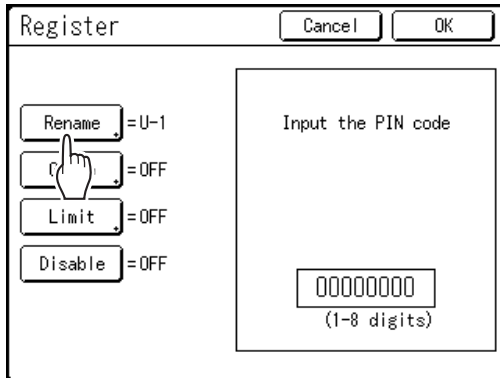
## 7 Touch [Close].

Returns to the User Management Screen.  
You can continue registering users and renaming groups if needed.

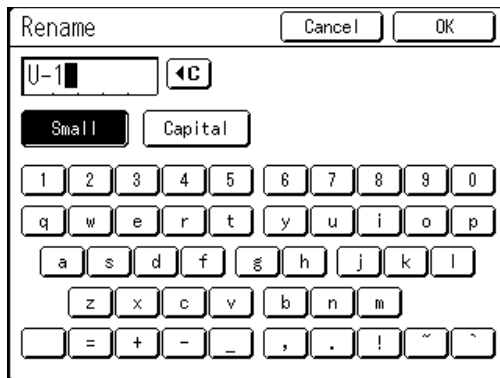
To close the User Management settings, touch **[Close]** on the User Management Screen to return to the Admin. Screen.

## ◆ Enter the User Name

### 1 Touch [Rename] on the Register Screen.





### 2 Touch the character buttons to enter a new name.



Change capitalization by selecting the **[Small]** or **[Capital]** button.

☞ p.157

#### Note:

- To clear the current name, touch  button or press the  key.

### 3 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Register Screen.  
The user name is renamed.

### ◆ Setting the Group to assign

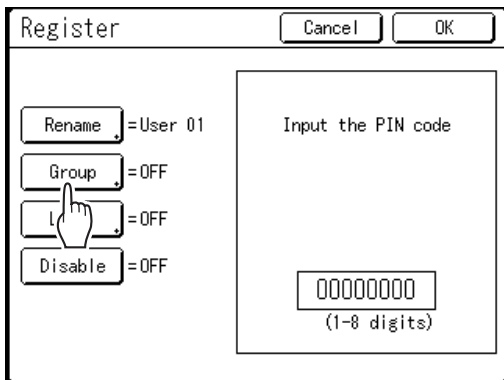
When you set up a group by user, user usage can be counted by group.

☞ p.186

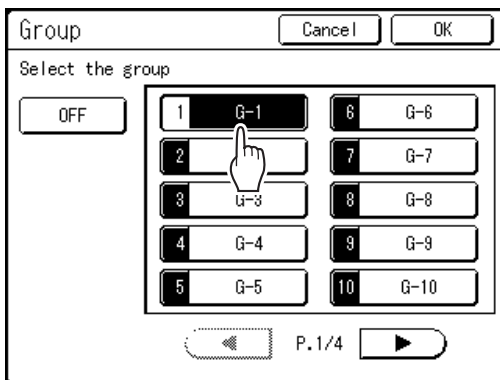
It is recommended to enter the group name in advance.

☞ p.145

## 1 Touch [Group] on the Register Screen.



## 2 Touch the Group button to set.



**Note:**

- If you are not setting up a group, touch [OFF].

## 3 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Register Screen.

The user is assigned to the group that you have set.

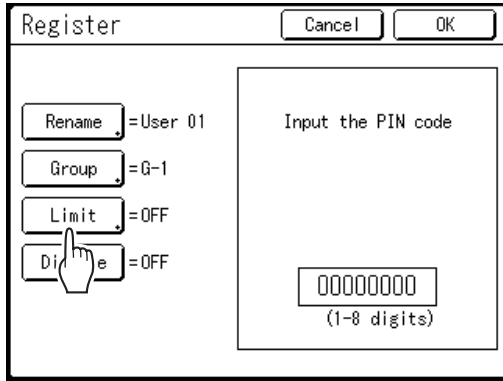
## ◆ Setting the Upper Limit of the User's Usage

Set the upper limit of the number of copies/masters.

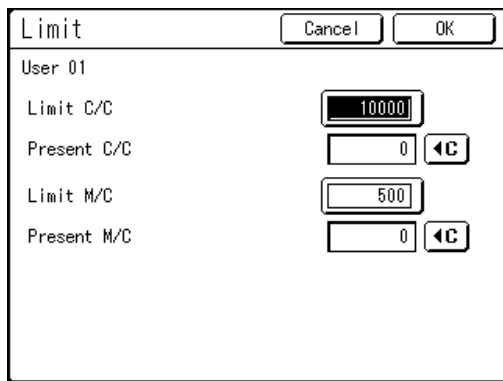
Up to 99,999,999 can be set.

The present copy count and master count can also be cleared on the same screen.

### 1 Touch [Limit] on the Register Screen.



### 2 Touch the limit input box and enter the upper limit number using the Print Quantity Keys.



C/C: Copy Count  
M/C: Master Count

#### Note:

- To clear the number, press the **C** key.
- “Present C/C” and “Present M/C” show the current amount of copies and masters that the user used.
- To clear the “Present C/C” and “Present M/C”, touch each **C** button.

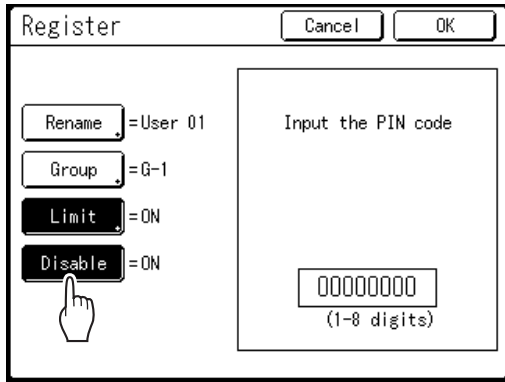
### 3 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Register Screen.

“Limit” is updated.

◆ **Disabling User identification access**

**Touch [Disable] on the Register Screen to turn it “ON”.**



User identification access is disabled and the user cannot use the machine.

**Note:**

- To inactivate “Disable”, touch **[Disable]** to turn it “OFF”.
- On the Register Screen for the administrator, a **[Disable]** button is not available.

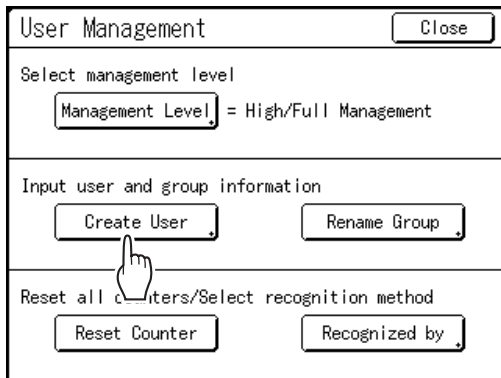


## Changing Administrator/User Registration

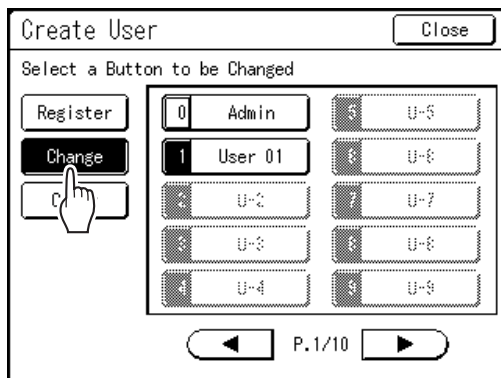
### 1 Display the User Management Screen.

Follow steps 1 to 4 in “Selecting Recognition and Identification System” (p.133)

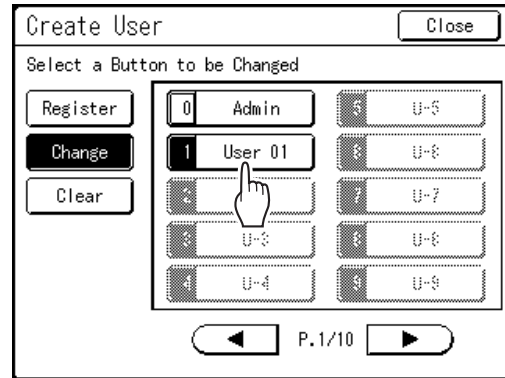
### 2 Touch [Create User].



### 3 Touch [Change].



### 4 Touch the User Button to change.



Registered buttons are displayed with a solid line. Unregistered buttons are grayed out and are not available.

### 5 Change various settings.

Follow steps 4 to 5 in “Basic operation for registering administrator/users” (p.136).

### 6 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Create User Screen. Registered setting is updated.

### 7 Touch [Close].

Returns to the User Management Screen.

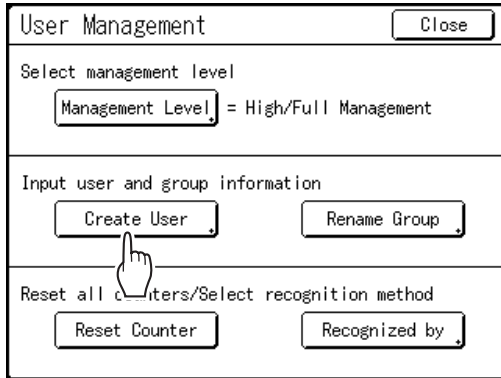
To close the User Management setting, touch **[Close]** on the User Management Screen to return to the Admin. Screen.

# Clearing User Registration

## 1 Display the User Management Screen.

Follow steps 1 to 4 in “Selecting Recognition and Identification System” (p.133)

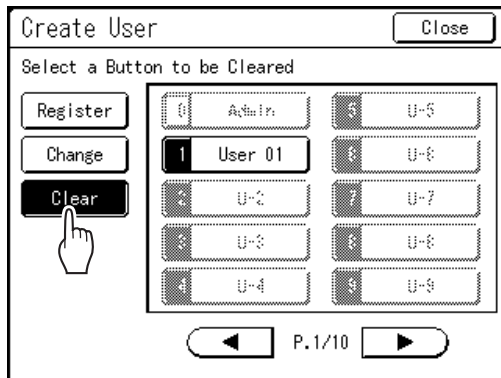
## 2 Touch [Create User].



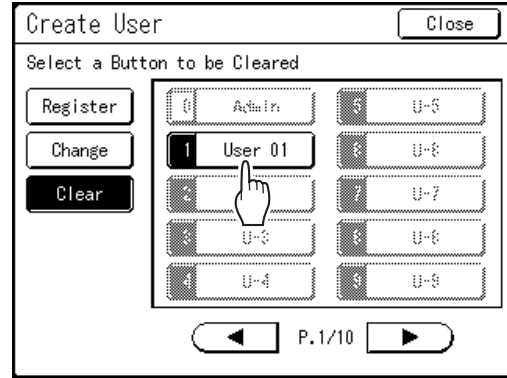
### Important!:

- Once the user registration is cleared, it cannot be recovered.

## 3 Touch [Clear].



## 4 Touch the User Button to clear.



Registered buttons are displayed with a solid line. Unregistered buttons and “0 Admin” button are grayed out and are not available.

## 5 Touch [OK].



Returns to the Create User Screen. The setting of the selected user is cleared.

## 6 Touch [Close].

Returns to the User Management Screen.

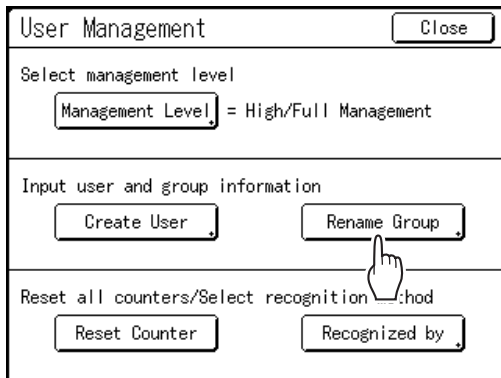
To close the User Management setting, touch **[Close]** on the User Management Screen to return to the Admin. Screen.

## Renaming Groups

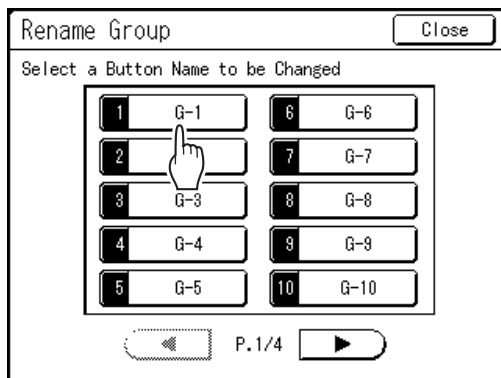
### 1 Display the User Management Screen.

Follow steps 1 to 4 in “Selecting Recognition and Identification System” (p.133)

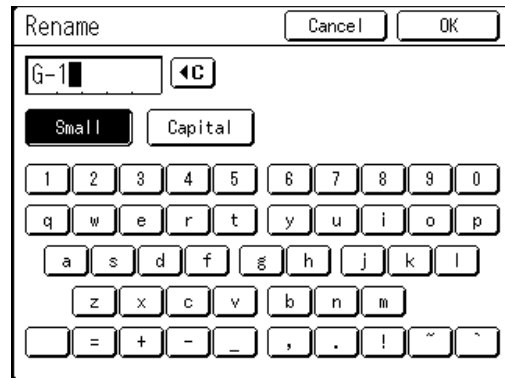
### 2 Touch [Rename Group].



### 3 Touch the Group button to rename.



### 4 Touch the character buttons to enter a new name.



Change capitalization by selecting the **[Small]** or **[Capital]** button.

p.157

#### Note:

- You can enter up to 10 characters.

### 5 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Rename Group Screen.  
The group name is renamed.

### 6 Touch [Close].

Returns to the User Management Screen.

To close the User Management setting, touch **[Close]** on the User Management Screen to return to the Admin. Screen.

# Reset All User Counters

All user counters can be cleared in a single procedure.

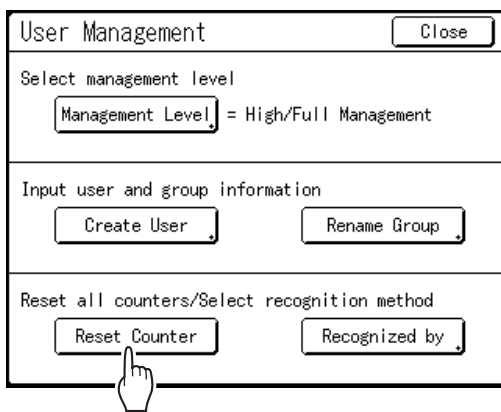
**Important!:**

- After the counters are cleared, they cannot be recovered.

## 1 Display the User Management Screen.

Follow steps 1 to 4 in “Selecting Recognition and Identification System” (p.133)

## 2 Touch [Reset Counter].



## 3 Touch [OK].



Returns to the User Management Screen.  
All user counters are cleared.

To close the User Management settings, touch **[Close]** on the User Management Screen to return to the Admin. Screen.

# Automatic Sorting Into Groups [Program]

“Program” feature saves you from repeatedly having to enter how many copies to print, by assigning the number of copies per sets in advance. Operation stops after printing each set of copies.

Store a “Program” setting for easy retrieval later.

Sample usage for this feature: in a school setting, you can pre-assign the number of copies (sheets) per class (set), and then assign the number of classes per grade (group) in the entire school.

“Program” consists of three types: “Single Page”, “Multi-Page” and “Combination”.

## Important!:

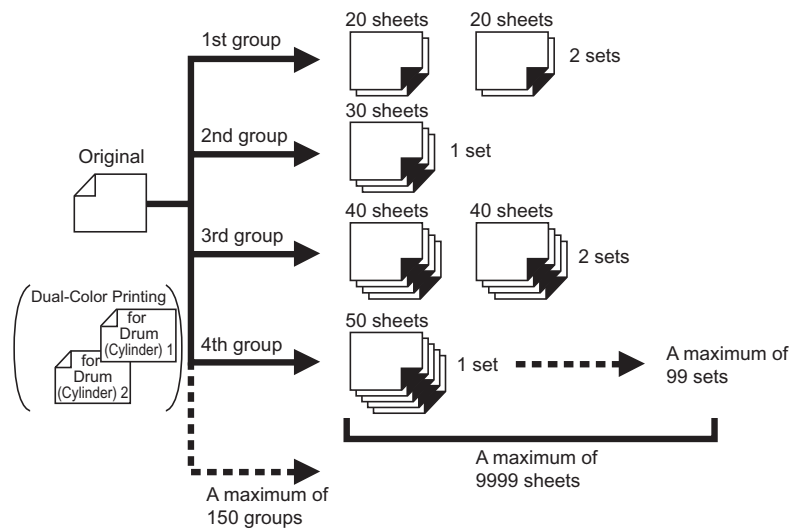
- “Program” is not available when “Auto Page Renewal” is selected.

## ◆ Single Page Mode

From a single original document, print into multiple groups of sets.

A maximum of 150 groups can be created, each having up to 99 sets. Each set can be up to 9999 copies.

The machine can be configured to specify how many copies (sheets) per set, then how many sets are to be created for each group.



## Important!:

- If you are printing multiple originals with “Single Page” program, place multiple originals (up to 50) in the optional ADF unit, and as long as “Auto Process” is “ON”, the set program can be repeated and all originals are divided into groups to print the number of copies specified.

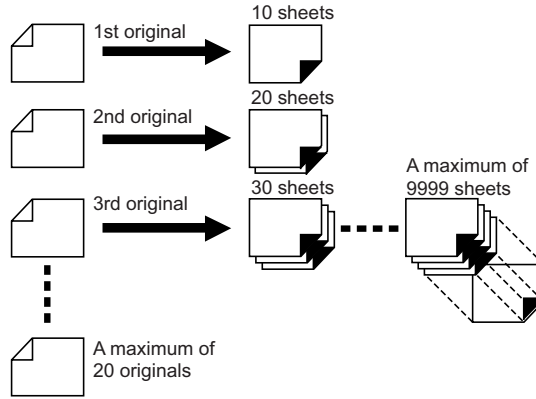
◆ **Multi-Page Mode**

For multiple originals (multiple copies for Mono-Color printing, multiple groups of 2 originals for Dual-Color printing), different number of copies are printed for each original.

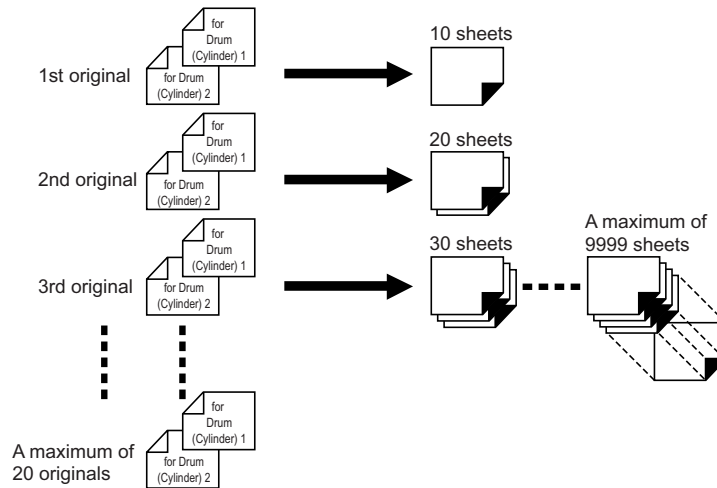
Up to 9999 copies can be made from a single original.

Each original can reproduce a pre-assigned number of sheets (up to 20 originals).

**Mono-Color Printing**



**Dual-Color Printing with 2 Originals**



### ◆ Combination (only possible with Dual-Color printing)

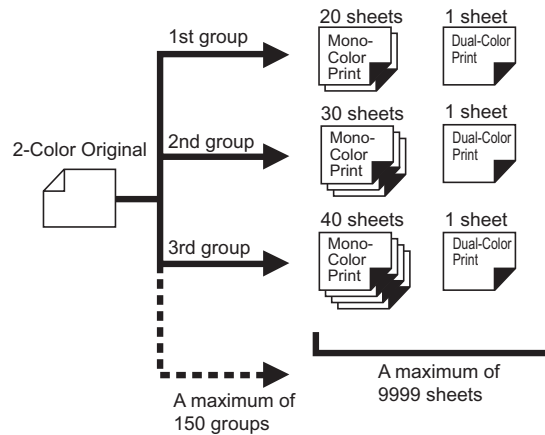
From two originals or a Dual-Color original, you can conduct Mono-Color printing and Dual-Color printing for each group (class).

After Mono-Color printing only from Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, the Dual-Color print object using both Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 is inserted.

The print quantity for Mono-Color printing can be set for each group. The print quantity for Dual-Color printing can be set to be either the same for all groups or the same for Mono-Color printing of each group.

For example, it can be used to print test questions for a number of students and a single answer key for the teacher.

Up to 150 groups can be set, and each group can have a maximum of 9,999 copies for each print.



#### Important!:

- The “Combination” program is a function for setting the number of print copies. It is not intended to separate colors into red and black. Use “Easy 2Color” for this. (p.160)

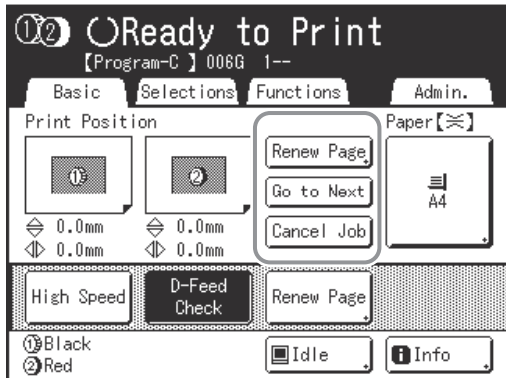
## How to Program Print

There are two ways to print in sets using “Program” printing feature.

- Program, then print (without saving the settings) [p.151](#)
- Retrieve a saved program, then print (when program is registered) [p.155](#)

### Tip:

Choose from the following actions on the Print Basic Screen.  
Touch a button to proceed.



**[Renew Page]:** Creates a master from the last Master-Making data. [p.173](#)

**[Next Page]** or **[Go to Next]:** Stops current print job, skips to the next original, set or group.

**[Cancel Job]:** Cancels execution of the Program.

### Note:

- The optional Job Separator is useful for Programed Printing.  
The Job Separator releases a piece of tape after each set or original document, thereby automatically separating sets or groups. It eliminates the need to manually remove a stack of sheets or insert a marker between sets. Remember to activate “Job Separation” in the Functions Screen when printing with the Job Separator. You must remove each stack from the Paper Receiving Tray, or insert a marker during the pause if not using the Job Separator.



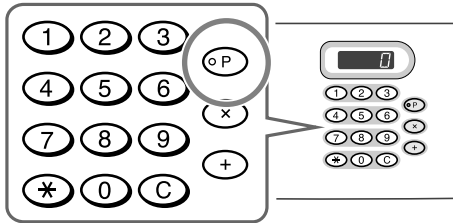
## Setting Up for Programed Printing

There are two ways to display the Program Screen.

- Touch **[Program]** on the Functions Screen on the display.
- Press the **(P)** key of the Print Quantity Keys.

The following steps describe pressing the **(P)** key of the Print Quantity Keys.

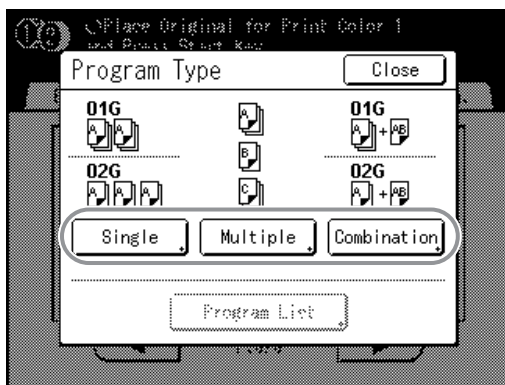
### 1 Press the **(P)** key.



#### Note:

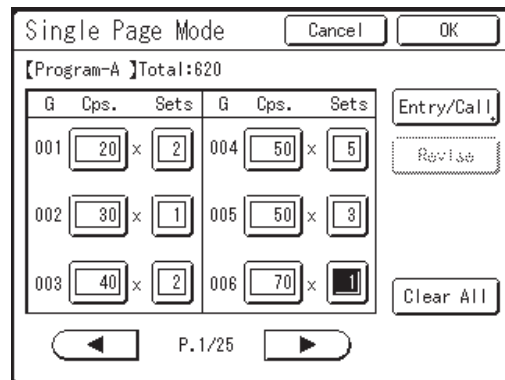
- Press the **(x)** key and skip to step 3) of the “Single Page Mode”. Press the **(+)** key and skip to step 3) of the “Multi-Page Mode”.

### 2 Touch the button of the program to set the Program Type.



### 3 Enter the numbers using the Print Quantity Keys.

#### ◆ For Single Page Mode



- 1) Enter the number of copies using the Print Quantity Keys.
  - 2) Press the **(x)** key or the **(\*)** key.
  - 3) Enter the number of sets (in the group) using the Print Quantity Keys.
  - 4) Press the **(+)** key or the **(\*)** key.
- To program more than one group, repeat steps 1) - 4).

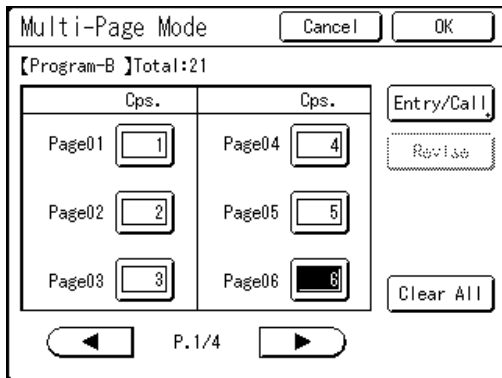
#### Note:

- **(x)**, **(+)** and **(\*)** keys can also move the entry box.  
When you press the **(x)** key, “Sets” moves from top to bottom and, when you press the **(+)** key, “Cps.” moves from top to bottom.  
When you press the **(\*)** key, the entry box moves in the order of “Sets” to “Cps.” and then to “Sets” one below.
- To cancel or change a number, press the **(C)** key and enter again.
- To clear all (number of copies and number of sets), touch **[Clear All]**.
- The total number of all copies to be printed is shown on the top of the screen.

**Important!:**

- To save the current Programed Printing setting, touch **[Entry/Call]**.  
Once **[OK]** is touched, the setting cannot be saved. See "Saving Programs" (p.154) for further information.

◆ **For Multi-Page Mode**



- 1) Enter the number of copies using the Print Quantity Keys.
- 2) Press the **(+)** key or the **(\*)** key.
- 3) Repeat steps 1) and 2) above to enter the number of copies for each original.

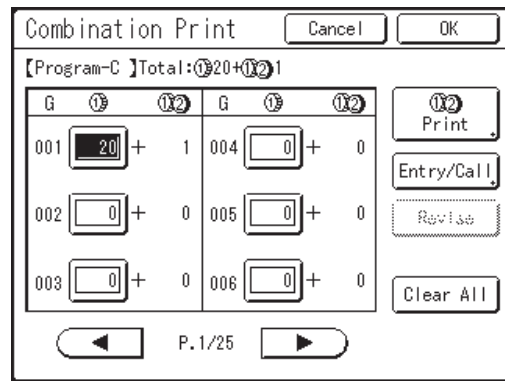
**Note:**

- (+)** and **(\*)** keys can also move the entry box from top to bottom.
- To cancel or change a number, press the **(C)** key and enter again.
- To clear all (number of copies and number of sets), touch **[Clear All]**.
- The total number of all copies to be printed is shown on the top of the screen.

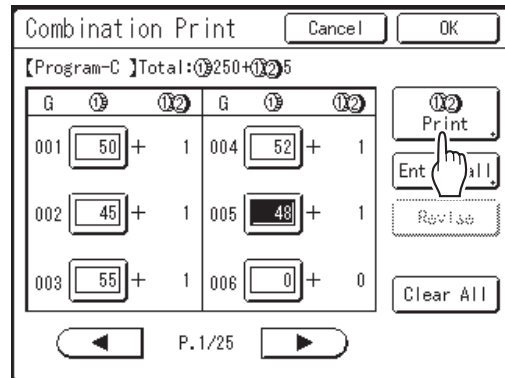
**Important!:**

- To save the current Programed Printing setting, touch **[Entry/Call]**.  
Once **[OK]** is touched, the setting cannot be saved.  
See "Saving Programs" (p.154) for further information.

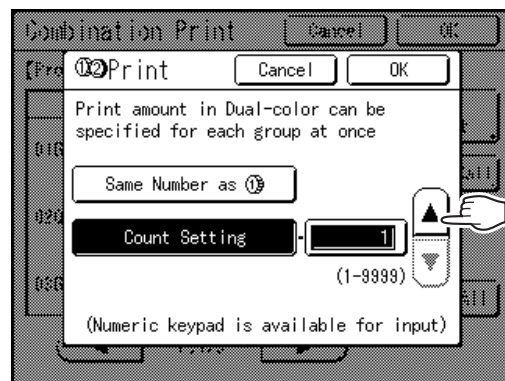
◆ **For Combination Print**



- 1) Enter the number of copies to be printed by Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 using the Print Quantity Keys.
- 2) Press the **(+)** key or the **(\*)** key.
- 3) Repeat steps 1) and 2) above to enter the number of copies for each original.
- 4) Touch **[Print]**.  
This operation is not required if you are only printing one Dual-Color copy.



- 5) Touch **(▲)** or **(▼)**.



**Note:**

- The Print Quantity Keys can also be used to enter a value.
- If you are printing the same number of Dual-Color copies as Mono-Color copies, touch **[Same Number as 13]**.
- The number of copies assigned for “**13 2** Print” will apply to all groups and cannot be changed from group to group.
- If you specify “Combination” program when using direct print to print, the first page stops prior to printing. Combination Print Screen appears on the control panel to input the number of print copies to print.

**6) Touch [OK].****Note:**

- **+** and **\*** keys can also move the entry box from top to bottom.

**Important!:**

- To save the current Programed Printing settings, touch **[Entry/Call]**. Once **[OK]** is touched, the setting cannot be saved. See “Saving Programs” (p.154) for further information.

**4 Touch [OK].**

Returns to the original screen. Ready to print in accordance with the program.

**Note:**

- Alternatively, after entering the number of copies or sets, press the **start** key to start printing without touching **[OK]**.

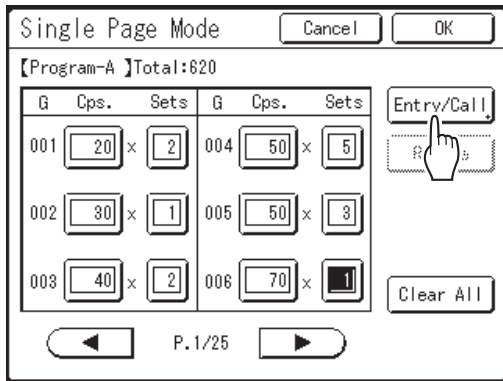
# Saving Programs

Store frequently-used Program settings for later use and printing.  
 A total of 12 settings (Single Page Mode, Multi-Page Mode or Combination Print) can be stored.

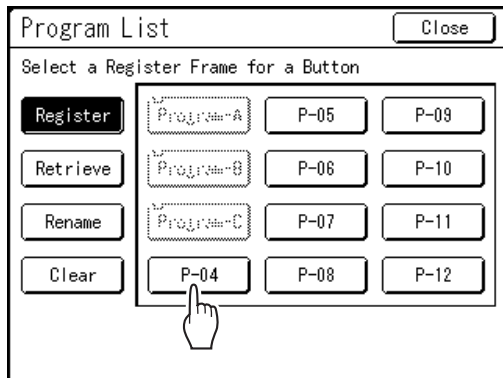
## 1 Create and enter Programed Printing settings.

Follow steps 1-3 in "Setting Up for Programed Printing" (p.151).

## 2 Touch [Entry/Call] on the Program Screen.



## 3 Touch an unused button.



Unused buttons are displayed with a solid line.  
 Used buttons are grayed out and are not available.

## 4 Touch [OK].

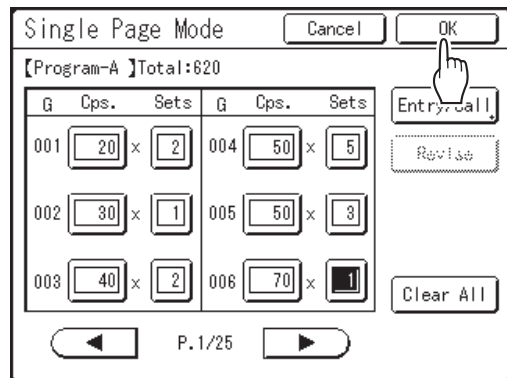


Returns to the Program List Screen. The Program is stored.

**You can name each program for your convenience. See step 3 in "Renaming a Program" (p.156).**

### Note:

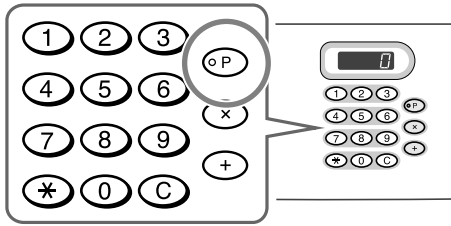
- After saving the Program, touch **[Close]** on the Program List Screen to return to the Program Screen.  
 Touch **[OK]** on the Program Screen to print from a saved Program.



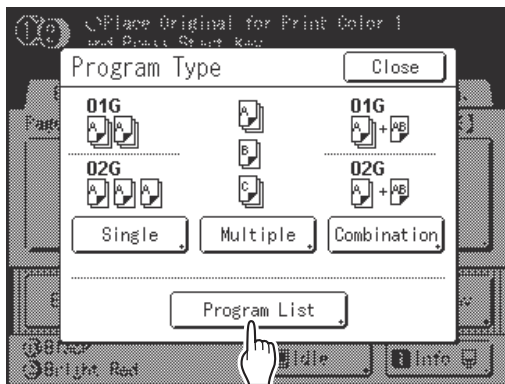
## Retrieving a Program

Retrieve a stored program and modify its settings.

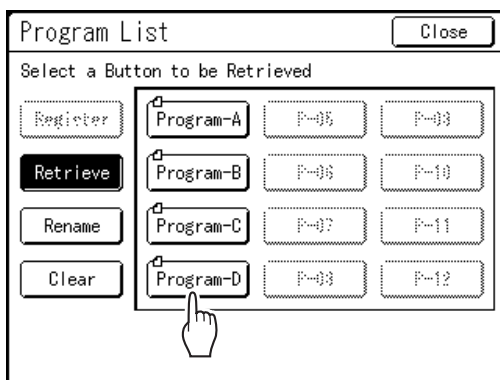
### 1 Press the key.



### 2 Touch [Program List].



### 3 Touch a button to select a Program to retrieve.





#### Note:

- When printing with Mono-Color, the “Combination” program cannot be retrieved.

### 4 Touch [OK].

Returns to the original screen. Ready to print using the retrieved program.

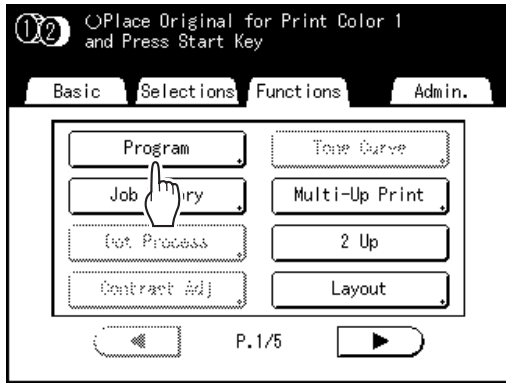
#### Note:

- To cancel the program printing, press the  key (or touch **[Functions]**→**[Program]**) and then touch **[Cancel Job]** on the next screen. Canceling program printing by pressing the  key will reset other settings.

# Renaming a Program

Program names can be changed to better describe their usage or purpose.

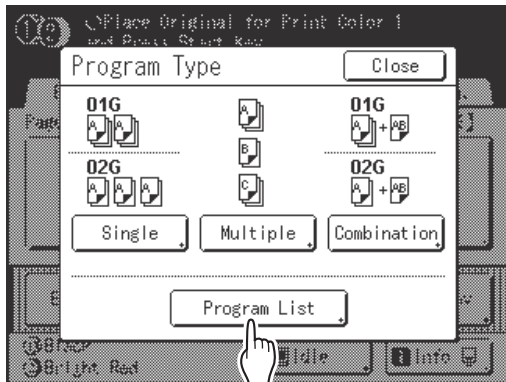
## 1 Touch [Program] on the Functions Screen.



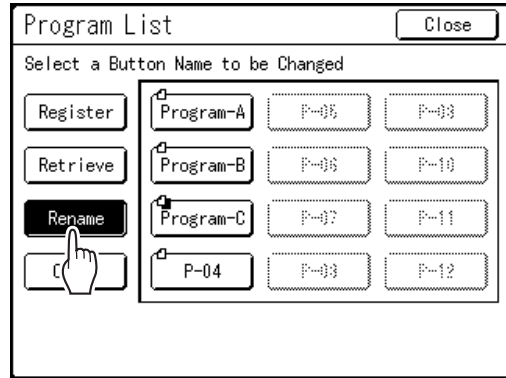
**Note:**

- If [Program] is already highlighted, touching it will again display the Program Screen, and not the Rename a Program Screen. Touch [Cancel Job] then [OK] to return to the Functions Screen. Touch [Program] again.

## 2 Touch [Program List].



## 3 Touch [Rename].

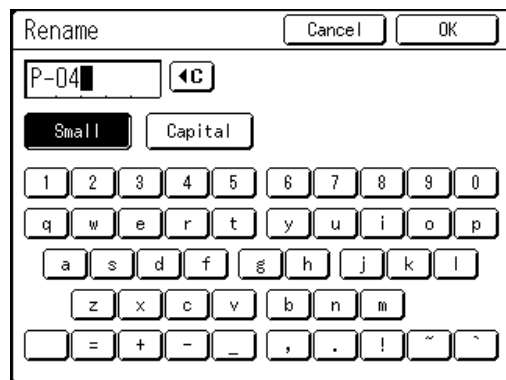


**Note:**

- Each Program button has an icon on top left. indicates Single Page Mode Program, indicates Multi-Page Mode Program and indicates Combination Print.

## 4 Select a program to rename.

## 5 Touch character buttons to enter a new name.



Change capitalization by selecting [Small] or [Capital] button.

☞ p.157

**Note:**

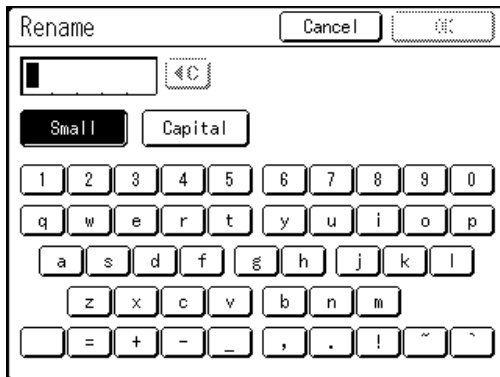
- To delete the current name, touch button or press the key.

## 6 When entered, touch [OK].

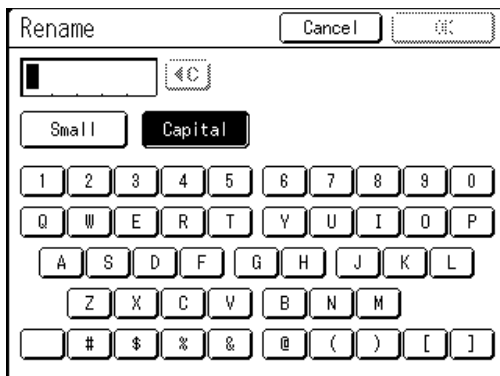
Returns to the Program List Screen. The program is renamed.

**Tip:**  
Rename Screen



### ◆ Small



### ◆ Capital



### Note:

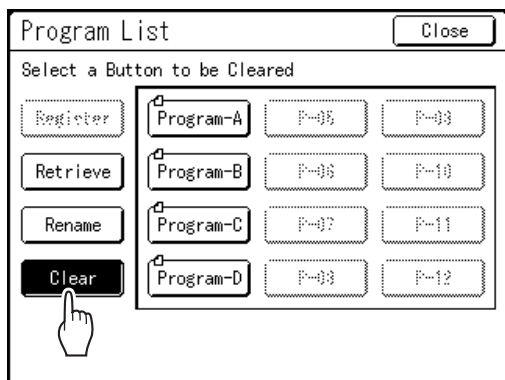
- You can enter up to 10 characters.
- Print Quantity Keys may also be used for entering numbers.
-  button or  key clears previously saved or current entry. Touch to clear one character at a time.

## Clearing Programs

### 1 Display the Program List Screen.

Follow steps 1 to 2 in "Retrieving a Program" (p.155).

### 2 Touch [Clear].



### 3 Select a program to clear.

### 4 Touch [OK].



Returns to the Program List Screen. The program is cleared.



## Making changes to Stored Programs

### 1 Retrieve a program to modify.

Follow steps 1 and 3 in “Retrieving a Program” (p.155).

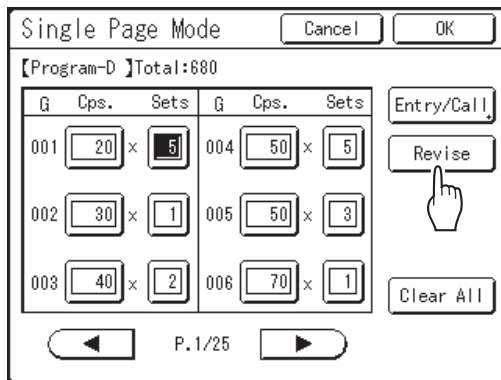
### 2 Make changes to the Program.

Modify the number of copies or sets in the current screen.

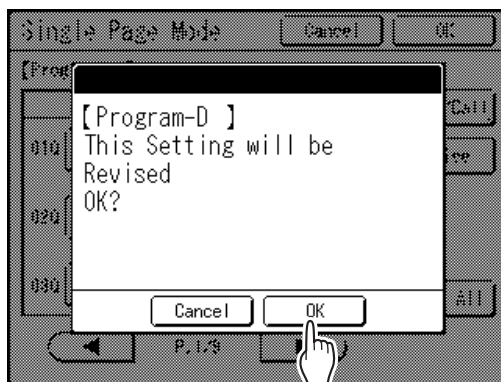
#### Note:

- See “Setting Up for Programed Printing” (p.151) for details on how to set up a program.

### 3 Touch [Revise].



### 4 Touch [OK].



Returns to the Program Screen. Program settings are updated (overwritten).

## Use Easy 2Color and Combination together

Using “Easy 2Color”, separate the originals into Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2. (The test questions are separated into Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and the test questions with answers are separated into Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.)

Moreover, using the “Combination” mode, Program Printing by Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is conducted and Dual-Color printing using Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 is conducted in the interval of each group (class). With using this function, the printing shown in the example below becomes possible.

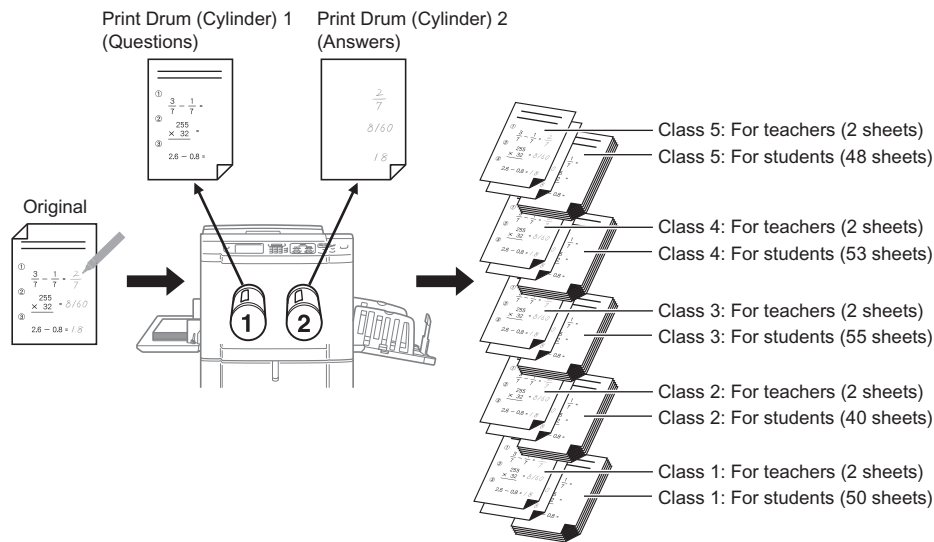
Ex.)

When conducting a test at the school, test questions for students and test questions with answers for teachers can be printed according to the quantity of each group (class) in a single operation.

The originals to use should be test questions printed in 1 color (black) (for students) and test questions on which answers are written with recommended pens (for teachers).

### Print quantity for each group (class)

	Class 1	Class 2	Class 3	Class 4	Class 5
For students (Mono-Color printing in Print Drum (Cylinder) 1)	50 sheets	40 sheets	55 sheets	53 sheets	48 sheets
For teachers (Dual-Color printing in Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 + 2)	2 sheets	2 sheets	2 sheets	2 sheets	2 sheets



### Note:

- “Combination” is a one-of-a-kind Program Printing. When the registration of the number of students in the class and the quantity of test questions with answers in advance, “Combination” becomes possible only by retrieving the program next time.

# 1 Set the original and print paper.

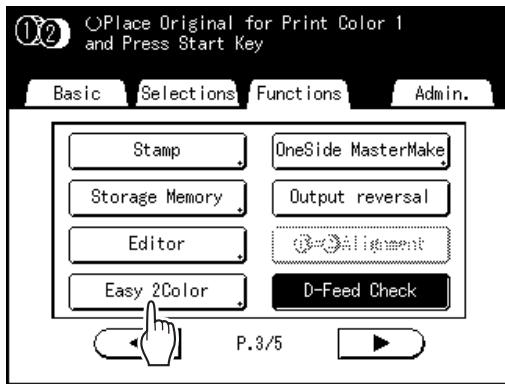
☞ p.99

## Note:

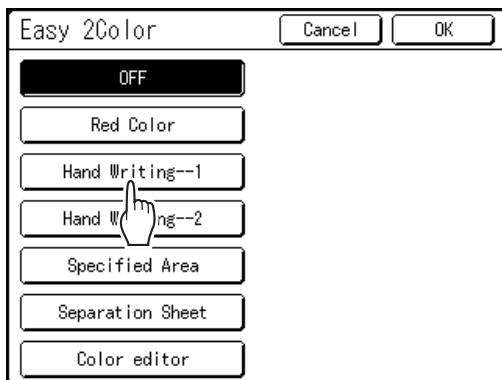
- When you have transmitted the original data in "Combination print" from the computer, the 3rd screen of step 3 is displayed. Start the operation from the entry of quantity.

# 2 Setting the Easy 2Color.

- 1) Touch **[Easy 2Color]** on the Functions Screen.



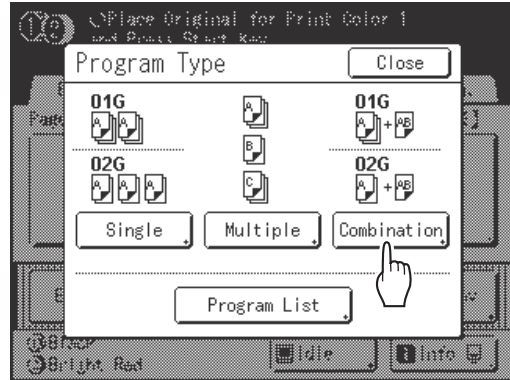
- 2) Touch **[Hand Writing--1]**.



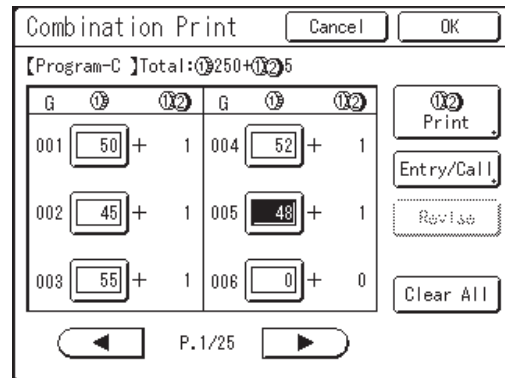
- 3) Touch **[OK]**.  
The Functions Screen appears.

# 3 Setting the Combination.

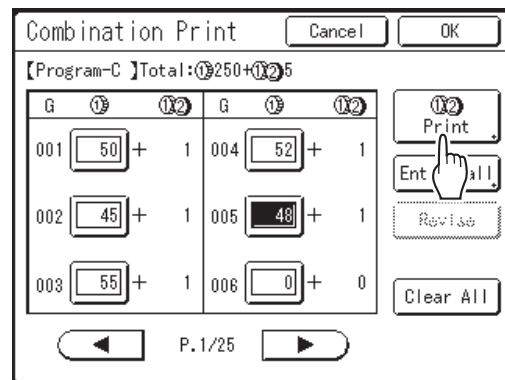
- 1) Display the **[Program Type]** Screen.  
Perform steps 1 and 2 of "Retrieving a Job Memory and Printing". (☞ p.165)
- 2) Touch **[Combination]**.



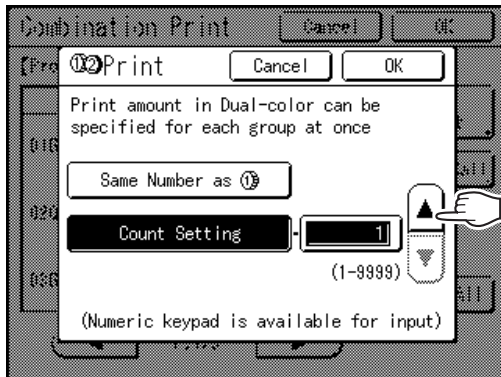
- 3) Enter the quantity for students (black) using the Print Quantity Keys.



- 4) Touch **[Print]**.



- 5) Enter the quantity for teachers (black + red) by touching ▲ or ▼.



A numeric keypad is available for input.



- 6) Touch [OK].  
Returns to the Combination Print Screen.

**Note:**

- To register the Program set here, touch [Entry/Call].  
For details, see “Saving Programs”.  
(p.154)

- 7) Touch [OK].  
With the status that the original can be printed by the set “Program”, returns to the original screen.

## 4 Start Printing.

- 1) Press the  key.  
Scanning, separation, and master-making are performed in succession according to the “Easy 2Color” setting.
- 2) Check the proof copy.  
After checking the output print position, density and paper output position, adjust them as needed.
  - Print Position (p.117)
  - Print Density (p.116)
  - Interval (p.122)
  - Jump Wing Control (p.124)
- 3) Press the  key.  
Printing starts with the setting of “Combination Print”.

# Using Job Memory Functions [Job Memory]

Save the settings of the last print job into Job Memory. Simply retrieve those Job Memory settings when doing a similar print job. Up to 10 jobs can be saved.

The following attributes can be saved to Job Memory.

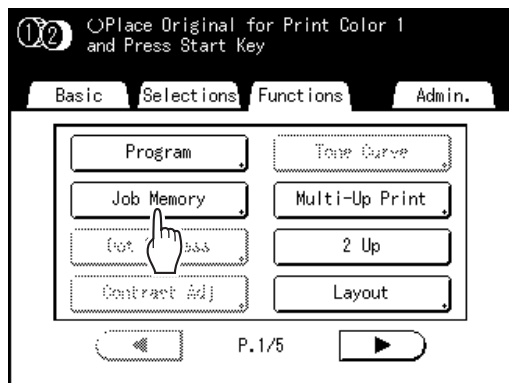
## ◆ Dual-Color/Mono-Color Printing (MasterMaking/Print)

Image	Multi-Up Print	Print Position	Auto Page Renewal
Dot Process	Layout	D-Feed Check	Air Blow
Contrast	Top Margin	Paper Feed Adj.	Separation Fan
Ink Saving	Contrast Adj	Jump Wing Control	Scanning Side -ADF*
Size	Tone Curve	Auto Process	
Margin+	Binding margin	ADF Semi-Auto*	
Paper Size	Print Quantity	Interval	
Max. Scan	Print Speed	Job Separation*	
Book Shadow	Print Density	Easy 2Color	

\*: Available with optional device

## Storing Job Memory

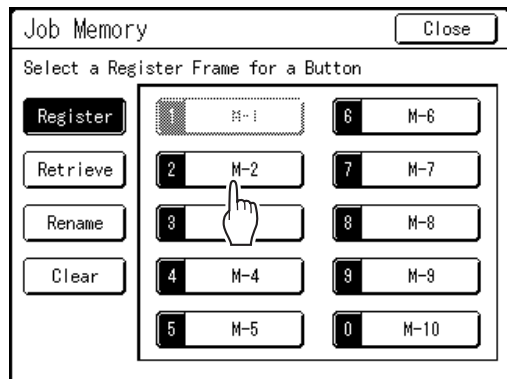
- 1 Set various settings for a print job.
- 2 Touch [Job Memory] on the Functions Screen.



**Note:**

- Job Memory Screen can also be invoked by pressing the key on the Print Quantity Keys.

- 3 Touch an unused button.

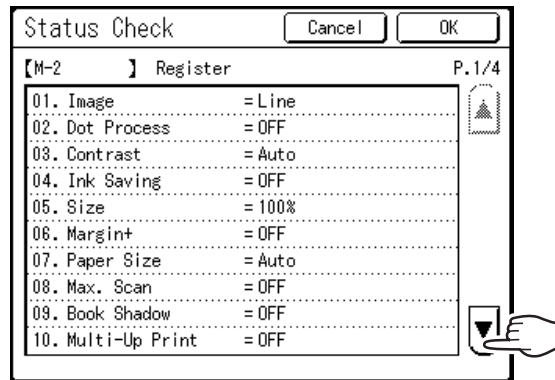


Unused buttons are displayed with a solid line. Used buttons are grayed out and are not available.

**Note:**

- If you pressed the key to open the screen, first touch [Register] then select an available button.

- 4 Confirm settings.



Touch and scroll down to check all items.

**Note:**

- To change a setting, touch [Cancel] and start over again. (Return to step 1.)

- 5 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Job Memory Screen. Settings are updated.

Each job memory can be named for your convenience. See step 2 in "Renaming a Job Memory" (p.167).

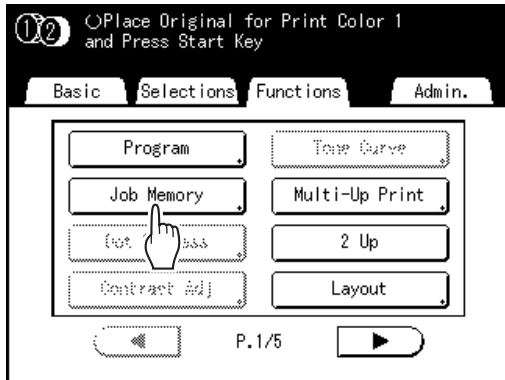
## Retrieving a Job Memory and Printing

There are two ways to display the Job Memory Screen.

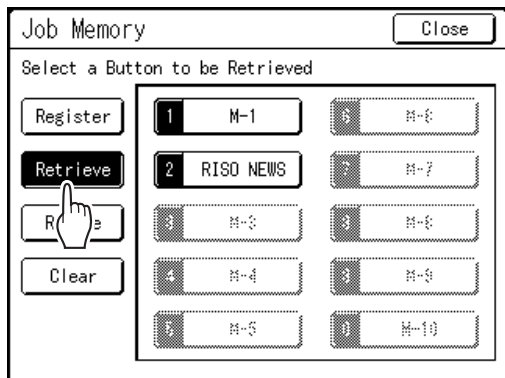
- Touch **[Job Memory]** on the Functions Screen on the display.
- Press the **(x)** key of the Print Quantity Keys.

In the following steps, the explanation will be made for touching the display.

### 1 Touch [Job Memory] on the Functions Screen.

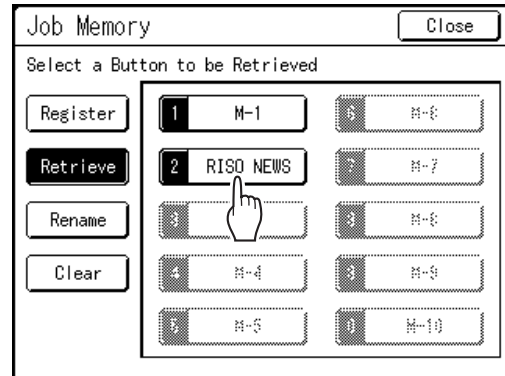


### 2 Touch [Retrieve].



Unregistered buttons are grayed out and are not available.

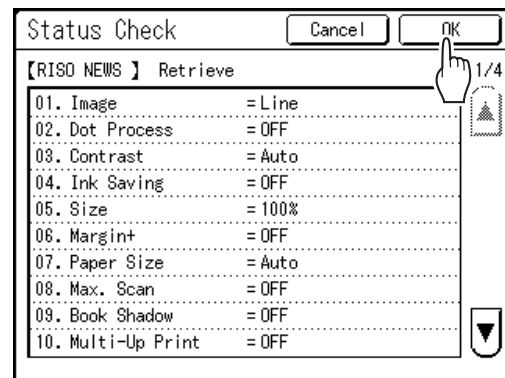
### 3 Select a Job Memory to retrieve.



#### Note:

- A job setting can also be retrieved using the Print Quantity Keys.  
M-1 to 9: **(1)** to **(9)**  
M-10: **(0)**

### 4 Confirm the settings and touch [OK].



Returns to the Functions Screen. Ready to print using the retrieved job settings.

Continue with the normal printing processes.

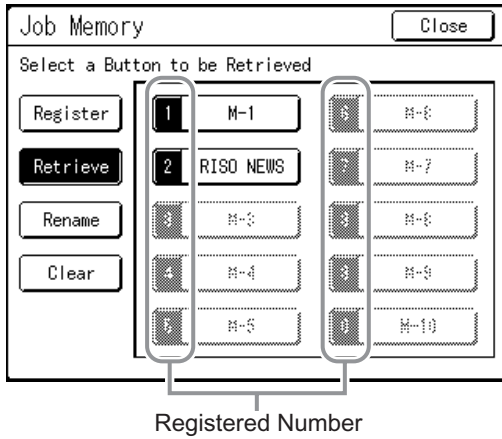
#### Note:

- To cancel a retrieved job memory, press the **(RESET)** key.

**Tip:**  
**Quick Retrieval**

A job setting can be retrieved via hardware keys without touching the Touch Screen.

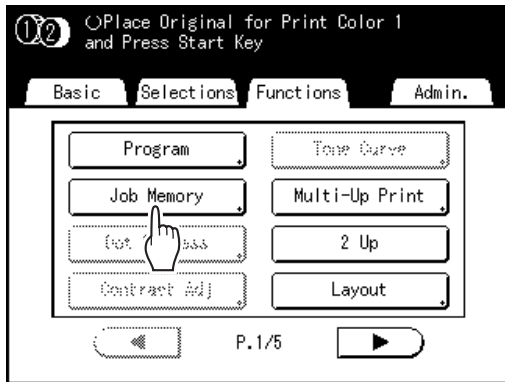
For example, to retrieve and print job M-2, press the \* (star), 2, and START key in that order. M-2 is retrieved and starts the master-making process.



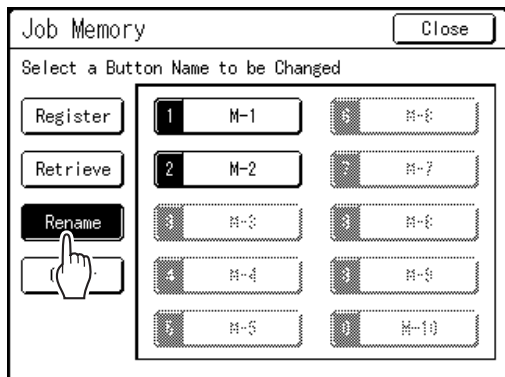


# Renaming a Job Memory

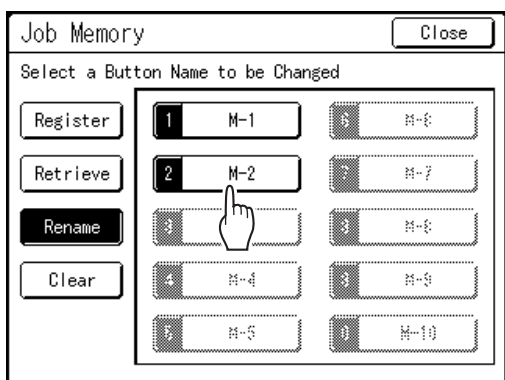
- 1 Touch [Job Memory] on the Functions Screen.



- 2 Touch [Rename].

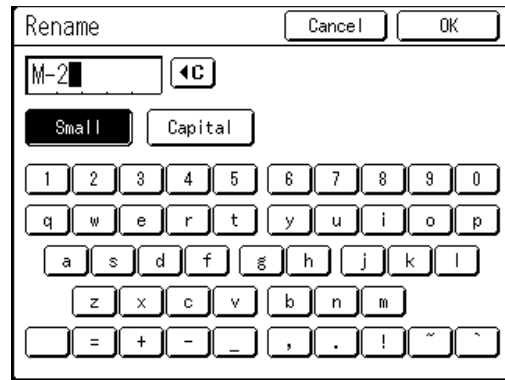


- 3 Select a Job Memory to rename.



Unregistered buttons are grayed out and are not available.

- 4 Touch character buttons to enter a new name.



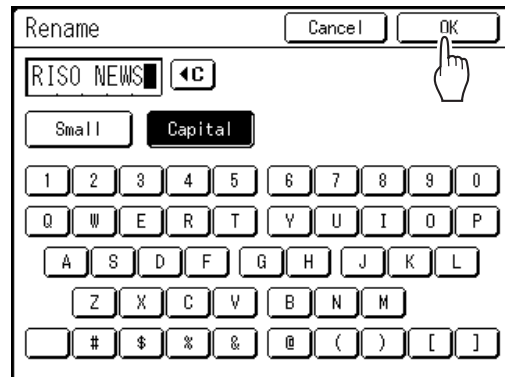
Change capitalization by selecting [Small] or [Capital] button.

☞ p.157

**Note:**

- To clear the current name, touch  button or press the  key.

- 5 When entered, touch [OK].



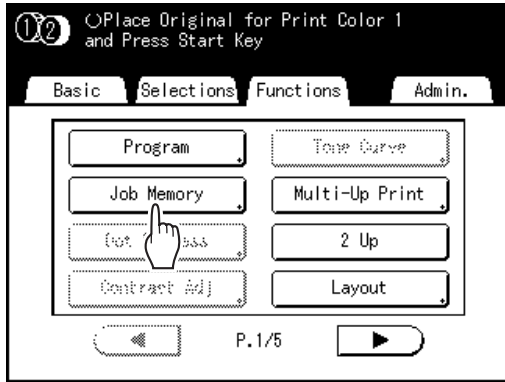
Returns to the Job Memory Screen. The name is updated.

- 6 Touch [Close].

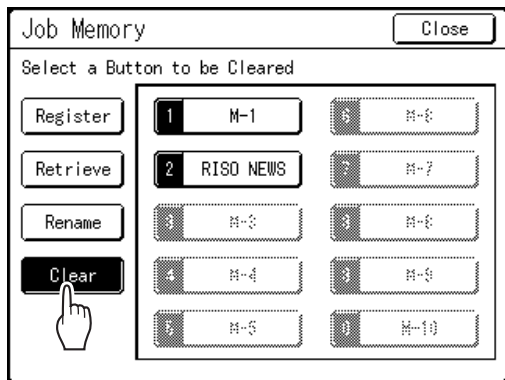
Returns to the Functions Screen.

# Clearing Job Memory

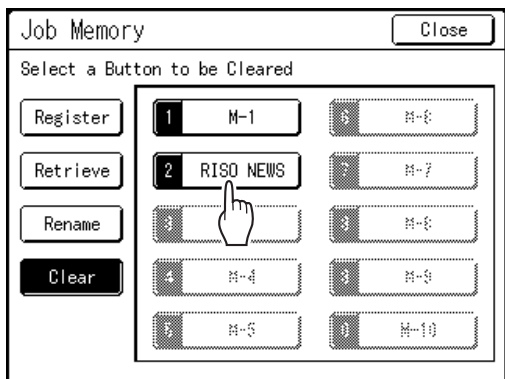
**1 Touch [Job Memory] on the Functions Screen.**



**2 Touch [Clear].**



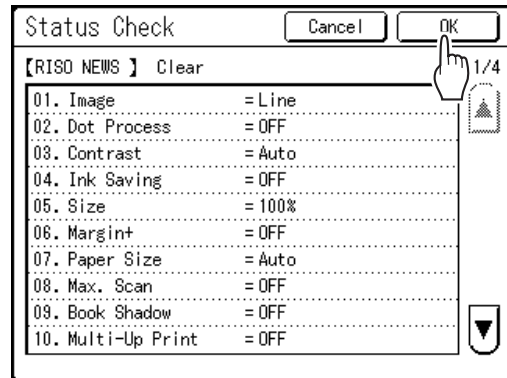
**3 Select a Job Memory to clear.**



**Important!:**

- Make sure it is the job setting that you want to delete.
- Once the Job Memory is cleared, it cannot be recovered.

**4 Touch [OK].**



**5 Touch [Close].**

Returns to the Functions Screen.

# Protecting Confidential Documents

## [Confidential]

After printing is complete, the master remains on the Print Drum (Cylinder) and is ready for printing another set of copies. To protect confidential documents from unauthorized duplication, use the Confidential feature to discard the master after printing.

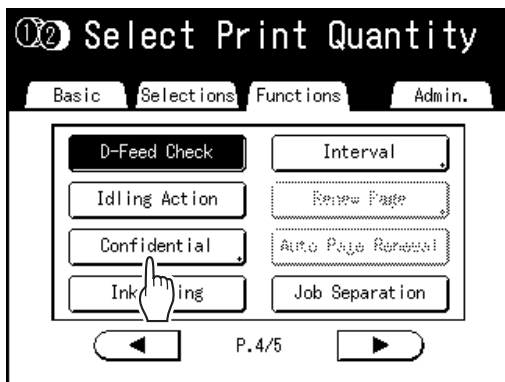
### Note:

- When “Confidential” is performed, the discarded master may no longer be reproduced, and “Renew Page” feature is disabled.
- If “Idling Action” is set to “ON”, “Idling Action” is executed using a confidential master (use this function when not using the Print Drum (Cylinder) for extended period of time).
- You can set the machine to remind users to use the “Confidential” feature every time it is used.  
p.207

### 1 Make sure printing is completed.

Confirm that everything is printed.

### 2 Touch [Confidential] on the Functions Screen.



The display screen differs with the number of Print Drum (Cylinder) set in the machine.

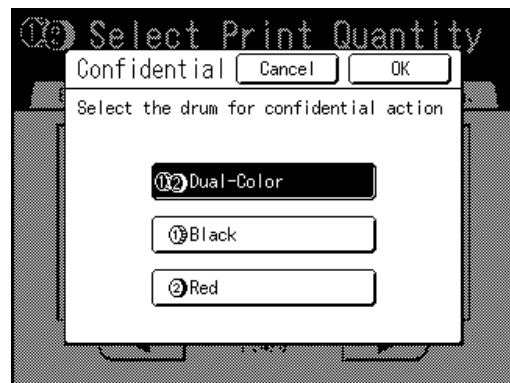
### ◆ When Dual-Color printing

The Print Drum (Cylinder) Selection Screen appears.

Touch the button of the Print Drum (Cylinder) whose master you want to discard.

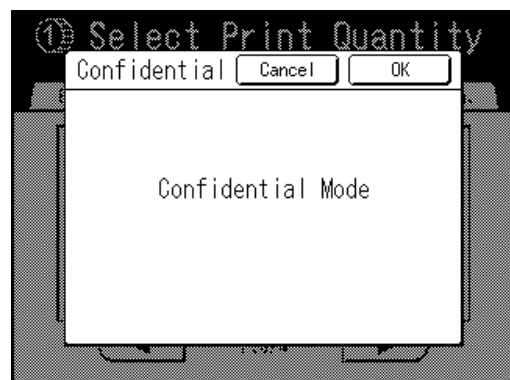
### Note:

- When the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, A4 □ / Ltr □ is displayed next to the ① button.

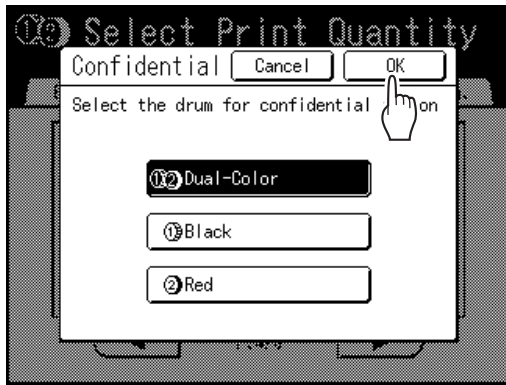


### ◆ When Mono-Color printing

The following screen appears.



### 3 Touch [OK].



The current master is discarded, and a new master is set on the Print Drum (Cylinder).

## Extending the Reserve Period [Reservation]

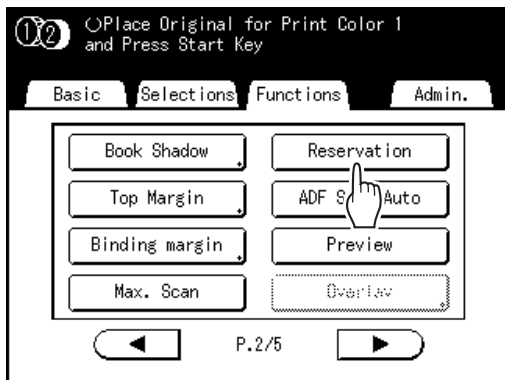
This function is useful when the machine is connected to computers. When the machine is inactive for a certain period of time, it determines that the current job is completed, even if the actual printing is still under way. If another person accidentally initiates another job from the computer, a new master will be made, discarding the current one.

By extending “Reserve Period”, such interruption can be prevented. We recommend that you activate the “Reservation” setting when temporarily pausing a job or when printing leaflets, etc. to prevent interruption.

### Note:

- Select from 5, 10, or 30 minutes as the “Reserve Period” on the Admin. Screen. The factory default is 5 minutes.   
☞ p.195
- The following operations do not count towards reservation period:
  - When the machine is operating (making a master, printing, confidential action, idling, etc.)
  - When the optional Job Separator is operating
  - When Control Panel buttons are being entered
  - When the Setup Screen for some function is displayed
- Auto Sleep and Auto Power-OFF will be disabled during the reservation period.
  - Auto Sleep/Auto Power-OFF: timer re-activates after the reservation period is up.
  - Power-OFF Schedule: Will not shut off until that time on the next day.
 ☞ p.196

### Touch [Reservation] on the Functions Screen.



Reservation period is extended.

# Idling Action [Idling Action]

Idling action prevents the machine from printing the first several copies with faint Ink after the Print Drum (Cylinder) has been exchanged or the machine has not been used for an extended period of time. Idling action before the master-making process assures consistent print quality from the beginning.

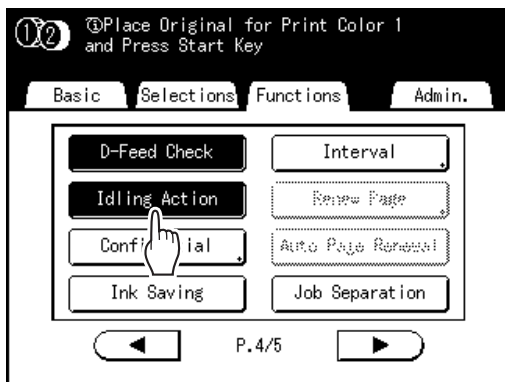
**Important!:**

- “Idling Action” is effective only in conjunction with the master-making process. When performing print processes only, “Idling Action” will have no effect.

**Note:**

- If you are only using Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 or Print Drum (Cylinder) 2, the “Idling Action” is applied only to the Print Drum (Cylinder) that is set.
- To perform “Idling Action” automatically when making a master after a specified period of time since the last print job, set “Auto Idling” on the Admin. Screen. Idling Rotation can be set from 1 to 3.  
☞ p.196
- When Mono-Color printing with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, both Print Drums (Cylinders) 1 and 2 may idle at the same time if **[Auto Idling]** is set.

## 1 Touch [Idling Action] on the Functions Screen.



**i** appears on screen.


## 2 Press the key.

After “Idling Action” has been finished, the master-making process starts.

**Note:**

- If **i** displays in the screen message area, this indicates that the “Auto Idling” time has elapsed. If you make a master in this status, “Idling Action” is executed.



- Remember to load the originals before pressing the  key as the master will be made immediately after “Idling Action” finishes.

# Reproducing the Master


## [Renew Page] [Auto Page Renewal]

The data from the last master-making process is temporarily stored on the machine. Using this data, another master can be reproduced without repeating steps to scan the same original.

“Auto Page Renewal” is a function that automatically recreates a master when a specified number of pages are printed. If you are printing a high-volume job of thousands or tens of thousands of copies, the master may degrade before the job is completed.

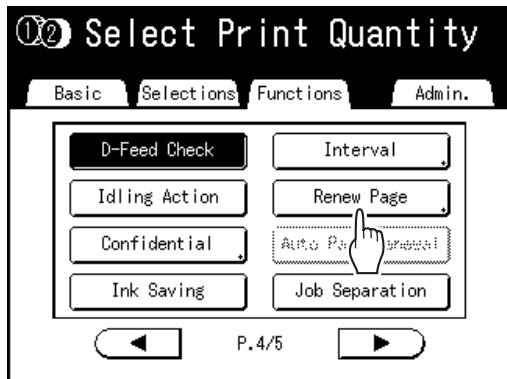
If you set “Auto Page Renewal” to “ON” prior to starting a large-volume print job, a master will be automatically recreated when the specified number of copies is reached (Auto Renewal Point). This allows you to maintain a consistent print quality from start to finish.

### Note:

- When Dual-Color printing, you can select the Print Drum (Cylinder) on which to recreate the master. When Mono-Color printing, the current Print Drum (Cylinder) is used to recreate the master.
- When Dual-Color printing, you can switch the original data of Print Drums (Cylinders) 1 and 2 and **[Renew Page]** by touching **[Sw.Color]** on the screen. (Excluding cases when Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder).)
- “Renew Page” works with data sent from a computer as well. However, if multiple pages exist, only the last page will be processed with “Renew Page”.
- You can “Rotate” the original and recreate a master. (Excluding cases when Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) during Dual-Color printing.)
- The “Renew Page” function is not available in the following conditions:
  - when not making a master even once after turning on the power switch
  - after pressing the  key
  - after executing “Auto Clear” (“Changing Default settings” p.192)
  - after performing “Confidential”
  - after master-making for Data Output Mode (when the optional Key Card Counter is installed.)
  - when an error has occurred during master-making
- The number of pages in the proof copy when using “Auto Page Renewal” can be adjusted using “Admin.” p.197
- When the print position has been adjusted, 2 proof copies will be made. (When the print position has not been adjusted and when the print position has been adjusted)

## Using Page Renewal

### 1 Touch [Renew Page] on the Functions Screen.

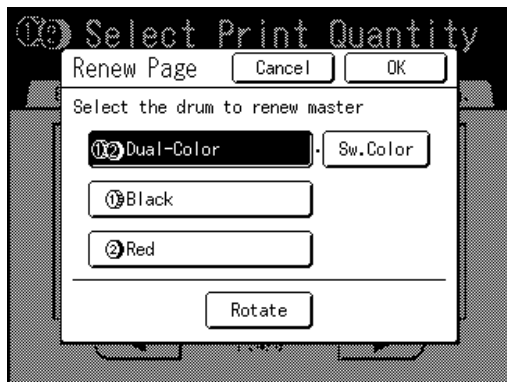


The display screen for Dual-Color and Mono-Color printing are different.

#### ◆ When Dual-Color printing

The Print Drum (Cylinder) Selection Screen appears.

Touch the button of the Print Drum (Cylinder) used to recreate the master.



#### Note:

- Only when **[Dual-Color]** is selected, you can switch the printing color. If you touch and select **[Sw.Color]**, you can change the masters on Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 (a handy function if you've inadvertently misplaced the original order).
- When the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, A4 □ / L t t r □ is displayed next to the **[1]** button.
- If the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set, you cannot select **[Sw.Color]** and **[Rotate]**.
- If you touch and select **[Rotate]**, you can rotate the original 180 degrees for renewing the master.

- When **[Rotate]** is set, the machine rotates the original 180 degrees for renewing the master while executing **[Auto Page Renewal]**.
- To cancel **[Rotate]**, touch **[Rotate]** again.

#### ◆ When Mono-Color printing

The following screen appears.



#### Note:

- If you touch and select **[Rotate]**, you can rotate the original 180 degrees for renewing the master.
- When **[Rotate]** is set, the machine rotates the original 180 degrees for renewing the master while executing **[Auto Page Renewal]**.
- To cancel **[Rotate]**, touch **[Rotate]** again.

### 2 Touch [OK].

"Renew Page" begins reproducing the master.




## Using Auto Page Renewal

In order to use “Auto Page Renewal”, you must enable it in “Admin.” prior to use.

If “Auto Page Renewal” is activated and “Auto Page Renewal” is set to “ON”, “Auto Page Renewal” can be executed during a print job.

### Important!:

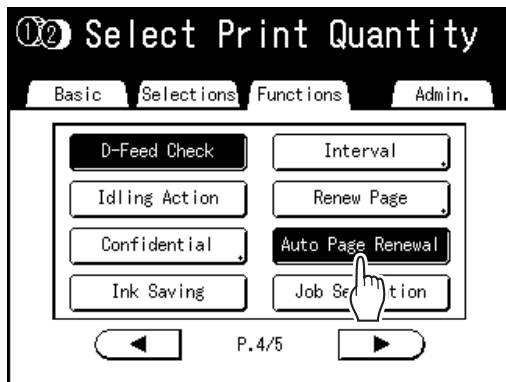
- If “Auto Page Renewal” is not activated in “Admin.”, “Auto Page Renewal” cannot be set to “ON”.  
☞ p.192
- The “Auto Page Renewal” is set to “OFF” in the following instances.
  - When printing with “Program”
  - When the  is pressed
  - When attempting to process the next job with direct print

### Note:

- The factory settings are such that a master is recreated every 1000 copies, with a setting to print 3 proofs. This setting can be changed in “Admin.”. ☞ p.197

## Turning ON “Auto Page Renewal”

Touch [Auto Page Renewal] on the Functions Screen.



“Auto Page Renewal” is activated.

When you print with these settings, “Auto Page Renewal” will be executed after the specified number of copies are printed.

### Note:

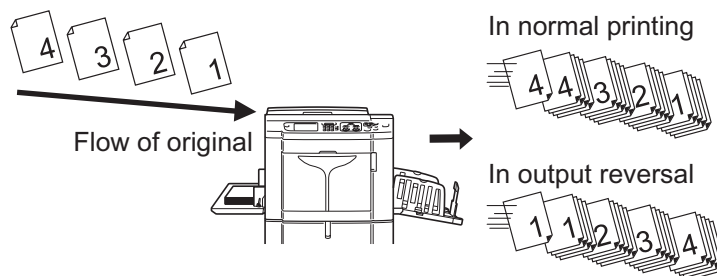
- If [Auto Page Renewal] is grayed out, go to “Admin.” and turn “Auto Page Renewal” ON.  
☞ p.197

# Print the original from the last page

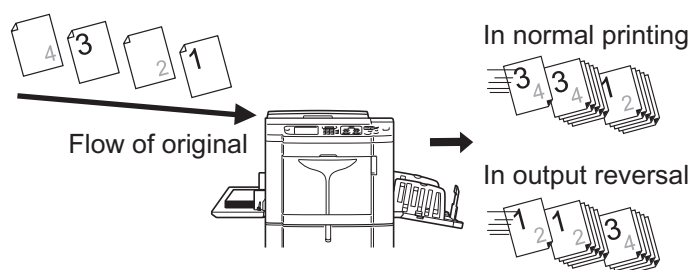
## [Output reversal]

By reversing the page order of the originals of several pages in length, print the originals from the last page.

### ◆ Printing paper output order in Mono-Color printing



### ◆ Printing paper output order in Dual-Color printing



#### Important!:

- To use this function, the optional Document Storage Card is required.
- While scanning the original, if there is no free memory space, the scanning stops to display a message. After canceling original scanning or arranging (clearing) the storage data, scan the original once again.
- Even when using output reversal in Dual-Color printing, a Print Drum (Cylinder) is allocated to each original in the same way as normal printing (allocated in the order of Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 to Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 and then to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 again). Only the paper output order is reversed.

#### Note:

“Output reversal” is not available in combination with the following functions:

- Program ([Multiple], [Combination])
- Preview
- Overlay
- Stamp
- Storage Memory
- Easy 2Color
- Scanning Side -ADF ([Duplex -> Simplex])
- OneSide MasterMake

**1 Select the Print mode.**

Select Mono-Color or Dual-Color print.

**Note:**

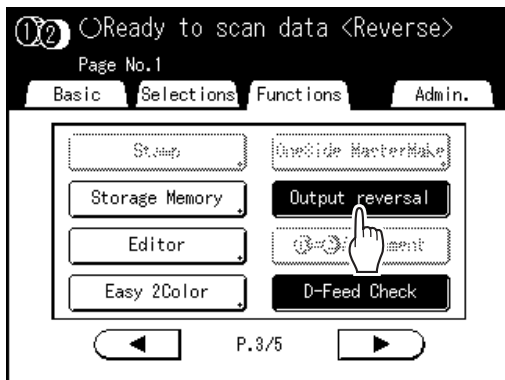
- See [p.29](#) for how to select a print mode.

**2 Set the original and print paper.**

Place the original on the Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.

In the case of Dual-Color printing, set the original of Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 first.

To place the original, see [p.42](#).

**3 Touch [Output reversal] on the Functions Screen.**

The button is highlighted and “Output reversal” is set to “ON”.

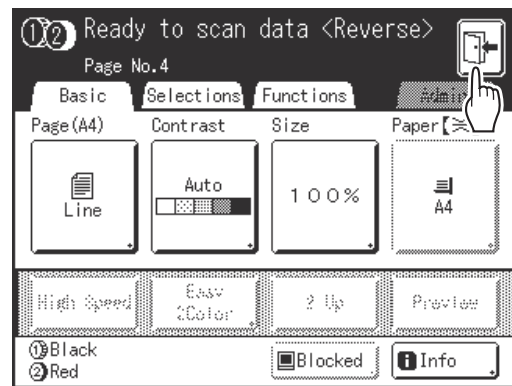
**4 Configure print functions.**

Set various functions as needed.

**5 Press the  key.**

Scan the 1st original.

When the optional ADF unit is used, after the scanning all originals, proceed to step 7.

**6 When the original has several pages, replace the originals and repeat steps 4 and 5.****7 Touch .**

The confirmation screen for master-making is displayed.

**8 Touch [Yes].**

The Master Making Basic Screen for storage data is displayed. Various output instructions can be changed.

[p.60](#)

**Note:**

- To cancel output reversal without making a master, touch **[No]**. To return to the previous step, touch **[<Back]**.

**9 Press the  key.**

The master-making of the 1st page starts, and the Print Basic Screen for storage data is displayed.

**10 Enter the print quantity using the Print Quantity Keys.**

The entered quantity is displayed on the Print Quantity Display.

**11 Press the  key.**

Printing starts.

Afterwards, repeat steps 9 to 11.

# Proof and Print

## (with the Optional ADF unit installed)

### [ADF Semi-Auto]

Selecting “Auto Process” with the optional ADF unit installed automatically performs the complete printing job, but you cannot make proof copies, or any necessary adjustments of each master. To pause for check after printing a proof copy of each master, select “ADF Semi-Auto”. After the printing is done, the machine continues to scan and create the next master, then print a proof copy before coming to a stop.

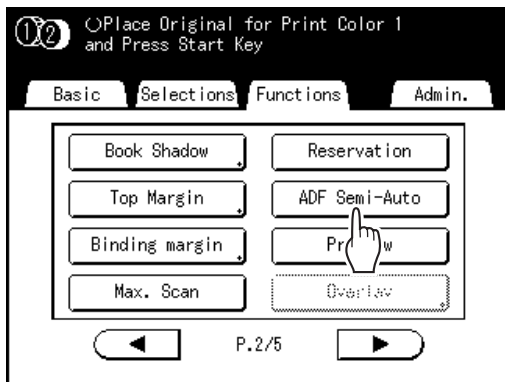
#### Important!:

- Turn “Auto Process” OFF when using “ADF Semi-Auto”.  
☞ p.72

#### Note:

- The default “ADF Semi-Auto” can be set on the Admin. Screen.  
☞ p.193

## 1 Touch [ADF Semi-Auto] on the Functions Screen.

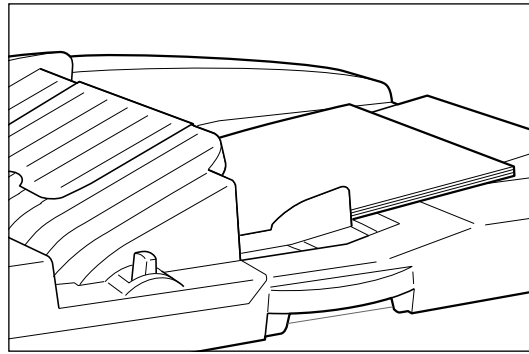


“ADF Semi-Auto” is selected.

#### Note:

- When “ADF Semi-Auto” is not displayed (or displayed in gray), turn off the “Auto Process” key on the Control Panel.

## 2 Place original(s) in the ADF unit.



The ADF unit detects the document, and automatically opens the Master Making Basic Screen

## 3 Enter the number of copies using the Print Quantity Keys.

The number is displayed on the Print Quantity Display.

#### Note:

- To change the number, press the **C** key, then re-enter the correct number.

## 4 Press the **START** key.

After a master is made, a proof copy is printed and the job stops.

## 5 Check the proof copy.

Make adjustments if needed.

---

**6** Press the  key.

The machine prints specified number of copies. Master for the next original is made, its proof copy is printed, then the machine stops again.

**Repeat steps 5 and 6.**

# Selecting Scanning Sides When Using the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 [Scanning Side -ADF]

When scanning originals using the optional Auto Document Feeder DX-1, there are three scanning side options: "Front Side", "Back Side", or "Duplex".

**Important!:**

- If the original is set on Auto Document Feeder DX-1, "Book Shadow" function cannot be used.

**Note:**

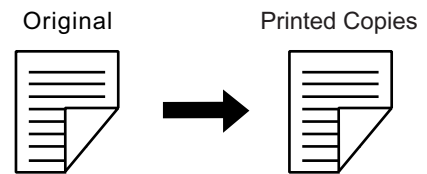
- The upside when the original is set is "Front Side".  
The set original is scanned sequentially from the top.
- Go to "Admin." and select "Scanning Side -ADF" to save a frequently used setting as the default.  
p.193

◆ **Front Side -> Simplex**

Scans the front side of the original, and prints on one side.

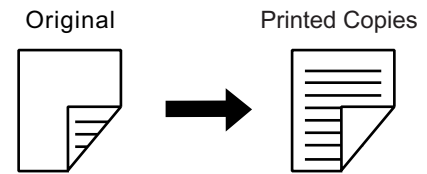
**Important!:**

- If the "Top Margin" function is used, the setting, "Front Side -> Simplex" must be used.



◆ **Back Side -> Simplex**

Scans the back side of the original, and prints on one side.



◆ **Duplex -> Simplex**

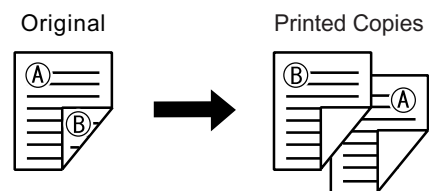
Scans both sides of the original and prints on one side. The front side is scanned first and then the back side. "Setting Direction" and "Paging Direction" of the original must be specified.

**Important!:**

- When setting Dual-Color Print, "Duplex -> Simplex" cannot be set.(after setting "Duplex -> Simplex", if Dual-Color Print is set, "Front Side -> Simplex" or "Back Side -> Simplex" is restored.)

**Note:**

- If the original includes blank pages, these will also be scanned and included in copies.

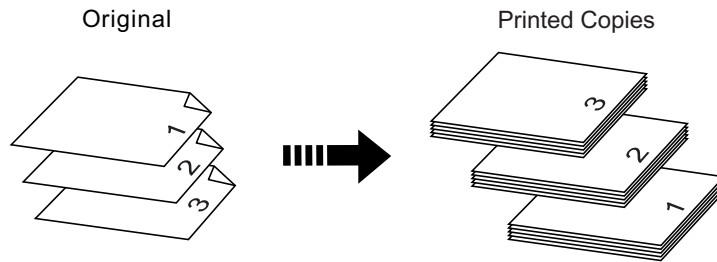


◆ **The processing order of the original and output**

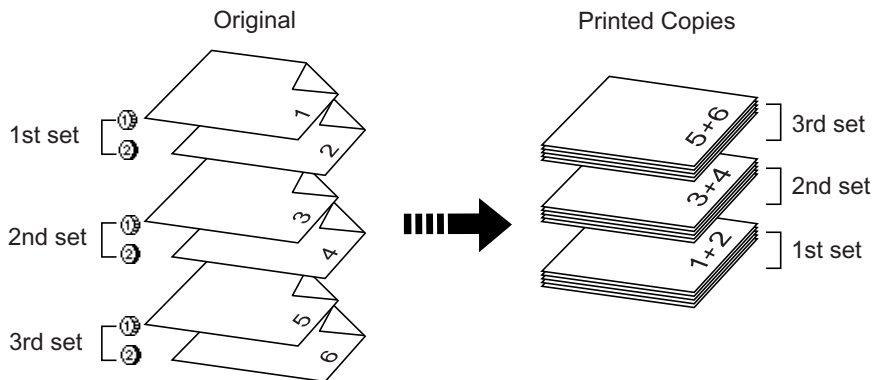
The original set in Auto Document Feeder DX-1 is scanned and printed from the top.

**Front Side -> Simplex**

- For Mono-Color Printing



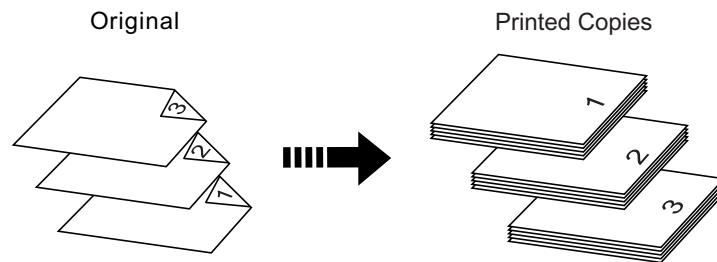
- For Dual-Color Printing



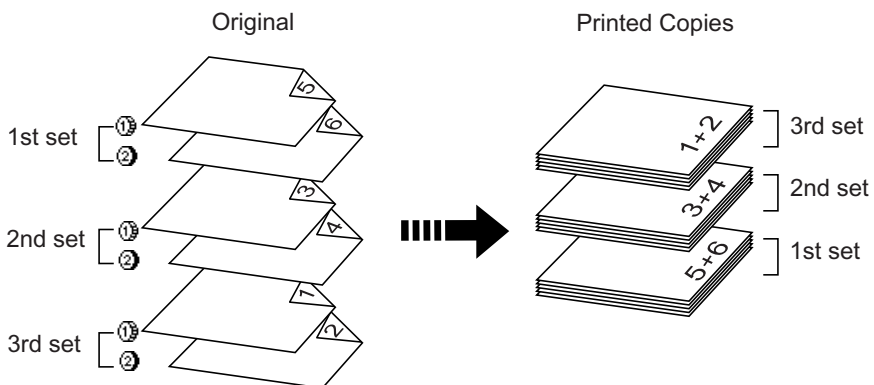
Refers to an original produced with ① for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, and ② for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

**Back Side -> Simplex**

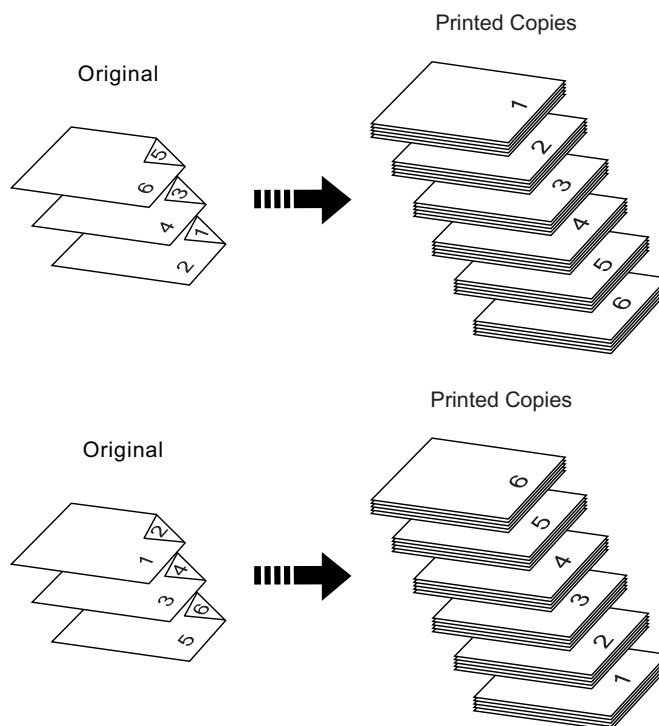
- For Mono-Color Printing



- For Dual-Color Printing



**Duplex -> Simplex**



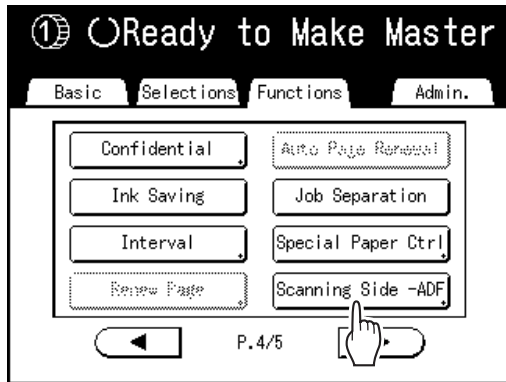
**Important!:**

- In “Program; Multi-Page Mode”, the first page of the original scanned is displayed as “Page01” on the Setup Screen.  
e.g.  
With the “Back Side -> Simplex” option, the last page of the original is displayed as “Page01” on the Setup Screen because scanning starts from the last (topmost) page.

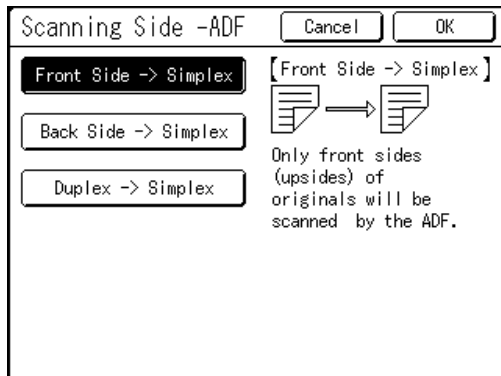


## Specifying the Scanning Side

### 1 Touch [Scanning Side -ADF] on the Functions Screen.



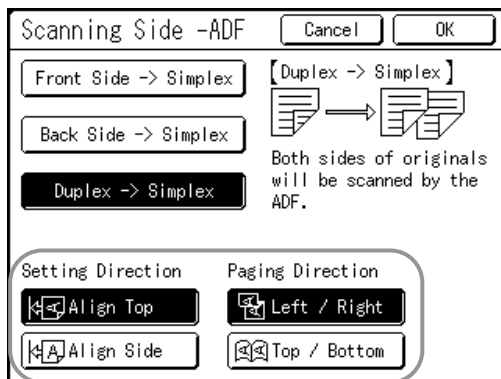
### 2 Touch a scanning option button.



#### Note:

#### ◆ When you select [Duplex -> Simplex]

Touch to select [Setting Direction] and [Paging Direction] buttons, shown on the screen.



See [p.180](#) for details of scanning options.

### 3 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Basic Screen after the “Scanning Side -ADF” settings have been saved.

#### Note:

- To confirm the current “Scanning Side -ADF” settings, open the “Scanning Side -ADF” Screen once more. The selected settings buttons are highlighted.

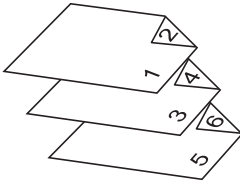
**Tip:**  
**Scanning duplex originals for manual duplex printing**

With the optional Auto Document Feeder DX-1, the buttons on the "Scanning Side -ADF" Screen can be used to scan both sides of an original and print on both sides of paper.  
 e.g.) Scanning the duplex original for duplex printing.

1) Set the original for duplex printing.

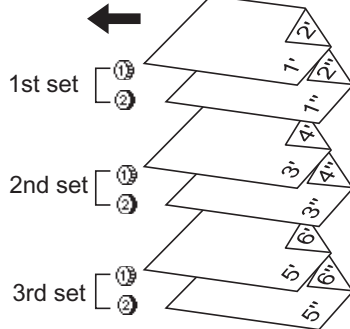
◆ **For Mono-Color Printing**

← Original orientation

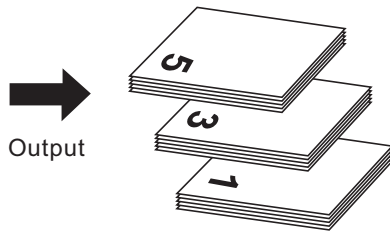


◆ **For Dual-Color Printing**

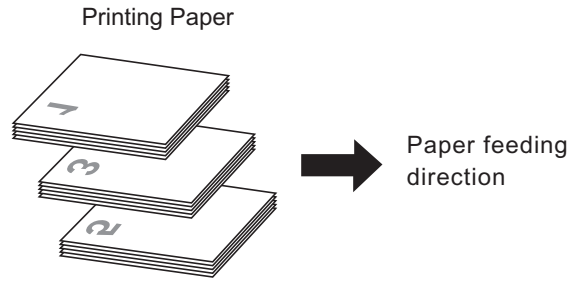
Original orientation



2) Select **[Front Side -> Simplex]** for printing.



3) Place the printing paper face-down in the Standard Feed Tray.



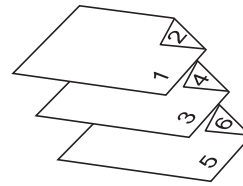
**Note:**

- Set the originals by reversing them. Pay attention to the orientation of printing.

4) Set in the same orientation as shown in step 1.

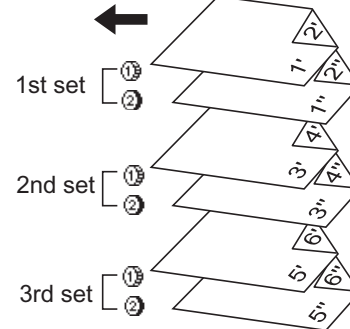
◆ **For Mono-Color Printing**

← Original orientation

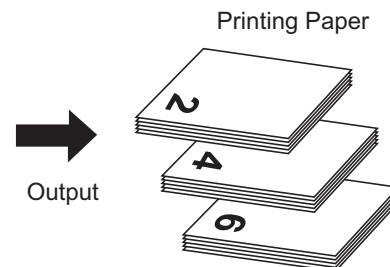


◆ **For Dual-Color Printing**

Original orientation



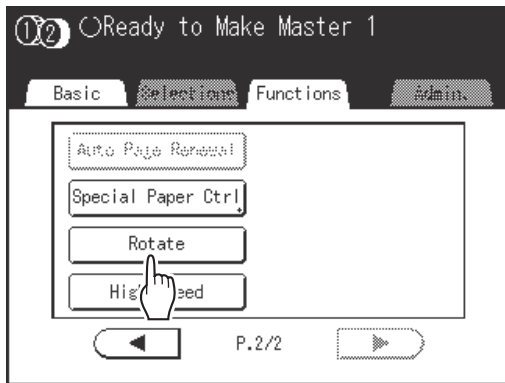
5) Select **[Back Side -> Simplex]** for printing.



# Rotating the Original 180 Degrees to Make a Master [Rotate]

When you are direct printing, you can rotate the original data received from a computer 180 degrees to make a master. When this function is used for the original data of a wide range of solid colors on the top side, you can prevent paper jams.

**After the machine receives the original data, touch [Rotate] on the Functions Screen.**



“Rotate” setting is updated.

**Note:**

- When you send the original data from a computer, set “Auto Process” to [OFF] or [Pause before “Master”].

# Checking User Counters [ID Counter Report]

Each user can output counter data (number of prints, etc.) when checking usage status.

## Important!:

- “ID Counter Report” can be outputted only when the “User Management” function is set.

## ◆ Report Output

Counter data can be output by following methods:

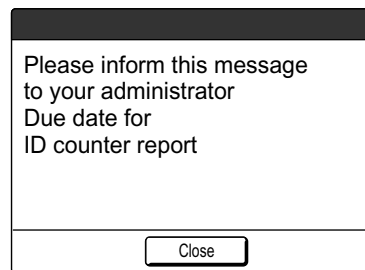
- Print  
Prints the counter data.
- E-mail  
E-mail attached with the counter data is sent to the e-mail addresses set as the destination.  
The mail settings must be set in advance. For details on mail settings, the optional RISO Network Card is required. For details, see the “RISO Network Card User’s Guide”.
- USB Flash Drive  
Outputs the counter data to the USB Flash Drive.  
USB Flash Drive must be connected to the USB slot in advance.

## Note:

- By using the “RISO Utility Software” (RISO COPY COUNT VIEWER) included on the provided CD-ROM, the counter data output to the USB Flash Drive can be managed by a computer.  
For details, see the “RISO Utility Software User’s Guide”.

## Setting the reminder date

For regular counting, a reminder date can be set.  
The following screen is displayed on the set date.

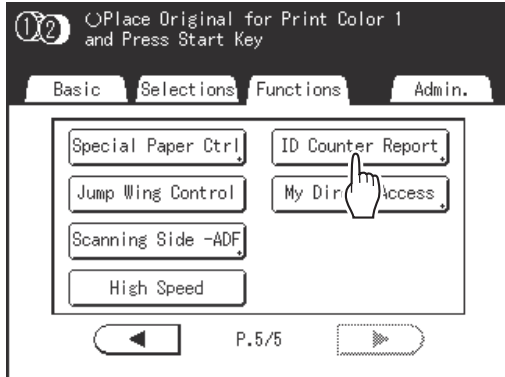


## Important!:

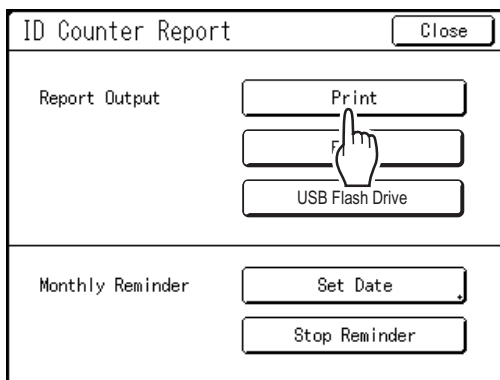
- To manage usage status correctly, the following setting is required. If you do not make the following setting, you cannot count the number of prints/masters correctly.
  - Set **[Management Level]** to **[High/Full Management]** in User Management. [p.130](#)
  - If you print from the computer, be sure to use “ID Print”. See the “RISO Printer Driver User’s Guide” for details.

## Outputting the Counter Report

### 1 Touch [ID Counter Report] on the Functions Screen.



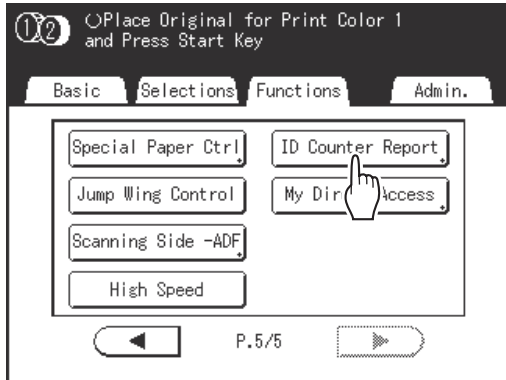
### 2 Touch the button of the desired output method.



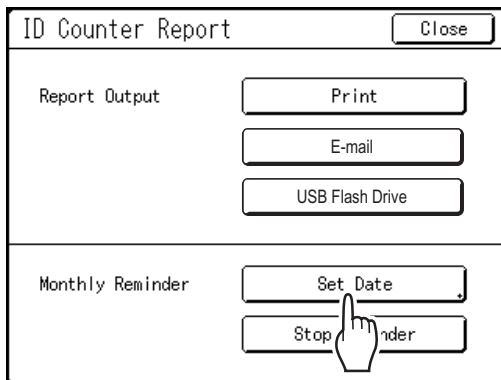
Returns to the Basic Screen after output.  
 If the mail setting is not set, **[E-mail]** is not available.  
 Consult your dealer (or authorized service representative) about mail settings.  
 If the USB Flash Drive is not connected, **[USB Flash Drive]** is grayed out and is not available.

# Setting Up the Monthly Reminder

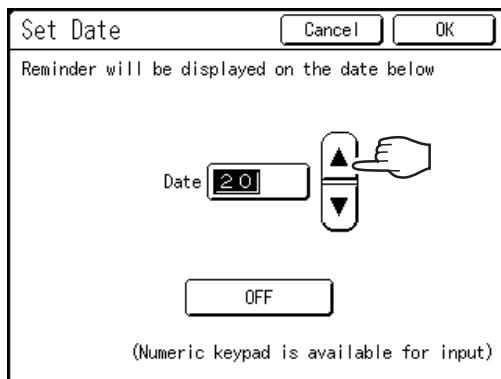
## 1 Touch [ID Counter Report] on the Functions Screen.



## 2 Touch [Set Date].



## 3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to set the reminder date.

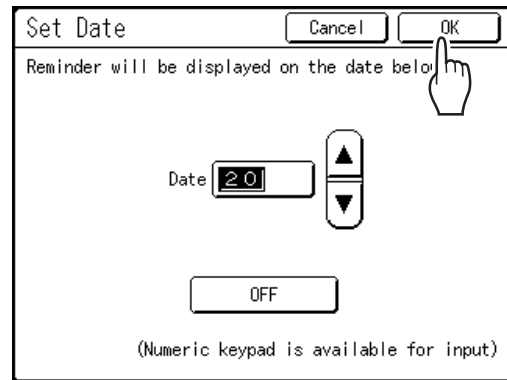


If the [Date] button is grayed out, touch [OFF] and input the date.

### Note:

- Print Quantity Keys can also be used to enter numbers.
- The set date can be selected between 1 and 31.
- When setting the reminder date between the 29th - 31st, and if the number of days in the month is less than this range such as in February, the Reminder Screen is displayed on the last day of the month.
- If you are not setting the reminder date, touch [OFF].

## 4 Touch [OK].



Returns to the ID Counter Report Screen. The reminder date is updated.

## 5 Touch [Close].

Returns to the Functions Screen.

### Note:

- Once the reminder date is set, a "Reminder Screen" is displayed on each reminder date. In fact, this message is displayed each time the machine is turned ON until the counter report is output. If you do not want to output the counter data on the set date of this month, touch [Stop Reminder]. The Reminder Screen is not displayed until the reminder date of the next month.

# Showing Usage Status [Meter Display]

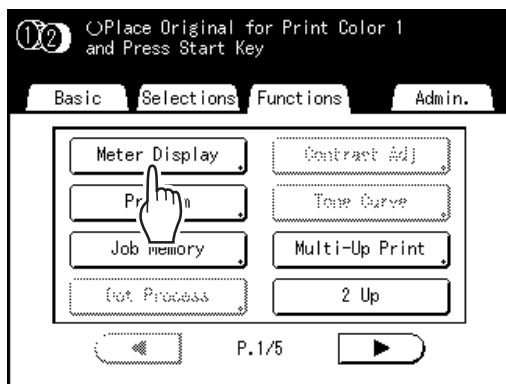
The machine can record and display the following information:

- A4/Letter and Under (Mono-Color/Dual-Color): Total number of A4/Letter-sized and smaller copies that have been printed.
- Above A4/Letter (Mono-Color/Dual-Color): Total number of copies larger than A4/Letter that have been printed.
- Total: The total number of copies printed by the machine.
- Master Count: The total number of masters made by the machine.
- Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 (2) Meter: The total number of copies that have been printed with the currently installed Print Drum (Cylinder).
- Job Count: Start and stop as needed.  
For example, to keep a track of the number of copies made in a day, set "Job Count" to 0 in the morning, and check the counter at the end of the work day to get the count.

## Note:

- When using more than one Print Drum (Cylinder), install the Print Drum (Cylinder) for which you need information before displaying the Meter Display Screen.

## 1 Touch [Meter Display] on the Functions Screen.



## 2 Review counts.

Meter Display		Close
Mono-Color	A4/Letter and Under	0
	Above A4/Letter	0
Dual-Color	A4/Letter and Under	0
	Above A4/Letter	0
Total		0
Master Count		0
Print Drum 1 Meter		0
Print Drum 2 Meter		0
Job Count	<input type="text" value="0"/>	◀C

## Note:

- Using the "Job Count"
  - 1) Touch **◀C** to set the counter to 0.
  - 2) Touch **[Close]** to close the Meter Display Screen. Operate the machine as normal.
  - 3) To display and review the Job Count, follow step 1.

## 3 Touch [Close] to close the window. Returns to the Function Screen.

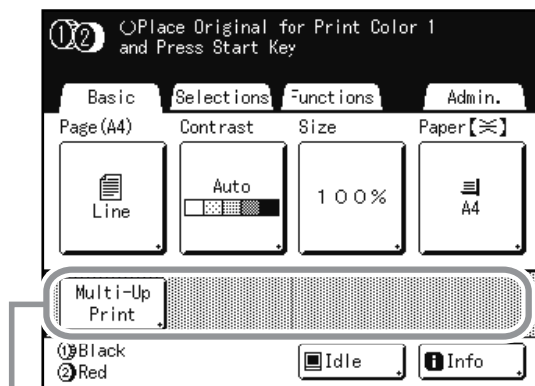
# Customizing the Direct Access Area

## [My Direct Access]

Normally, the functions displayed in the Direct Access Area of the Basic Screen are already registered by the default setting or can be changed by the administrator. However, if the User Management is set up, each user can register the functions displayed in the Direct Access Area using "My Direct Access".

The functions that can be displayed in the Direct Access Area can individually be registered in each mode (Master Making/Print/Scanning).

Up to 4 functions can be registered.



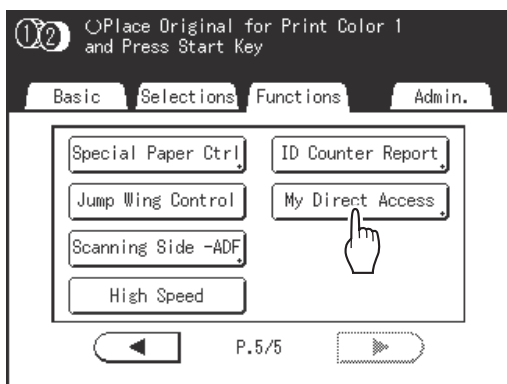
Direct Access Area

"My Direct Access" registered by each user can be displayed after the user has been identified and cannot be changed by other users.

**Note:**

- "My Direct Access" can be set when "Management Level" is set to "High/Full Management" in "User Management".
- If "My Direct Access" is not set, the functions registered via the usual methods are displayed in the Direct Access Area. (p.202)

### 1 Touch [My Direct Access] on the Functions Screen.

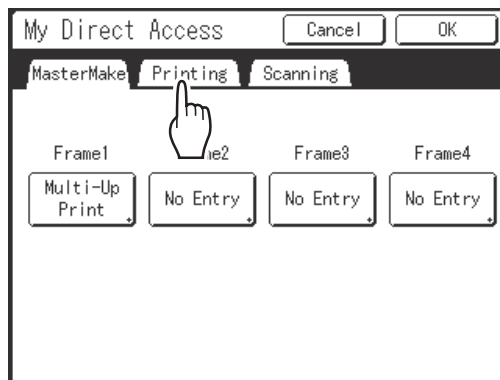


If "Management Level" is not set to "High/Full Management" in "User Management", the **[My Direct Access]** button is grayed out and is not available.

**Note:**

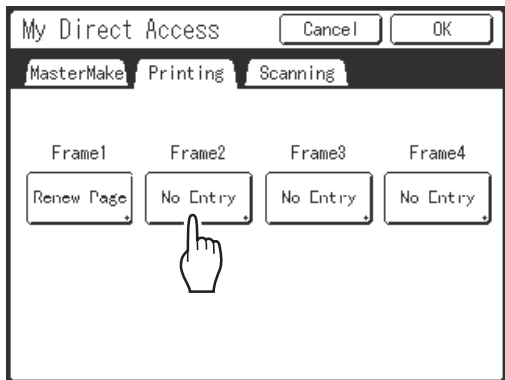
- Consult your administrator for Management Level.

### 2 Select a mode tab to register new buttons.



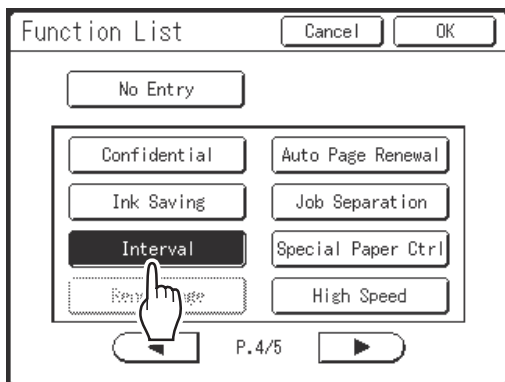


### 3 Select a button to assign a function to.



If the button has a function already assigned to it, the newly selected function will overwrite the previous one.

### 4 Select a function to assign.



#### Note:

- Touch ◀ or ▶ to display more functions, if necessary.
- To remove a function that is accidentally assigned, touch **[No Entry]**.
- Functions already assigned are grayed out and are not available.
- Some functions are displayed only when optional devices are installed.

### 5 Touch [OK].

Returns to “My Direct Access” Screen. The selected functions are added.

To add more functions or to replace a button with another function, repeat steps 3 to 6.

### 6 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Functions Screen.


# Changing Default Settings [Admin.]

You can modify the Default Settings to best suit your needs.  
You can edit them as needed.

## Important!:

- If the administrator is registered in User Management, only the administrator can change the **[Admin.]** settings. (This operation requires input of the administrator's PIN Code or connection of the registered USB Flash Drive.)  
☞ p.136
- Depending on the usage environment, some of the “Admin.” features may not be available (the “Admin.” tab may not be displayed).  
For details, consult your dealer (or authorized service representative).

## Note:




- The default settings are the values restored when the machine is turned ON or when the  key is pressed.






## Configurable Functions

—: Initial settings (factory default)


Display Access Button	Functions	Description
<b>[Display]</b>	DirectAccess Entry Store frequently-used functions on the Basic Screen for each mode.	☞ p.202
	Selections Entry Store frequently-used functions on the Selections Screen for each mode.	☞ p.202
	Display Priority Select first screen to display following the Startup.	Mode Screen/Dual-Color/1 Color/ 2 Color/ Scanning*
	Start-Up Screen Select an animation to display at Start-up.	Logo(RISO)/ <u>Logo(ME)</u> / Character
	Display Adjustment Change the background color, density and brightness of the Touch Screen.	Background:Blue/ <u>White</u> Display Density: -5, -4 ... -1, <u>0</u> , +1 ... +4, +5 Backlight Lightness: -2, -1, <u>0</u> , +1, +2
	Job list display Change the file name display of the stored data in Storage Selection Screen, Job List Screen and USB Job List Screen.	<u>From top</u> , From bottom
	Metric/Inch Switch (For ME9450U only) Change the format for displaying measurements to metric or inches (imperial).	<u>inch</u> /mm

Display Access Button	Functions	Description
[Display]	<p>Displayed Language Select the language displayed on the screen.</p> <p><b>Important!:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contact your dealer (or authorized service representative) to change the settings.</li> </ul>	#01, #02, #03 ...
[Default]	<p>Image Processing Change the default setting for the “image processing mode”.</p>	<u>Line</u> /Photo/Duo (Text and Photo)/Pencil
	<p>Scanning Contrast Change the default settings for the “scanning contrast”.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contrast Range: Lighter/<u>Standard</u>/Darker</li> <li>Contrast: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, <u>Auto</u></li> </ul>
	<p>Easy 2 color Selected function in Easy 2 color is displayed in the Functions Screen.</p>	<u>OFF</u> , Red Color, Hand Writing--1, Hand Writing--2, Specified Area, Separation Sheet, Color editor
	<p>Reproduction Size Change the default setting for the “size”.</p>	<u>100%</u> , Auto
	<p>Print Speed Change the default setting for the “print speed”.</p>	1, 2, <u>3</u> , 4, 5
	<p>Print Density Change the default settings for the “print density”.</p>	Print Drum (Cylinder) 1: 1, 2, <u>3</u> , 4, 5 Print Drum (Cylinder) 2: 1, 2, <u>3</u> , 4, 5 Print Density Level: Lighter/ <u>Standard</u> /Darker
	<p>Scanning Side -ADF* If the machine is equipped with the optional Auto Document Feeder DX-1, select the default scanning side for simplex original using “Scanning Side -ADF”. ☞ p.180</p>	<u>Front Side -&gt; Simplex</u> , Back Side -> Simplex
	<p>OP Auto Process* Change the default setting for the “Auto Process” when an optional ADF unit is installed.</p>	<u>ON</u> , OFF
	<p>ADF Semi-Auto* Change the default setting for the “ADF Semi-Auto” when the optional ADF unit is installed.</p>	ON, <u>OFF</u>
	<p>Auto Process Mode Change the default setting for the “Auto Process”.</p>	ON, <u>OFF</u>
	<p>Double Feed Check Change the default setting for the “Double Feed Check”.</p>	<u>ON</u> , OFF
<p>Job Separation* Change the default setting for the “Job Separation” when the optional Job Separator is installed.</p>	ON, <u>OFF</u>	

Display Access Button	Functions	Description
[Default]	Jump Wing Control Change the default positioning of the Paper Jumping Wing.  <b>Important!:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This option is available only when the special paper setting is pre-configured. Contact your dealer (or authorized service representative) to pre-configure this setting.</li> </ul>	ON, <u>OFF</u>
	Paper Ejection Adj Change the default settings for “Air Blow” and “Separation Fan”.	Air Blow 1: <u>OFF</u> , <u>ON</u> Air Blow 2: <u>OFF</u> , <u>ON</u> Separation Fan 1: <u>OFF</u> , 1, 2, <u>3</u> , 4 Separation Fan 2: <u>OFF</u> , 1, 2, <u>3</u> , <u>4</u> Separation F+ 2: <u>OFF</u> , 1, 2, <u>3</u> , <u>4</u>
	Default Folder* When the optional Document Storage Card is attached, change the folder to which the data scanned in the scan mode to be saved and the folder to save the data sent from the computer.	Scan Data Folder: 1 to 6 folders PC Job Folder: 1 to 6 folders
[System]	Custom Paper Entry Specify paper dimensions before using non-standard sized paper.	p.204
	Irregular Fitter Specifies to scan custom-size originals as standard-sized.	ME9450U: <u>OFF</u> , Ledger, Legal, Letter, LetterR, Statement ME9350/6350: <u>OFF</u> , A3, B4, A4, A4R, B5, B5R, Foolscap
	Folder Renaming* When the optional Document Storage Card is attached, changes the name of the folder used to save data.	6 folders
	Stamp Data* When the optional Document Storage Card is attached, registers the stored data as a “Stamp”.	p.225
	CI Select Choose between “Internal CI” and “External CI” settings. If the machine is equipped with the optional IS300, select “External CI”.	<u>Internal CI</u> , External CI
	External CI Info * If the machine is equipped with the optional IS300, set the IP address to connect the machine to the network. IP address settings differ depending on the type of network.  <b>Note:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change an input source, touch the applicable box, or press the  key to rotate options.</li> <li>If the message “Network Communication is Not Possible” is displayed when touching <b>[External CI Info]</b>, touch <b>[Cancel]</b> and wait for the IS300 to finish starting up, and then try again.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using a DHCP server <b>[Use DHCP]</b></li> <li>When entering IP address manually <b>[Manual Input]</b>    or the Print Quantity keys.</li> </ul>

Display Access Button	Functions	Description
<b>[System]</b>	<p>Base IP Address*</p> <p>Set the IP address for connecting the machine to a network. IP address settings differ depending on the type of network.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To change an input source, touch the applicable box, or press the  key to rotate options.</li> <li>If the message "Starting Up Network Card" is displayed when touching <b>[Base IP Address]</b>, touch <b>[Cancel]</b> and wait for the RISO Network Card to finish starting up (approx. 1 minute), and then try again.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using a DHCP server <b>[Use DHCP]</b></li> <li>When entering IP address manually <b>[Manual Input]</b>   or the Print Quantity Keys.</li> </ul>
	<p>Margin-Plus Rate</p> <p>Specify default size-reduction rate for the "Margin+" setting.</p>	90 to 99 % (Factory default is 94%)
	<p>Auto 90°Rotation</p> <p>When setting an original of the same size but with a different orientation from that of the paper loaded in the Feed Trays (Standard Feed Tray, Feed Tray 1 or Feed Tray 2), on the Glass Platen or the optional ADF unit, the 90-degree rotation setting can be used to align original and output documents.</p>	<b>ON</b> , OFF
	<p>Clock/Calendar</p> <p>Set the internal clock of the machine. The time/date displays on the  Info Screen.  p.240</p>	Year/Month/Day Hour:Minute
	<p>Multi-Up Interval</p> <p>Select the interval time (seconds) between first and second scans when using Multi-Up Printing.</p>	<b>15s</b> , 30s
	<p>Scanning Interval</p> <p>When Dual-Color printing, sets the time interval to wait for placing the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.</p>	5mn, <b>Limitless</b>
	<p>Reserve Period</p> <p>Selects a duration of time (seconds) for an inactive machine to receive data from a computer, but restricts processing any output command.</p>	OFF/ <b>15s</b> /30s/60s
	<p>Ex. Reserve Period</p> <p>When "Reserve Period" is set, extends the Reserve Period (minutes) to prevent data interruption.</p>	<b>5mn</b> /10mn/30mn
	<p>Auto Clear</p> <p>Select whether to reset all settings to default automatically when the machine is inactive for a set period (minutes). The "Renew Page" function cannot be used after executing "Auto Clear". If you use "Renew Page" frequently, we recommend setting this to "OFF".</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto Clear OFF/<b>ON</b></li> <li>Waiting Time 1-60 mn (factory default is 5 mn)</li> </ul>

Display Access Button	Functions	Description
<b>[System]</b>	<p>Energy Saving Mode Select to activate Sleep Mode or Shutdown Power when the machine is inactive for a set period of time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• OFF “Energy Saving Mode” is not activated. Power is turned ON/OFF using the power switch.</li> <li>• Auto Sleep The machine is standing by to receive data from the computer, but the rest of its functions are powered off.</li> <li>• Auto Power-OFF Automatically shuts the power off. (Data cannot be received.)</li> </ul> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When “Protect” is set to ON, the Energy Saving Mode cannot be set to “OFF”. The waiting time for “Auto Sleep” and “Auto Power-OFF” is fixed at one minute and cannot be changed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Energy Saving Mode <b>OFF/<u>Auto Sleep</u>/Auto Power-OFF</b></li> <li>• Waiting Time 1-99 mn (factory default is 5 mn)</li> </ul>
	<p>Power-OFF Schedule Set a time of the day to automatically turn off the power to the machine. If the machine is in use, or receiving data, power will not shut off.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Power-OFF Schedule <b><u>OFF</u>/ON</b></li> <li>• Power-Off time Hour: Minute</li> </ul>
	<p>User Management Set the User Management function.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Management Level Set the “Management Level”.</li> <li>• Create User Register the administrator and users of this machine.</li> <li>• Rename Group Change the group name.</li> <li>• Reset Counter Reset all user counters for master-making/printing.</li> <li>• Recognized by Set the Recognition and Identification System.</li> </ul>	<p>☞ p.130</p>
	<p>Protect Determine the “Protect” setting. ☞ p.208</p>	<p><b><u>OFF</u>/ON</b></p>
	<p>Auto Idling Select whether to perform “Auto Idling” when making a master after a set period of non-use. Also selects a period of non-use before initiating “Auto Idling”, as well as the number of idle rotations.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto Idling <b>OFF/<u>ON</u></b></li> <li>• Non-Use Time <b>1-<u>12 hour</u></b></li> <li>• Rotation <b><u>1</u>-3 (times)</b></li> </ul>

Display Access Button	Functions	Description
<b>[System]</b>	<p>Auto Page Renewal Allows you to set when to recreate a new master. Once the specified number of copies is reached, the master in use is automatically discarded and a new one is created. You can also specify the number of proof copies to make after recreating the master.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Auto Page Renewal <b><u>OFF</u></b>, ON</li> <li>Auto Renewal Point 1-9999 copies (Factory default is 1000 copies)</li> <li>Sample Copy Output 0-99 copies (Factory default is 3 copies)</li> </ul>
	<p>Minimum Print Q'ty Set minimum number of copies to print. This prevents creation of master when a smaller quantity is entered for printing.</p> <p><b>Important!:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This setting can be locked to prevent alteration. Consult your dealer (or authorized service representative) for details.</li> </ul>	<b><u>OFF</u></b> /ON (2-99 copies)
	<p>Stock Management In order to check current stock quantity, insert the number of consumables purchased. When stock quantity falls below the "Remaining Qty to be notified", a message will appear on the display.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To switch an entry, directly touch the button or press the  key.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Purchase Qty <b><u>0</u></b>-99 Pcs.</li> <li>Remaining Qty to be notified <b><u>0</u></b>-99 Pcs.</li> </ul>
	<p>Beep Sound Select whether to activate a beep sound when a key/button is pressed, or when an error occurs.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ON Beeps when any key/button is pressed. Beeps when an event occurs/is completed.</li> <li>Limited Does not beep when keys/buttons are pressed. Does not beep when restarting the machine.</li> <li>OFF Does not beep.</li> </ul>	OFF/Limited/ <b><u>ON</u></b>
<b>[Editor]</b>	Print Colors	See the RISO Editor User's Guide for details.
	Tool Bar Position	
	Sub Tool Bar	
	Page Orientation	

\* This function can be set only when the option is installed.

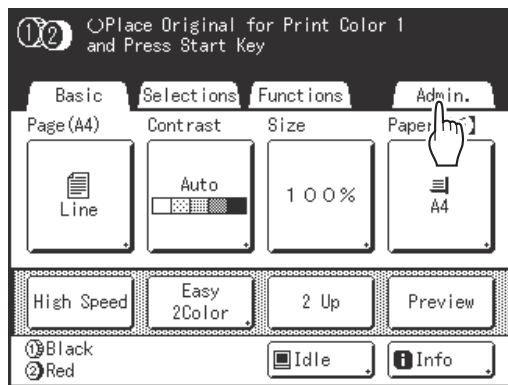
# Customizing Default Settings

The default settings can be changed when the machine is not in operation. Make sure there is no pending or current Print Job operation.

**Note:**

- If the administrator is registered in User Management, only the administrator can change the [Admin.] settings. (This operation requires input of the administrator's PIN Code or connection of the registered USB Flash Drive.) p.136
- On the Admin. Screen, the current setting is displayed on the right side of each button.

## 1 Touch [Admin.] on the Basic Screen for each mode.



## 2 Touch [OK].

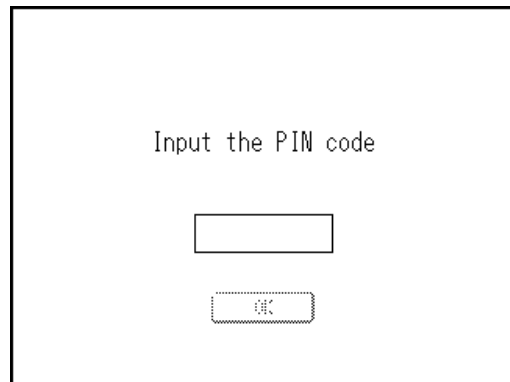


**Note:**

- When an administrator is registered in User Management, the Recognition Screen is displayed. Operate the screen to log in as the administrator. If already identified as the administrator, the Recognition Screen will not be displayed. Users other than administrator are prohibited.

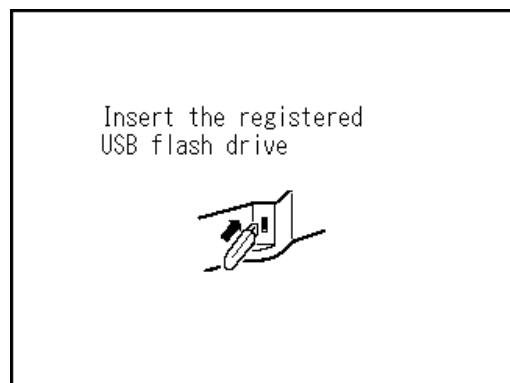
### ◆ When “Recognized by” is set to “PIN Code”

Input the administrator’s PIN Code using the Print Quantity Keys and touch [OK].

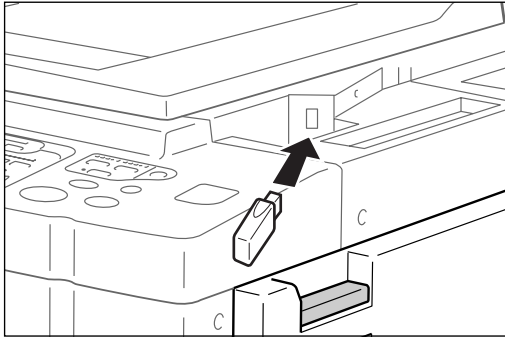


### ◆ When “Recognized by” is set to “USB Flash Drive”

Connect the administrator’s registered USB Flash Drive to the USB slot.

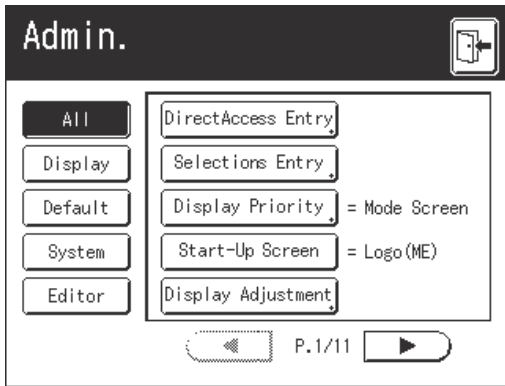






The Admin. Screen is displayed once access has been identified.

### 3 Select a function to modify.



#### Display Access Buttons

Display Access Buttons allow the quick selection of desired functions by displaying only relevant groups of function buttons.

**[All]**: All Functions

**[Display]**: Functions related to Screen Display

**[Default]**: Basic Operational Functions

**[System]**: Functions affecting the entire System

**[Editor]**: Functions related to Editor

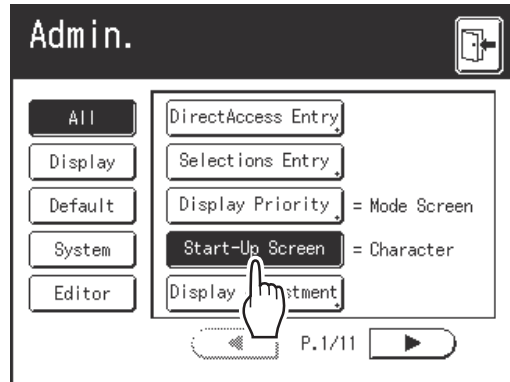
### 4 Change settings.

Some functions have their own Setup Screens, some don't. There are several styles for setting values. Following samples demonstrate different value setting styles.

#### ◆ No additional Setup Screen

(2 or more options to choose from)

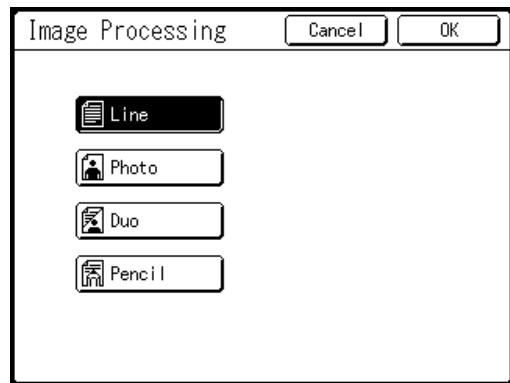
Touch the function name button to change the value displayed to the right.



#### ◆ Additional Setup Screen Available

**Button Style**

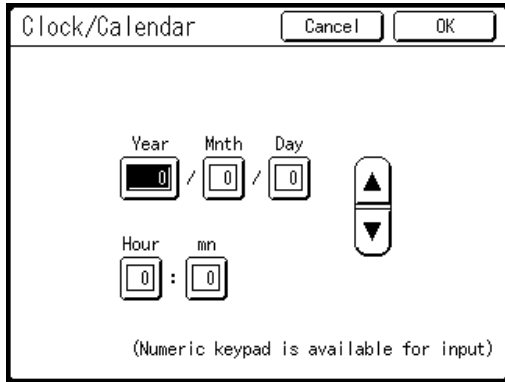
Choosing a button makes it default.



◆ **Additional Setup Screen Available**

**Numeric Value Style**

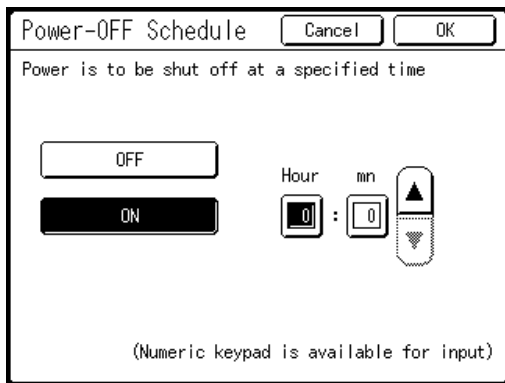
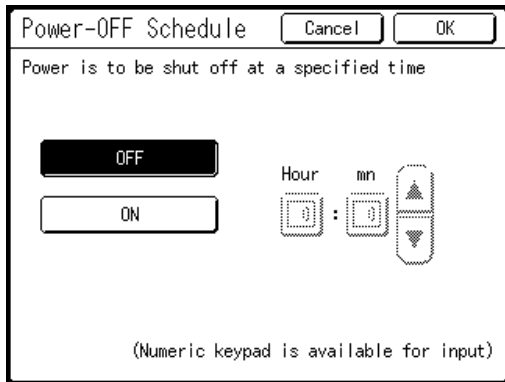
Touch ▲ ▼ to increase/decrease value.  
Numbers may be entered using the Print Quantity Keys.



◆ **Additional Setup Screen Available**

**Multi Level Entry Style**

Select a button, then set its values either by touching more buttons or entering a value numerically.

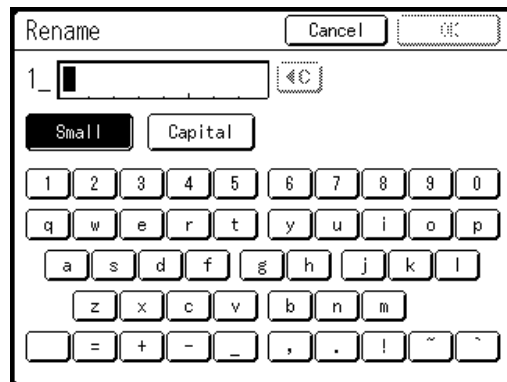
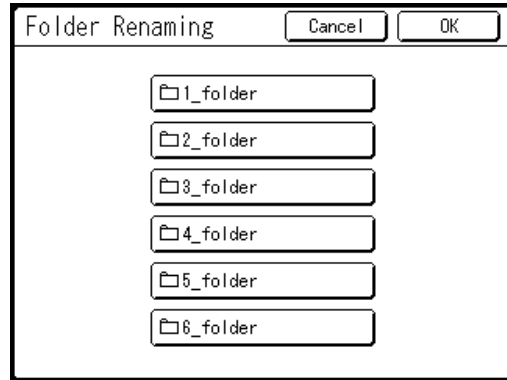


Touch **[ON]** to display more options on the right.

◆ **Additional Setup Screen Available**

**Text Input Type**

Input the name after touching the button of whose name to be changed.  
Touch the button and the Rename Screen appears.



Touch the character buttons to enter text.  
Change capitalization by selecting **[Small]** or **[Capital]** button.

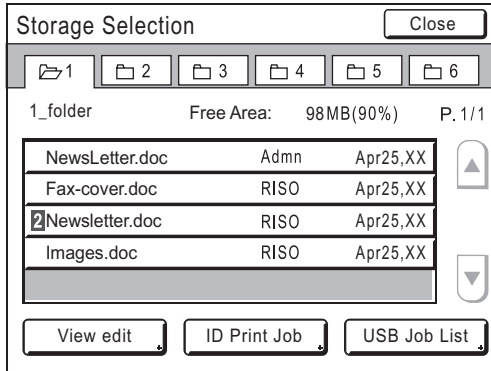
☞ p.157

### ◆ Additional Setup Screen Available

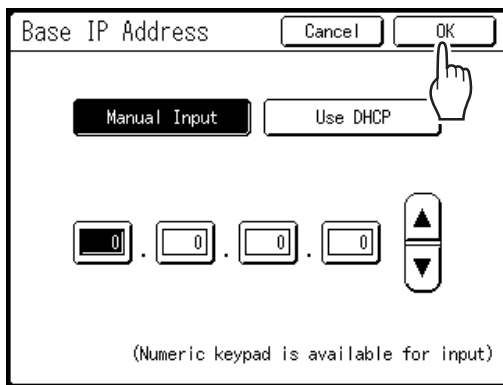
#### Data Specification Type

A screen to specify the stored data is displayed.

See [p.220](#) for details on specifying the data.



## 5 Touch [OK].



Skip to step 6 if there is no additional Setup Screen.

#### Note:

- Touch **[Cancel]** to cancel the changes and return to the Admin. Screen.
- The selected value is displayed to the right side of the button (for most functions).

## 6 Touch .

Returns to the original Basic Screen.

# Setting Up Direct Access Area and Selections Tab

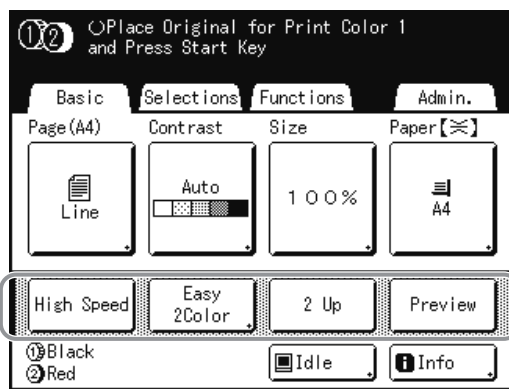
## [DirectAccess Entry] [Selections Entry]

Frequently-accessed functions for each mode can be placed on “Direct Access” area in the Basic Screen, or on “Selections” Screen.

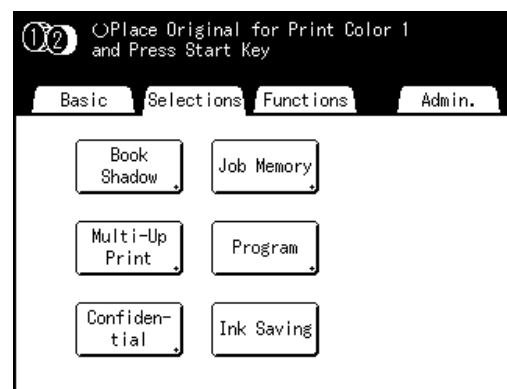
This allows quick changes and direct access to each function's Setup Screens, eliminating the need to search from a long list of functions.

Each mode (Master Making/Print/Scanning) is capable of storing its own unique settings.

Basic Screen	Master Make	Print	Scanning
Direct Access	4	4	4
Selections	9	9	-



Direct Access Area



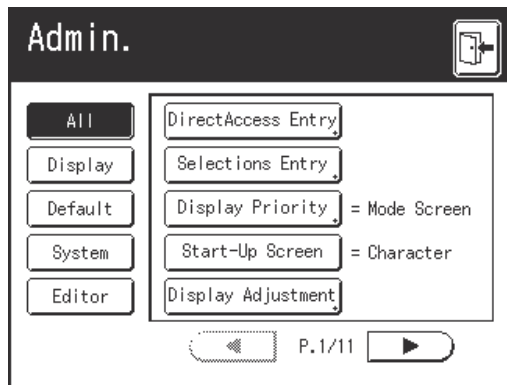
Selections Screen

**Note:**

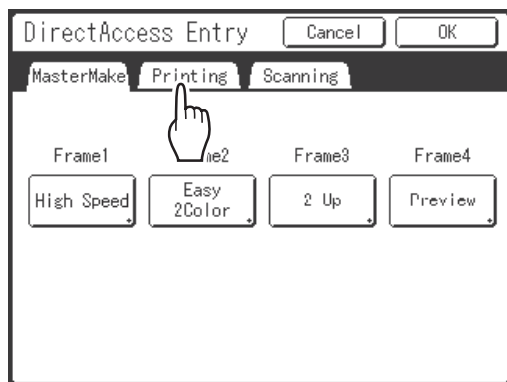
- Choose functions that are relevant to each mode.
- The machine comes with factory default “Direct Access” area and “Selections” Screen entries, which can be changed.
- Any function available in the “Functions” Screen can be selected.
- Optional attachment is automatically added to the “Direct Access” area and “Selections” tab if a space is available for another button.
- When the Management Level is set to “High/Full Management”, each user can set the functions displayed in the Direct Access Area (My Direct Access). [p.190](#)

In the following steps, the registration on DirectAccess Entry and Selections Entry are explained at the same time.

## 1 Touch [DirectAccess Entry] or [Selections Entry] on the Admin. Screen.



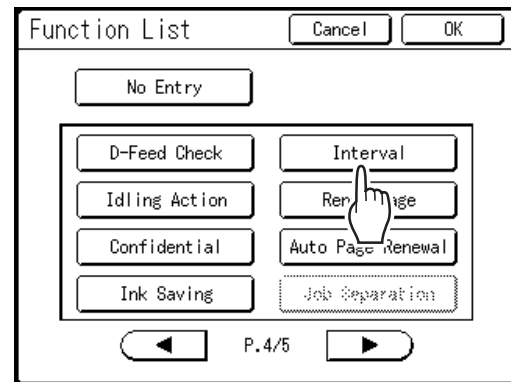
## 2 Select a mode tab to store new buttons.



## 3 Select a button to assign a function.

If the button has a function already assigned to it, the newly selected function will overwrite the previous function.

## 4 Select a function to assign.



### Note:

- Touch ◀ or ▶ to display more functions, if necessary.
- To remove a function that is accidentally assigned, touch [No Entry].
- Functions already assigned are grayed out and are not available.
- Some functions display only when optional devices are installed.

## 5 Touch [OK].

Returns to DirectAccess Entry Screen or Selections Entry Screen. The selected functions are added.

To add more functions, or to replace a button with another function, repeat steps 3 to 5.

## 6 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Admin. Screen. "Direct Access" area or "Selections" Screen is updated.

## 7 Touch .

Returns to the Master Making Basic Screen or Print Basic Screen.

# Registering a Custom Paper Size

## [Custom Paper Entry]

Non-standard paper sizes must be pre-entered into memory. Once a paper size is stored into memory, it can be retrieved with the **[Paper]** button from the Master Making Basic Screen.

Up to 30 different sizes may be entered. Previously stored sizes can be modified or deleted.

You can register paper sizes between 100 mm × 148 mm (3<sup>15</sup>/<sub>16</sub>" × 5<sup>13</sup>/<sub>16</sub>" ) to 340 mm × 555 mm (13<sup>19</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" × 21<sup>27</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" ). However, any paper longer than 436 mm (17<sup>5</sup>/<sub>32</sub>" ) prints in extended paper mode.

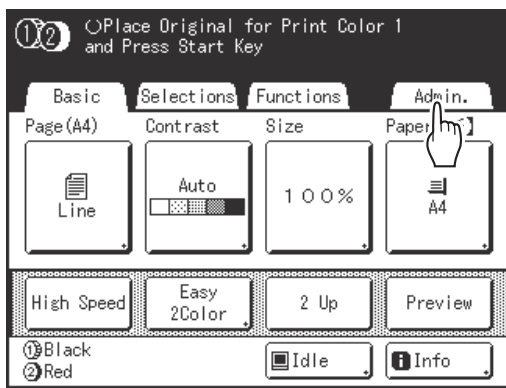
☞ p.205

### Important!:

- Custom paper sizes must be entered. Failure to do so may result in incorrect scanning.

## Entering sizes and changing names

- 1 Touch **[Admin.]** on the Basic Screen for each mode.



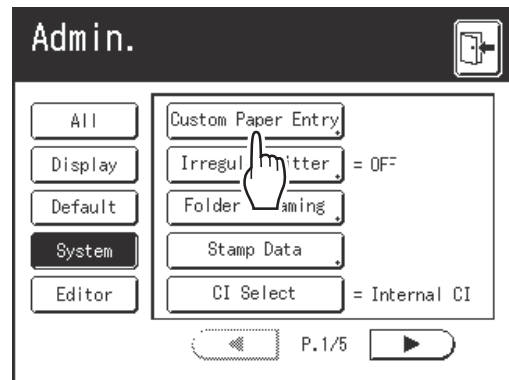
- 2 Touch **[OK]**.



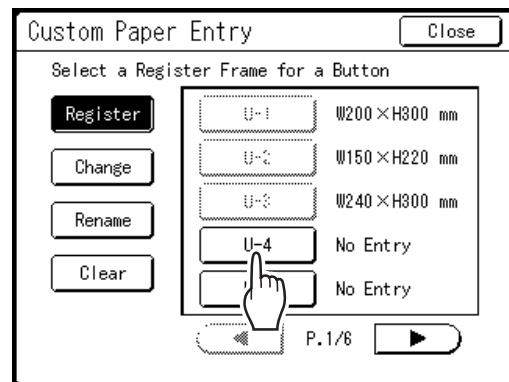
If the Recognition Screen is displayed, follow the message on the screen. See step 2 in "Customizing Default Settings". (☞ p.198)

- 3 Touch **[System]** or **[▶]** to display **[Custom Paper Entry]** on the screen.

- 4 Touch **[Custom Paper Entry]**.

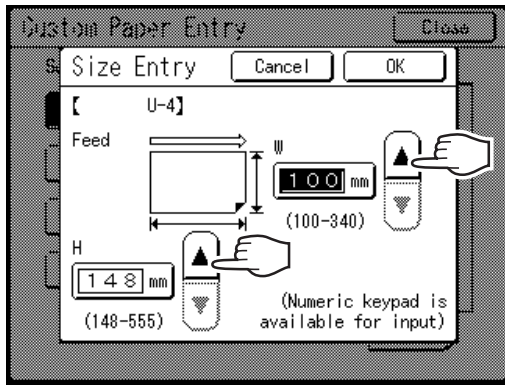


- 5 Touch an unused button.



Unused buttons are displayed with a solid line. Used buttons are grayed out and are not available.

## 6 Enter the paper size.



Facing the paper feeding direction (into Paper Feed Tray), enter W (width) and H (height). Touch either , or use Print Quantity Keys.

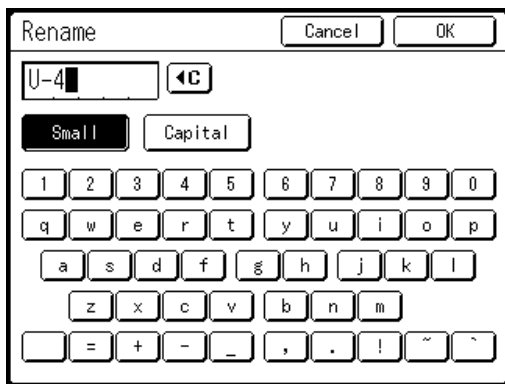
## 7 Touch [OK].

Rename as necessary.  
Touch **[Close]** to skip renaming the size.

## 8 Touch [Rename].

## 9 Select a button to rename.

## 10 Touch character buttons to enter a new name.



Change capitalization by selecting **[Small]** or **[Capital]** button.

[p.157](#)

### Note:

- To clear the current name, touch button or press the key.

## 11 Touch [OK] when done.

### Note:

- To change a name, repeat from step 8.

## 12 Confirm the name and touch [Close].

Returns to the Admin. Screen. Paper size is updated.

### Tip:

#### Printing on Extended Paper

The machine can print on paper 436 mm-555 mm ( $17\frac{5}{32}$ "- $21\frac{27}{32}$ " ) long (top to bottom facing the paper feeding direction) by storing the size as a custom-size.

When entering a size longer than 436 mm ( $17\frac{5}{32}$ " ) (top to bottom facing the paper feed direction) on the Custom Paper Entry Screen, the paper will be treated as "Extended Paper".

When "Extended Paper" is selected on the Custom Paper Entry Screen, the machine switches into "Extended Paper" mode.

### Important!:

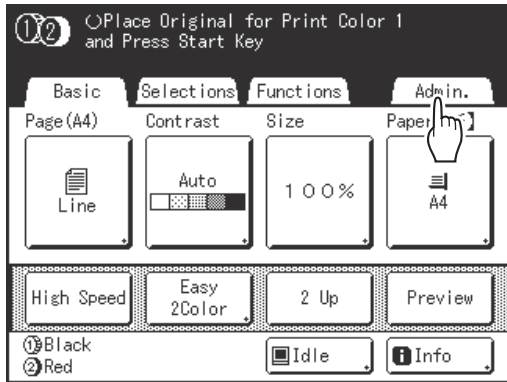
- Some Extended Paper may fail to pass through the machine due to its paper characteristics, or may get smudged with Ink due to its image positioning. Consult your dealer (or authorized service representative) for advice.

### "Extended Paper" Mode

- When the machine is on "Extended Paper" mode, it is indicated in the message area as either Ready to Make Master "Ext.Paper" or Ready to Print "Ext.Paper".
- On "Extended Paper" mode, the machine can print papers measuring 436 mm-555 mm ( $17\frac{5}{32}$ "- $21\frac{27}{32}$ " ) lengthwise from top to bottom facing the paper feed direction. However, maximum printing area and top/bottom Print Positioning range remains as usual.
  - [p.19](#)
  - [p.117](#)
- Print timing and speed is different on "Extended Paper" mode in comparison to normal printing. This is to be expected, so do not be alarmed.
- Contact your dealer (or authorized service representative) for suggestions about placing paper on the Paper Feed Tray and the Paper Receiving Trays when on "Extended Paper" mode.

## Deleting a Custom Paper Size

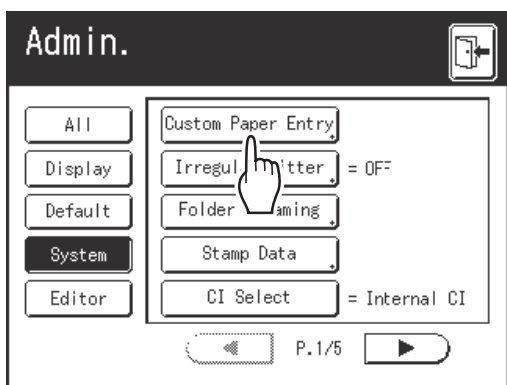
- 1 Touch **[Admin.]** on the Basic Screen for each mode.



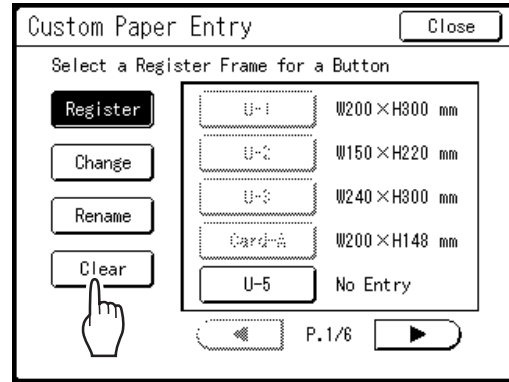
- 2 Touch **[OK]**.



- 3 Touch **[Custom Paper Entry]** on the Admin. Screen.

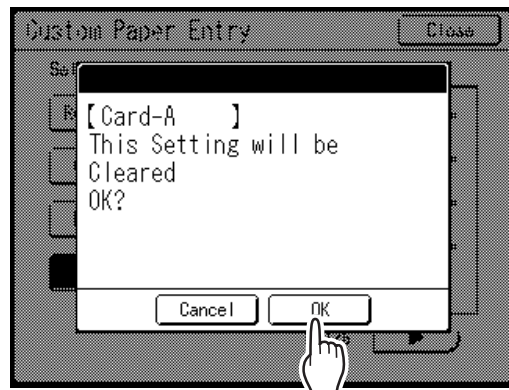


- 4 Touch **[Clear]**.



- 5 Select the paper size to delete.

- 6 Touch **[OK]**.



Returns to the Custom Paper Entry Screen. The selected paper size is cleared.

- 7 Touch **[Close]**.

Returns to the Admin. Screen. Paper size is updated.



# Keeping Masters Secure After Printing

## [Protect]

After printing is completed, the master remains on the Print Drum (Cylinder). To protect confidential documents from unauthorized duplication, use the Confidential feature to discard the master after printing. (i.e. “Confidential” function) Used masters are held in the Master Disposal Box. The machine is equipped with a protection function to prevent the master from being removed from the Master Disposal Box and leaked by any ill-intended third party.

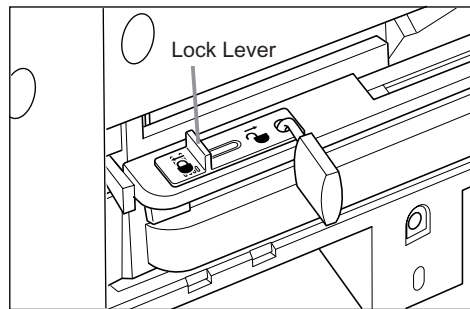
### “Protect” Setting

When the “Protect” setting is ON:

- When printing is complete, the “Confidential” function is activated to show the message to discard the master remaining on the Print Drum (Cylinder).
- The Master Disposal Box is locked and cannot be removed while the machine is in standby. (However, the Master Disposal Box can be unlocked and removed if the master jams in the Disposal Unit or if the Master Disposal Box becomes full.)

### Locking the Master Disposal Box

To prevent any leak of master documents after printing, the Master Disposal Box can be locked with a padlock so that no-one apart from the administrator of the machine can remove it. (Purchase an ordinary padlock whose loop will fit through the hole, which is 7 mm (<sup>9</sup>/<sub>32</sub>”) wide.) Locking the Master Disposal Box is possible only when the Lock Lever is installed.



### Status of Protect functions and restrictions

Status of [Protect] functions	Restrictions
Protect: OFF Padlock: No	No restrictions on printer access <sup>*1</sup>
Protect: ON Padlock: No	“Confidential” message is displayed Master Disposal Box is locked <sup>*2</sup>
Protect: OFF Padlock: Locked	No “Confidential” message is displayed Nobody but the administrator can dispose of the master.
Protect: ON Padlock: Locked	“Confidential” message is displayed Nobody but the administrator can dispose of the master.

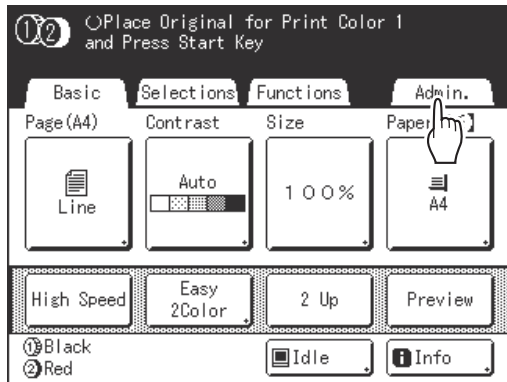
\*1 The ordinary “Confidential” function is available.

\*2 The lock is released if a master jams in the Disposal Unit or if the Master Disposal Box becomes full.

# Preventing Leaks of Masters After Creation or Disposal

## Turning the Protect Setting ON

**1 Touch [Admin.] on the Basic Screen for each mode.**

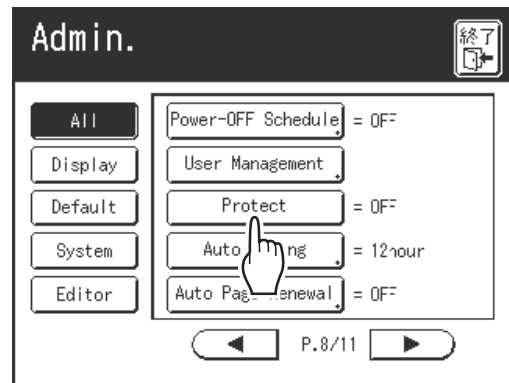


**2 Touch [OK].**



If the Recognition Screen is displayed, follow the message on the screen. See step 2 in "Customizing Default Settings". (p.198)

**3 Touch [Protect].**



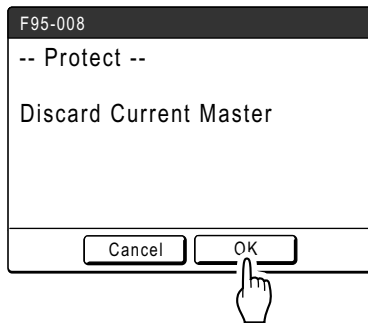
"Protect" is turned ON.

**Note:**

- When "Protect" is set to "ON", "Energy Saving Mode" (Auto Sleep or Auto Power-OFF) is automatically set to ON and the waiting time is set to one minute. (The set time cannot be changed.)
- If "Protect" is ON, **[Renew Page]** is grayed out and not available.

## If “Protect” is ON:

The following screen is displayed after printing.





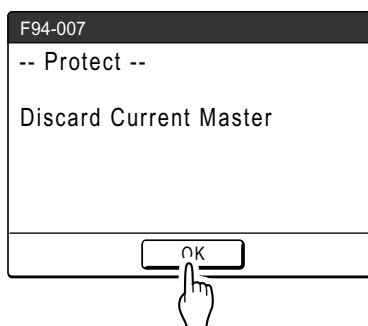
Touch **[OK]** or **[Cancel]**.

**[OK]:** Discards the master remaining on the Print Drum (Cylinder).

**[Cancel]:** Choose this when you do not wish to discard the master or wish to print further copies.

### Note:

- The “-- Protect -- Discard Current Master” message is also displayed when printing from computer data on a PC.
- If you select **[Cancel]** while the “Protect” setting is active, the “-- Protect -- Discard Current Master” message is on appears each time you press  key or  key.
- The screen shows the message below when:
  - setting the Print Drum (Cylinder) that has been removed without the “Confidential” operation, or
  - the machine goes into the sleep mode after a certain period of time has passed after the confirmation message was displayed, and then the sleep mode is canceled (or the power is turned ON).

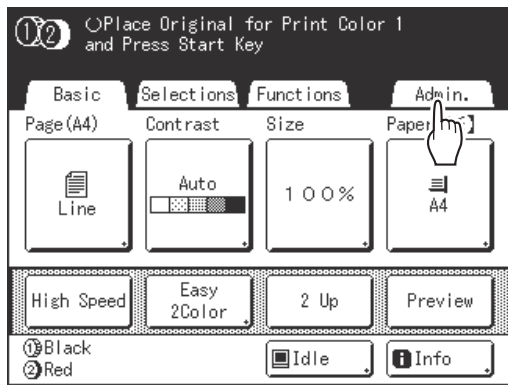


Touch **[OK]** to discard the master remaining on the Print Drum (Cylinder).

## Cancel the “Protect” setting:

Only the administrator can cancel the “Protect” setting.

- 1 Touch [Admin.] on the Basic Screen for each mode.

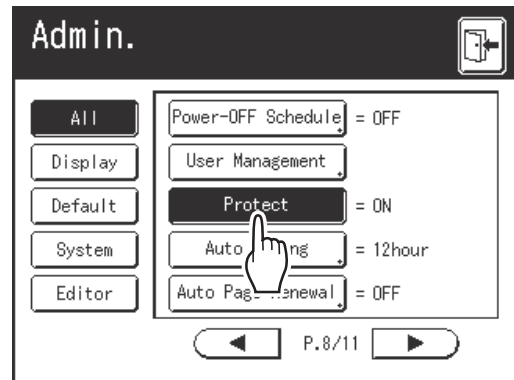


- 2 Touch [OK].



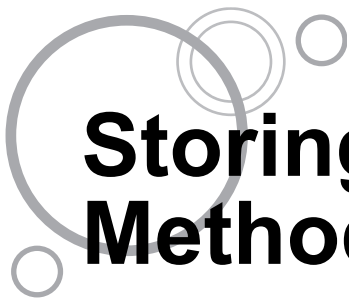
If the Recognition Screen is displayed, follow the message on the screen. See step 2 in “Customizing Default Settings”. (p.198)

- 3 Touch [Protect].



After a “Please Wait a Moment” message is displayed, the “Protect” setting is canceled.





# Storing Original Data and Use Method

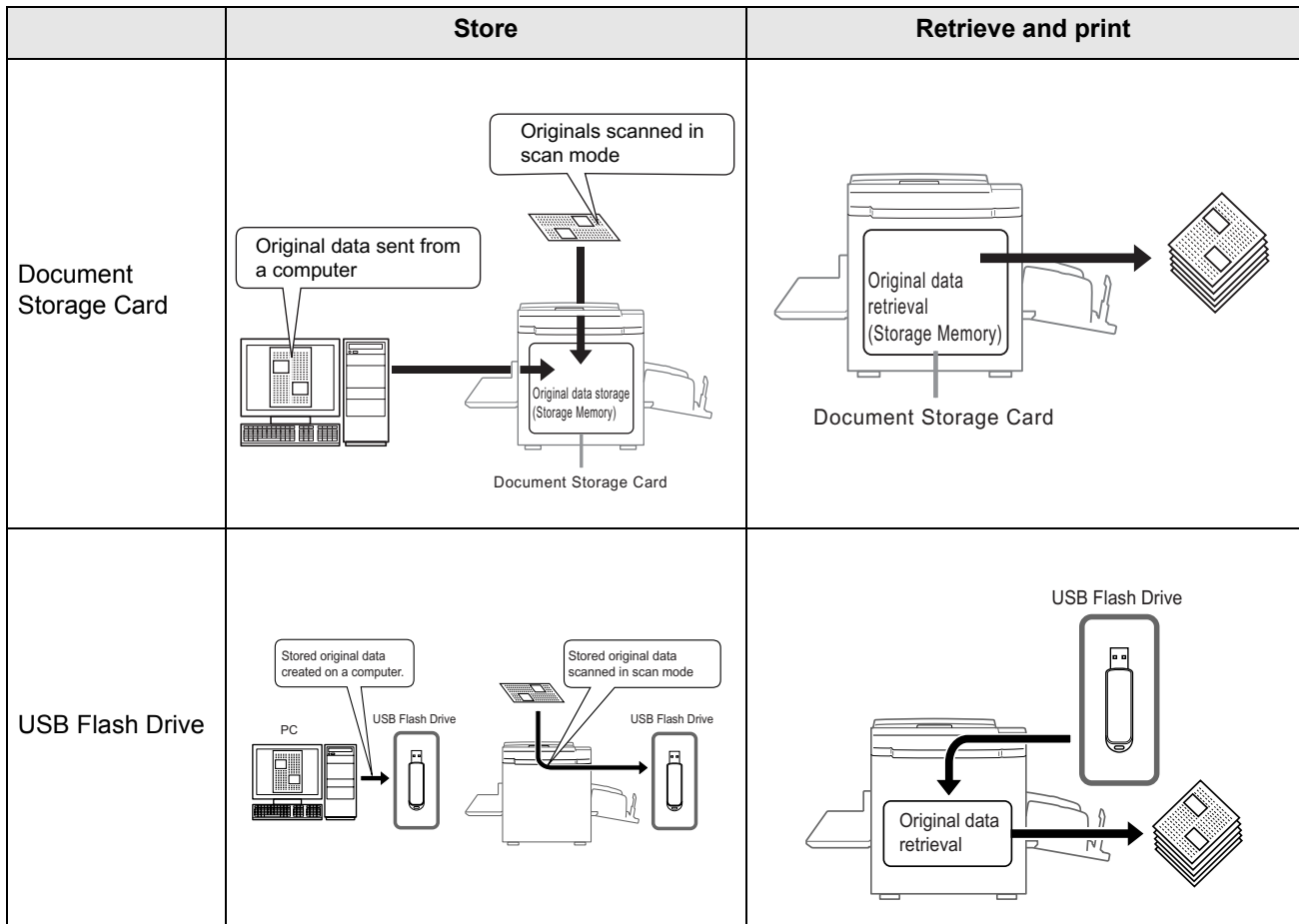
The machine can store original data. To use this function, the optional Document Storage Card or USB Flash Drive is required.

Stored original data can be repeatedly retrieved for printing.

There are two methods of storing original data: "Storage Memory" and "USB Flash Drive". "Storage Memory" allows you to store original data on the internal optional Document Storage Card of the printing machine. "USB Flash Drive" allows you to store original data in a USB Flash Drive. Both methods can store original data as follows.

- Storing data from a hard-copy original by using the scanner of the machine.
- Storing original data created on a computer.

The methods of storing data from a hard-copy original and printing the stored original data are explained here. Details on how to store the data created on a computer, see the "RISO Printer Driver User's Guide" (CD-ROM).



- The following operations are available with data stored in “Storage Memory” or “USB Flash Drive”.
  - Stored original data can be repeatedly retrieved for printing.
  - If the storage data contains multiple pages, you can choose to output only odd or even pages, or indicate the specific pages to print using “Output”.  
☞ p.223
  - The storage data also can be overlaid onto a hard-copy original and printed.  
☞ p.220
- All users of this machine can use the 6 folders in “Storage Memory”. It is convenient to store and use the data in common with others.
- 6 folders are created in each “USB Flash Drive”. Use the folders as needed, when selecting a folder for storing any specified data.

**Important!:**

- We cannot guarantee storage data or USB Flash Drive data against losses occurred by accidents or unforeseen events. We recommend that you use your computer to make back-up copies of any important documents.

**Note:**

- You can easily delete unnecessarily stored data when the remaining free space of the optional Document Storage Card or USB Flash Drive is limited. The free space is displayed in the Storage Selection Screen or USB Job List Screen.  
☞ p.223
- As to the folder for storing original data, 6 folders are prepared for the optional Document Storage Card and 6 folders are prepared for each memory in the case of USB Flash Drives. When you use folders to share data, you are recommended to devise folder rules (e.g. dividing the folders by department or type of data)
- Folder names of the optional Document Storage Card can be changed on the Admin. Screen.  
☞ p.194
- To change folder names of the USB Flash Drives, use the “RISO Utility Software” (RISO USB PRINT MANAGER) included in the provided software CD-ROM. (If you change folder names by Explorer, they will not be recognized by the machine) For details, see the “RISO Utility Software User's Guide” (CD-ROM).
- You can change the order of the storage data and USB Flash Drive data.  
☞ p.222

# Converting Hard-copies into Stored Data (Scan Mode)

Scan mode is a function that allows you to scan a hard-copy original with the machine's scanner to save as storage data or USB Flash Drive data.

You can repeatedly retrieve and print previously scanned and stored original data. This saves you the trouble of re-scanning the documents when repeatedly printing the same materials.

☞ p.220

This function also prevents documents from getting lost or damaged over time.

## Important!:

- The storage function is not available in the machine equipped with the optional RISO IS300 controller. The data scanned in the Scan Mode is stored in IS300.

## Note:

- Delete unnecessary stored data when the remaining free space of the optional Document Storage Card or USB Flash Drive is limited. The remaining free space is displayed on the **[Storage Selection]** Screen or **[USB Job List]** Screen.

☞ p.223

The following functions can be used in scan mode: See the explanation of each function for more details.

- Image (☞ p.64)
- Contrast (☞ p.66)
- Size (☞ p.67)
- Dot Process (☞ p.73)
- Contrast Adj (☞ p.74)
- Tone Curve (☞ p.75)
- 2 Up/Multi-Up Print (☞ p.77)
- Layout (☞ p.88)
- Book Shadow (☞ p.92)
- Preview (☞ p.109)

The following function is specific to scan mode.

- Format (☞ p.219)
- Color



## Scanning a Hard-copy Original

### 1 Place the original.

Place the original on the Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.

To place the original, see [p.42](#).

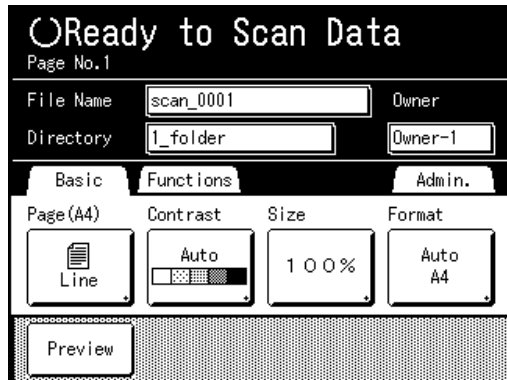
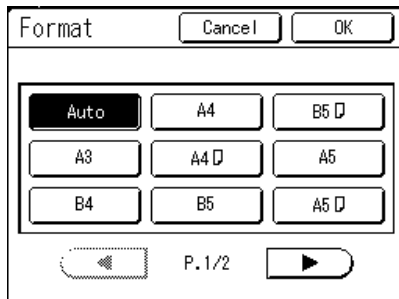
### 2 Select a scan mode.

Touch **[Scanning]** on the Mode Selection Screen. [p.29](#)

The Scan Basic Screen is displayed.

#### Note:

- After selecting the Scan mode and if the following "Format" Screen is displayed, select the page size (original size) and touch **[OK]**.



### 3 Setting data information.

Sets the file name, directory and owner name. [p.217](#)

### 4 Setting required functions.

Set the required functions for scanning the original.

#### Note:

- You can check scanned data instantly by enabling the "Preview" function. You can also use this function to check data before saving. [p.109](#)
- See [p.214](#) for the functions that can be set.

#### Important!:

- Set "Format" when scanning custom-sized originals. [p.219](#)

### 5 To specify the operation mode

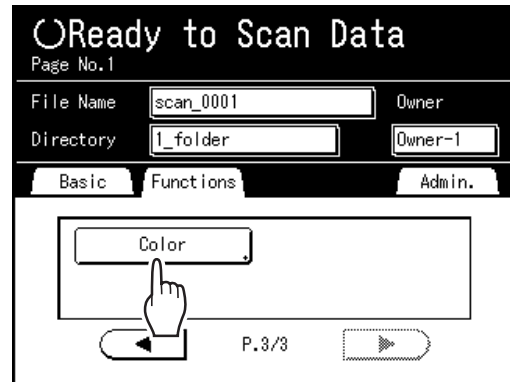
You can specify the print color of the data you retrieve for printing.

If a Print Drum (Cylinder) of a color differing from the print color selected is present, a message is displayed.

#### Important!:

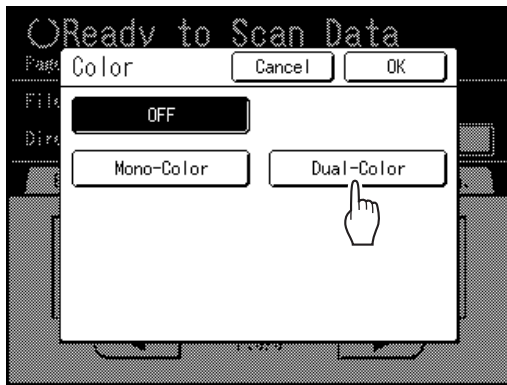
- This procedure is necessary with originals for Dual-Color printing.
- There is no need to set when scanning Mono-Color originals.

1) Touch **[Color]** on the Functions Screen.



The Color Screen appears.

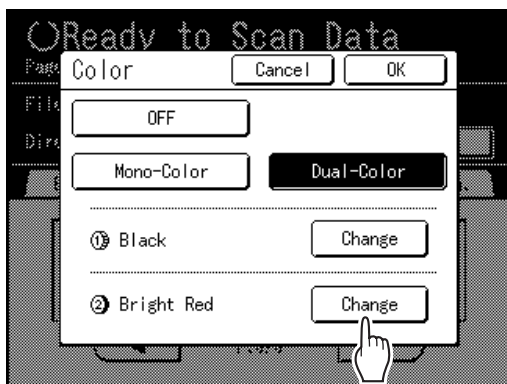
2) Touch [Dual-Color].



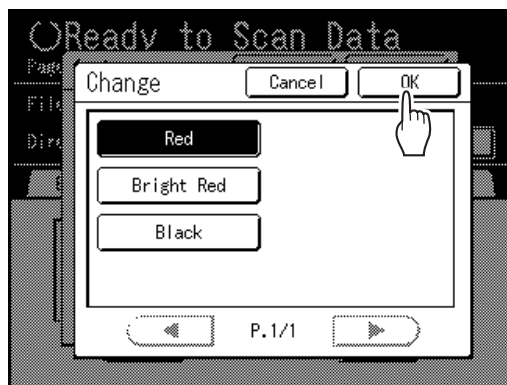
3) Check the Print Drum (Cylinder) color. To change the Ink colors on Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and 2, touch [Change] for each and choose from among the displayed colors.

**Note:**

- The previously set color names are displayed on the Change Screen.



4) Touch the button of the color to set and then touch [OK].



Returns to the Color Screen. The Color setting is updated.

5) Touch [OK].

The color specified for the original is confirmed and the screen returns to the Scan Basic Screen.

**Note:**

- The page after the original data to be scanned and the Print Drum (Cylinder) to be used are displayed in the message area.

6) Press the  key.

The scan starts.

**Note:**

- After scanning the original, a preview shows on the display if "Preview" is set. Check the image on the display and touch [Close].


7) Repeat steps 4 and 6 if the original has multiple pages.

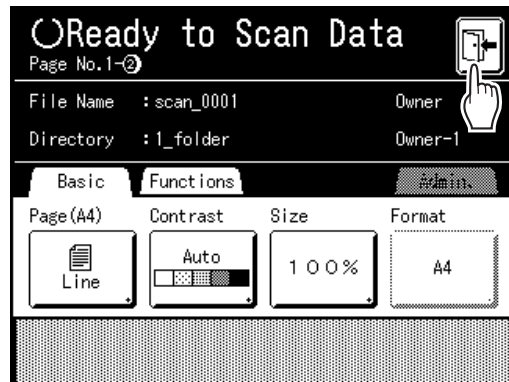
In case of original for Dual-Color printing, set the original for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

**Note:**

- The pages after the saved data of scanned originals are displayed in the message area.
- If multiple originals were placed on the optional ADF unit, all originals will be scanned at the same settings.

8) Touch .

Once the original to be saved as one set of data is scanned, touch .



A confirmation screen appears.

9) Touch [Yes].

The data is saved.

When you touch [**<Back**], the screen returns to the previous operation.

When you touch [**No**], the scanned contents are canceled.

**Note:**

- Press the  key to exit scan mode.

# Setting Data Information

Settings for the data to be scanned and stored are configured on the Scan Basic Screen.

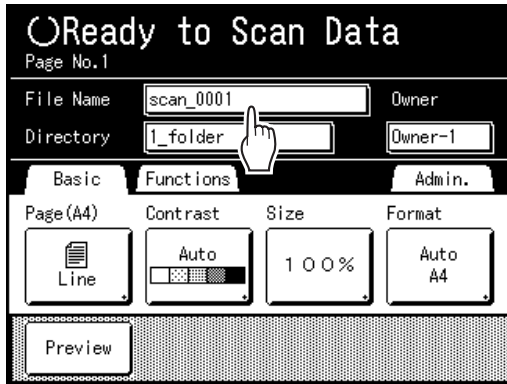
The file name, directory and owner name are automatically allocated when scan mode is started, but you can change this preset information if needed.

**Note:**

- Default settings for the “Directory” folder can be changed in “Admin.”. (p.194)

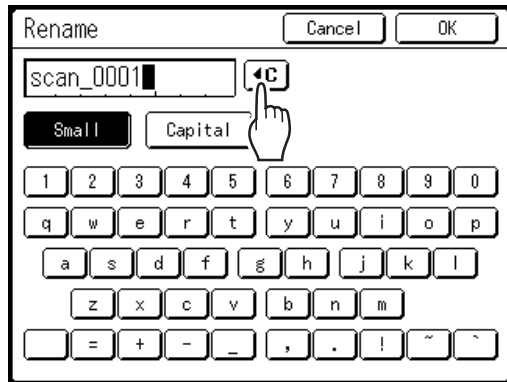
## 1 Enter a file name.

- 1) Touch the file name input box.



The Rename Screen appears.

- 2) Touch the **[C]** button to delete the current name.



**Note:**

- You can also press the **(C)** key to delete.

- 3) Touch the text button and enter the file name. (p.157)
- 4) Touch **[OK]**.  
The file name is confirmed and the screen returns to the Scan Basic Screen.

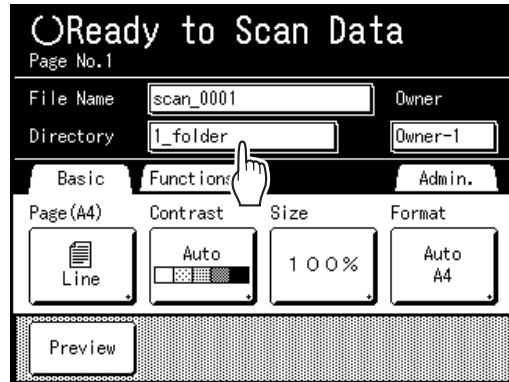
## 2 Specifying a Directory.

When saving in the USB Flash Drive, connect the USB Flash Drive to the USB slot in advance.

**Note:**

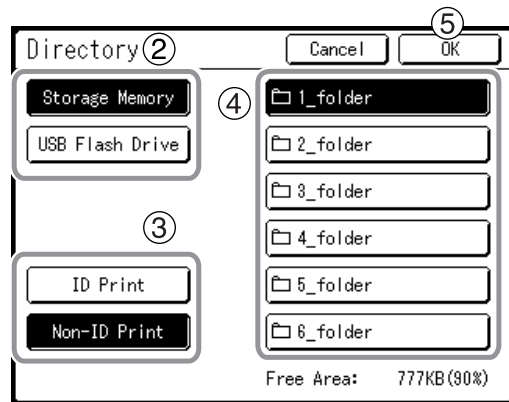
- If the machine is equipped with the optional RISO Controller IS300, you cannot specify where to store the data.

- 1) Touch the directory input box.



The Directory Screen appears.

- 2) Touch **[Storage Memory]** or **[USB Flash Drive]**.



If the USB Flash Drive is not connected, **[USB Flash Drive]** is grayed out and not available.

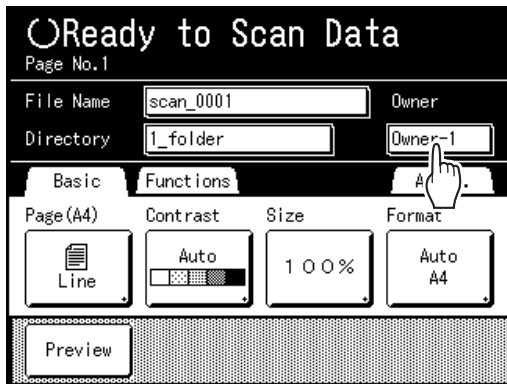
- 3) Touch **[ID Print]** or **[Non-ID Print]**.  
**[ID Print]** and **[Non-ID Print]** are displayed only when "Management Level" is set to "High/Full Management".
- 4) Touch the folder to save the data.
- 5) Touch **[OK]**.  
 The "Directory" folder is confirmed and the screen returns to the Scan Basic Screen.

**Note:**

- The folder name of the "Directory" folder of storage data can be changed in "Admin.". (p.194)

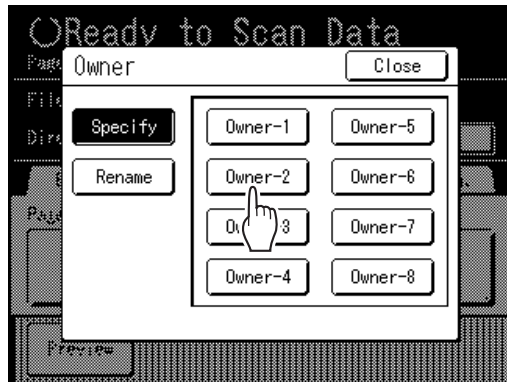
### 3 Specifying an Owner.

- 1) Touch the owner input box.



The Owner Screen appears.

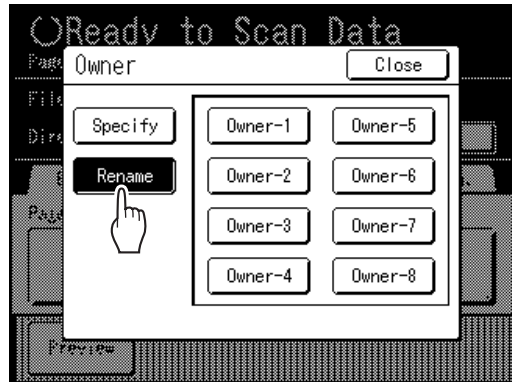
- 2) Touch the button of the owner to set.



The owner name is confirmed and the screen returns to the Scan Basic Screen.

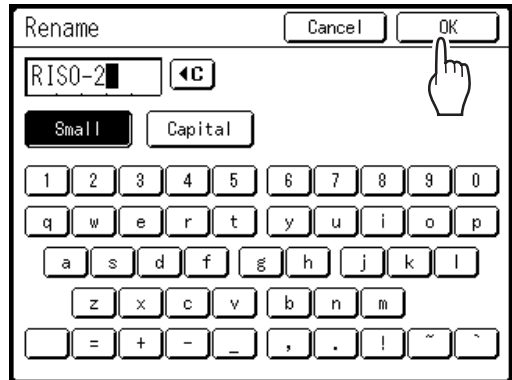
**Tip:**  
**Changing the Owner Name**

- 1) Touch **[Rename]** on the Owner Screen.



Touch the button of the owner to rename. The Rename Screen appears.

- 2) Touch the **[C]** button to delete the current name.
- 3) Enter the Owner name.
- 4) Touch **[OK]**.



The owner name is confirmed and the screen returns to the Owner Screen.

## Specifying Stored Size

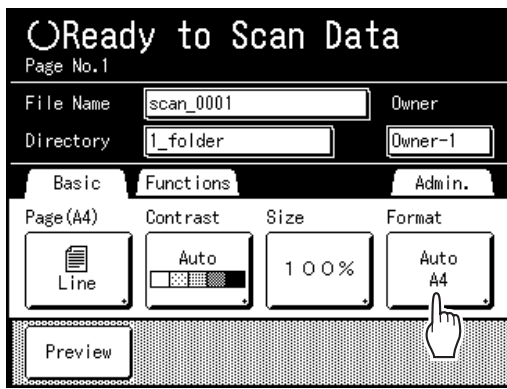
Specify the size to save the scanned original.

It is necessary to set the Format size when:

- you place the originals on the Glass Platen
- you set the custom-sized originals in the optional ADF unit
- you want to save at a size that differs from the size of the original

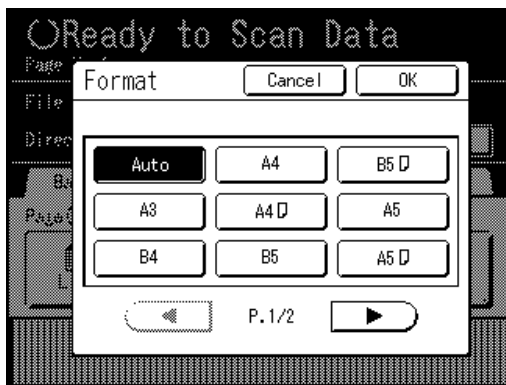
When the standard-sized original is set in the optional ADF unit, the original size is detected automatically. The original is saved by original format.

### 1 Touch [Format] on the Scan Basic Screen.



The Format Screen appears.

### 2 Touch the Format size button to be set.



If you select **[Auto]**, the same size as the original will automatically be set.

#### Note:

- When Format is set to "Auto", you cannot select "Auto" under the Size.

### 3 Touch [OK].

The stored size is confirmed and the screen returns to the Scan Basic Screen.

# Retrieving Stored Data and Printing

## [Storage Memory][USB Job List]

Retrieving and printing stored data.

### Retrieving Stored Data

When retrieving the USB Flash Drive data, connect the USB Flash Drive to the USB slot in advance. For details on how to print USB Flash Drive data, see p.32 “Printing from a Computer Data”.

**Note:**

- When “User Management” is set up by the administrator, the users will be asked to identify themselves during the operation. For details, refer to p.53.
- When “Recognized by” is set to “PIN Code” in User Management and the USB Flash Drive is connected while the Basic Screen for each mode is displayed, the USB Job List Screen is automatically displayed. See step 2.

### 1 Touch [Storage Memory] on the Functions Screen.



The Storage Selection Screen or USB Job List Screen (with “Non-ID Print”) is displayed (The “ID Print Job” button is displayed on the screen).

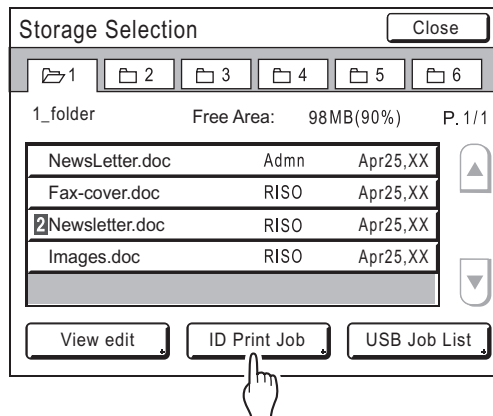
### 2 Select [ID Print Job] or [Non-ID Print].

**Note:**

- When “Management Level” is set to “Low/ Admin tab only” in User Management, [ID Print Job] will not be displayed.

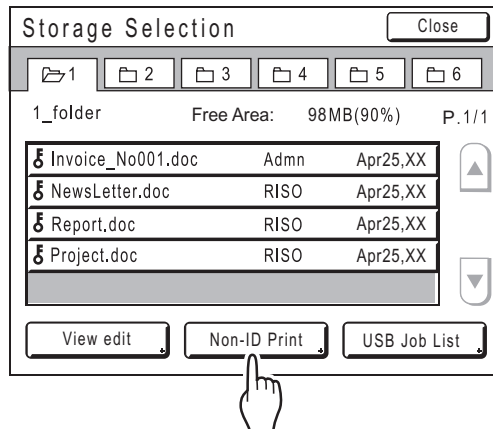
### ◆ When retrieving data set with “ID Print Job”

Touch [ID Print Job].

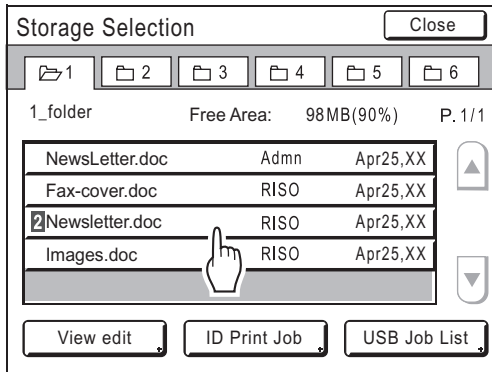


### ◆ When retrieving data set with “Non-ID Print”

When “Non-ID Print” is displayed on the screen, touch “Non-ID Print”.



### 3 Touch the data to print.



If you are selecting data stored in a different folder, touch that folder's tab.

**Note:**

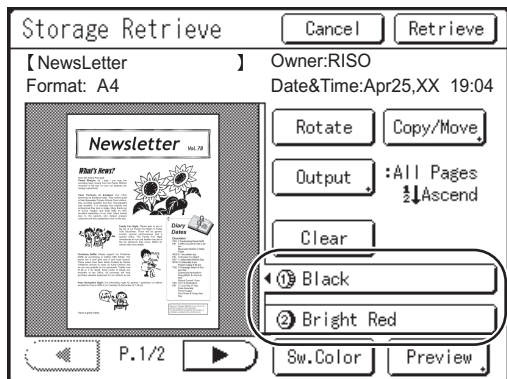
- **2** is displayed at the beginning of the data name for Dual-Color originals.
- If the stored data is not shown on the screen, touch **▲** or **▼** to display.
- Touching **[USB Job List]** or **[Storage Memory]** displayed in the bottom right corner of the screen switches to the Storage Selection Screen or USB Job List Screen.

### 4 Confirm the retrieved data.

Check the thumbnail displayed on the screen.

**Note:**

- In case of the data for Dual-Color printing, you can change the thumbnail by using the color name button in the lower-right corner of the screen.



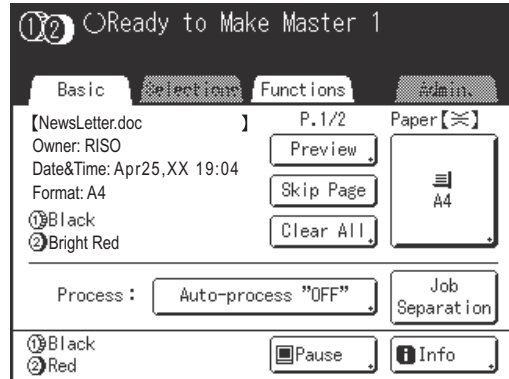
- Touch **[Sw.Color]** when you want to switch the colors of Print Drums (Cylinders) 1 and 2.
- Touch the **[Preview]** button when you want to enlarge and confirm the thumbnail.  
p.109

From the Storage (USB Job List) Retrieve Screen, you can confirm retrieved data and specify output settings.

See p.223 for operational details.

### 5 Touch [Retrieve].

The data is retrieved and Storage Mode Basic Screen appears.



### 6 Press the **START** key.

A master is made from the data.

After this, please follow the same operations for normally making a master/printing for Mono-Color and Dual-Color mode.

## Changing the Data Order

You can change the order of the stored data displayed on the Storage Selection Screen/USB Job List Screen.

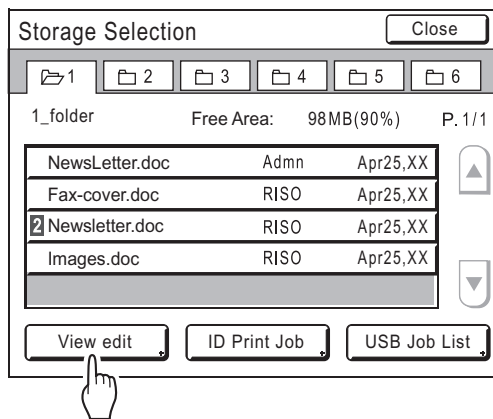
**Note:**

- The factory setting is “Date Descend”.

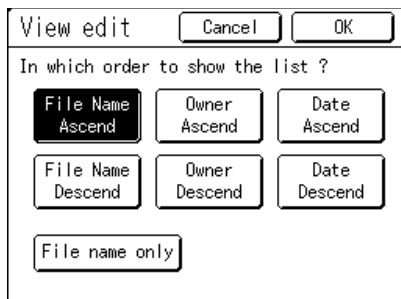
### 1 Touch [View edit].

**Note:**

- [View edit] is inactive if there is no storage data/USB Flash Drive data or only one stored item.



### 2 On the View Edit Screen, touch the button of the order you want.



**Note:**

- By using ON (inverted)/OFF of [File name only], the data display format can be switched on the Storage (USB) Selection Screen.

OFF: File Name + Owner Name + Date  
 ON (inverted): File Name

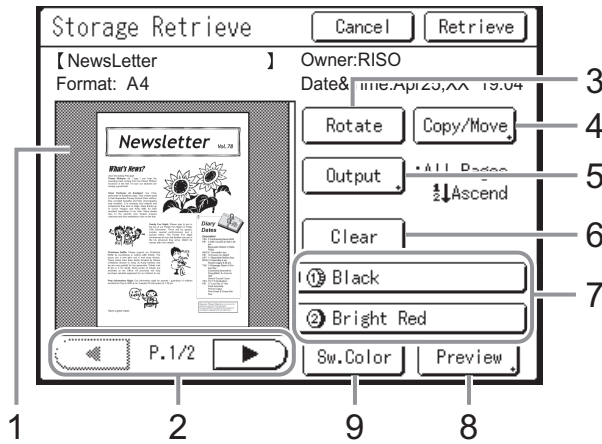
### 3 Touch [OK].

Returns to the Storage Selection Screen (USB Job List Screen).



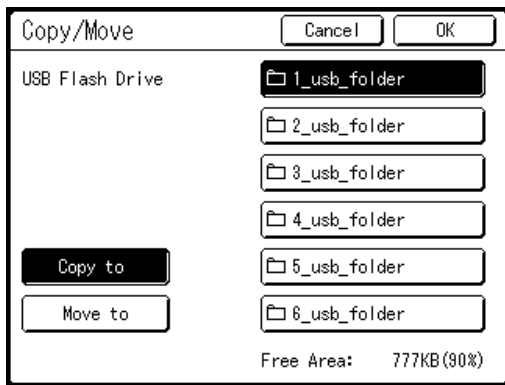
## Using the Storage Retrieve/USB Job List Screen

Each section of the Storage Retrieve/USB Job List Screen is shown below. An example of the Storage Retrieve Screen is explained here.



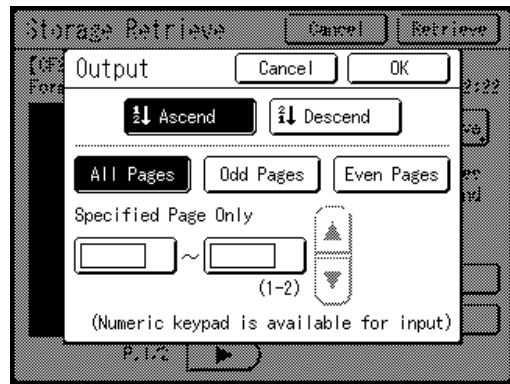
- 1) A thumbnail is displayed for each page.
- 2) If the data contains multiple pages, touch to change page.
- 3) Touch to rotate the storage data/USB Flash Drive data 180 degrees and output.
- 4) Copy/Move

Copy/Move the stored data between the Storage Memory and USB Flash Drive. From the Storage Retrieve Screen, copy/move data to the USB Flash Drive. From the USB Job List Retrieve Screen, copy/move data to the Storage Memory. For details, see p.238.



### 5) Output Range

If the storage data/USB Flash Drive data consists of multiple pages, you can specify which pages to print. Touch [Output] to display the Output Screen.

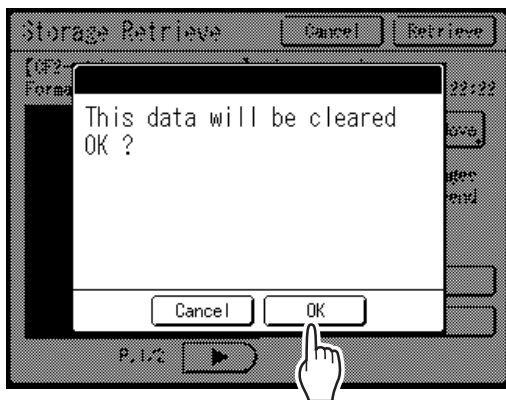


Touch the corresponding buttons to print all pages, only odd pages, or only even pages. You can also specify whether to print the selected pages in [Ascend] or [Descend] order.

To specify a page range, touch the page input box and touch either ▲ or ▼ to specify the pages.

### 6) Clear

Touch **[Clear]** and a confirmation screen appears.



Touch **[OK]** to delete the data.

### 7) For Dual-Color originals, touch a color to display the thumbnail of that color.

### 8) Preview

Display the Preview Screen of the enlarged thumbnail.

☞ p.109

### 9) Sw. Color

For Dual-Color originals, touch to switch the colors of Print Drums (Cylinders) 1 and 2.

# Overlaying Stored Data onto a Print Job

## [Overlay]

When performing Mono-Color printing, you can overlay stored data onto a hard-copy original.

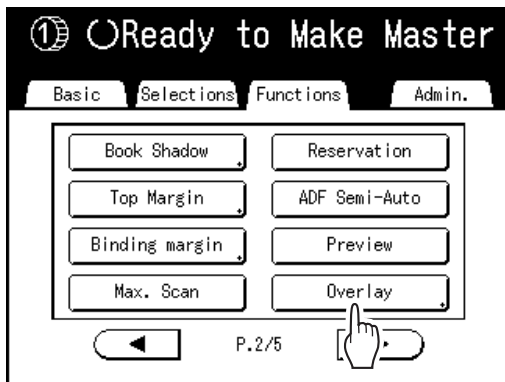
### Important!:

- To use this function, the optional Document Storage Card or USB Flash Drive is required.
- This function cannot be used with the following functions:
  - Ink Saving
  - Top Margin
  - Binding margin
  - Storage Memory (“Overlay” images cannot be stored.)
  - USB Job List (“Overlay” images cannot be stored.)
  - When sending original data from the computer

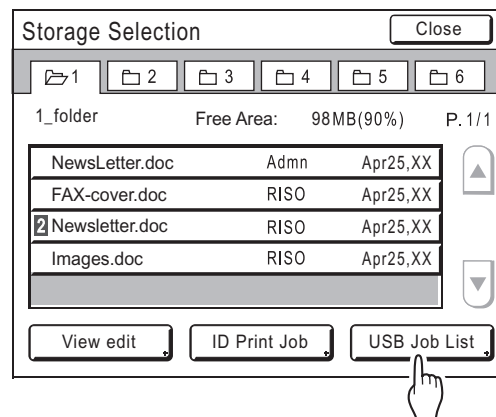
## 1 Place an original.

Place the original on Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.  
To place the original, see p.42.

## 2 Touch [Overlay] on the Functions Screen.



The Storage Selection Screen appears. When overlaying data stored in the USB Flash Drive, connect the USB Flash Drive to the USB slot and touch **[USB Job List]**.

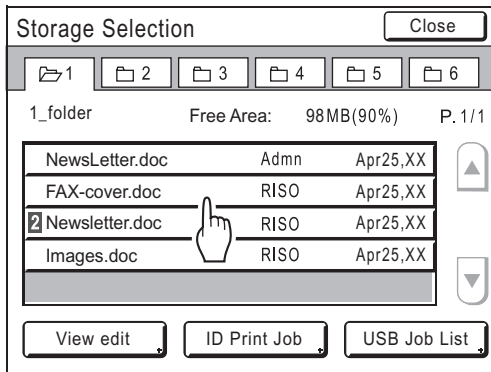


USB Job List Screen is displayed.

### Important!:

- Do not remove the USB Flash Drive until printing is finished.

### 3 Select the stored data to overlay.



Details on how to select data, see steps 3 and 4 in “Retrieving Stored Data and Printing” (p.220).

### 4 Check the stored data.

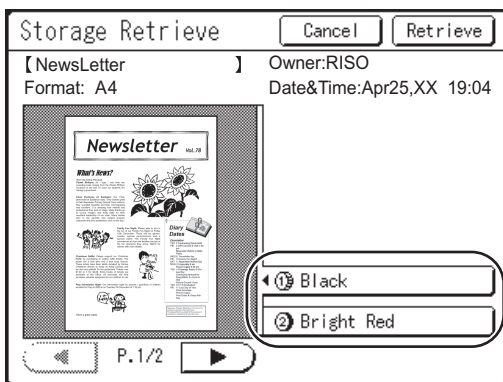
Check the thumbnail to make sure that the data is the data you want to retrieve. When there are several pages (editions), display the data by touching ◀ or ▶ button.

**Important!:**

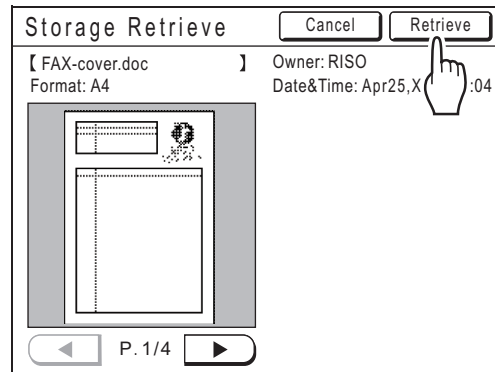
- Only one page of data can be retrieved for Overlay. If the storage data is separated into several pages (or Dual-Color separation), select a page in the color (Print Drum (Cylinder)) of the side you want to print.

**Note:**

- In the case of the data for Dual-Color printing, you can change the thumbnail by using the color name button in the lower-right corner of the screen.



### 5 Touch [Retrieve].



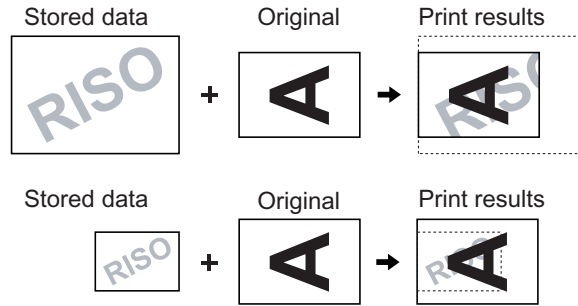
“Overlay” is set and the screen returns to the Functions Screen.

### 6 Make necessary operation to print.

For subsequent operations, see step 6 and after of “Printing with Mono-Color”. (p.49)

**Tip:****Overlaying Stored Data**

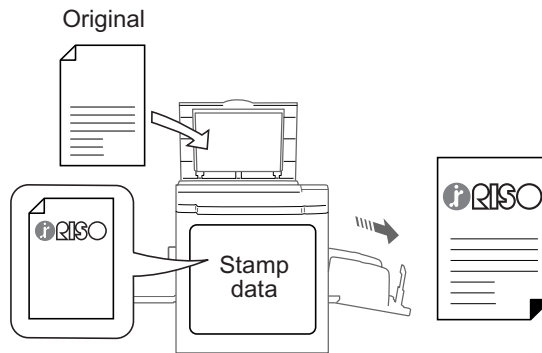
The stored data overlays at the size it was saved. You cannot enlarge/reduce the size to match the original or paper size.



The stored data is overlaid after being centered at the top of the original. You cannot adjust the overlay position.

# Dual-Color Printing with the Original and Storage Data [Stamp]

When performing Dual-Color printing, you can create a master of the hard-copy original on one Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and a master of the storage data on Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 in order to Dual-Color print. For example, if you specify data for Company logo, etc., that color insignia can be printed on consecutive pages.



## Important!:

- To use this function, the optional Document Storage Card or USB Flash Drive is required.
- The “Stamp” function automatically assigns hardcopy originals to scan to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and stored data to Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.

This function cannot be used with the following functions.

- Easy 2Color
- When sending original data from the computer
- Storage Memory (combined data cannot be stored)
- USB Job List (combined data cannot be stored)
- OneSide MasterMake
- Confidential
- Output reversal
- Editor

## Registering a Stamp Data to insert

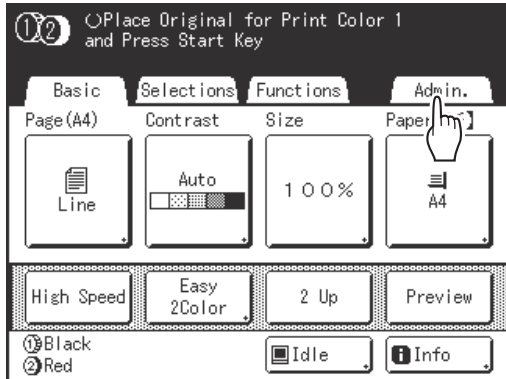
For “Stamp”, the data registered in the data for “Stamp” is used.

Store the original to be used for the Stamp in “Storage Memory” in advance, and register the data to be used for the Stamp from the stored data.

Up to 10 data can be registered as Stamp Data.

See p.214 for information on creating storage data.

### 1 Touch [Admin.] on the Basic Screen for each mode.

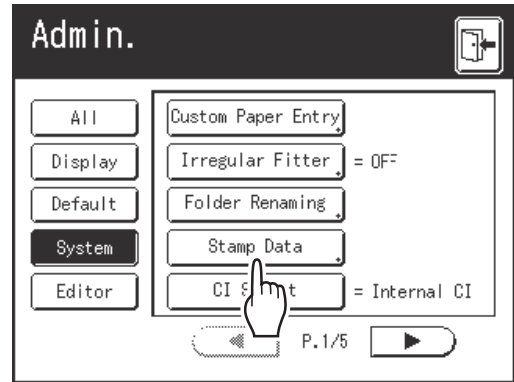


### 2 Touch [OK].



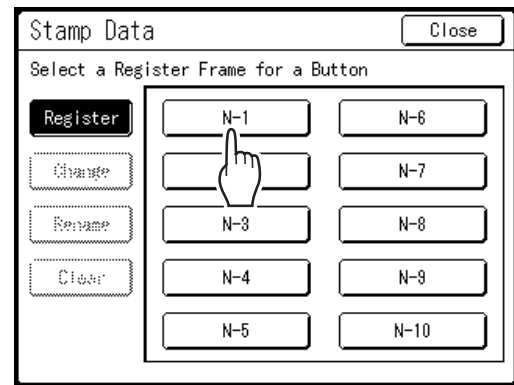
### 3 Touch [Stamp Data] on the Admin. Screen.

See p.192 for operational details of the Admin. Screen.



The Stamp Data Screen appears.

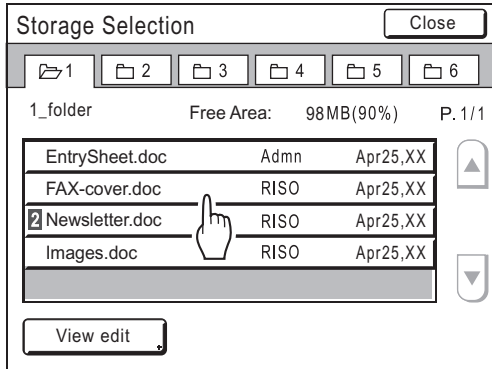
### 4 Touch an unused button.



Unused buttons are displayed with a solid line. Used buttons are grayed out and are not available.

The Storage Selection Screen is displayed.

## 5 Select the storage data to use as the [Stamp].



**Note:**

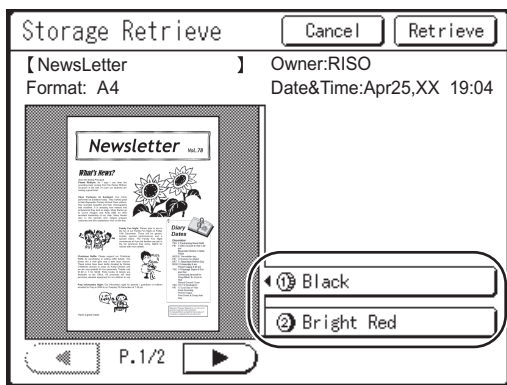
- See p.220 for details about using the Storage Selection Screen.
- Data with ID Print setting cannot be selected.

## 6 Confirm the storage data.

Check the thumbnail to make sure that the data is the data you want to retrieve. When there are several pages (editions), display the data by touching ◀ or ▶ button.

**Important!:**

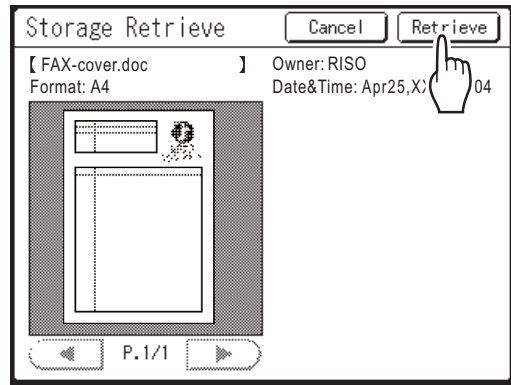
- Only one page can be retrieved for Stamp. If the storage data is separated into several pages (or Dual-Color separation), select a page in the color (Print Drum (Cylinder)) you want to print.



**Note:**

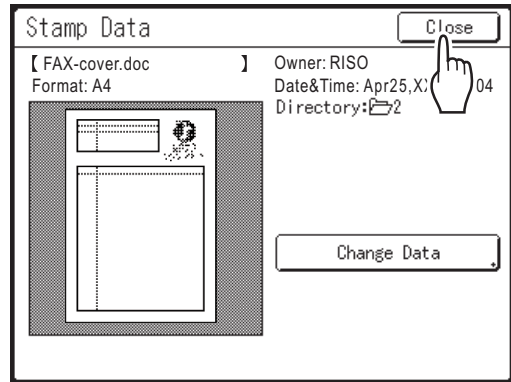
- In case of the data for Dual-Color printing, you can change the thumbnail by using the color name button in the lower-right corner of the screen.

## 7 Touch [Retrieve].



The Stamp Data Screen is displayed.

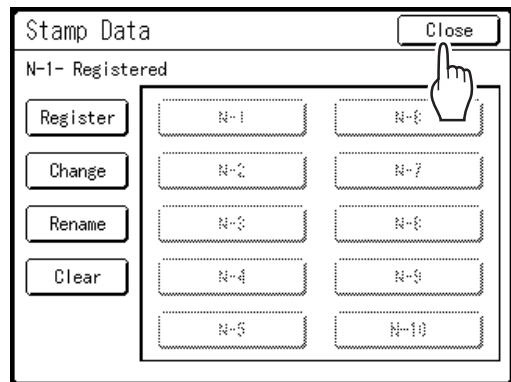
## 8 Touch [Close].



**Note:**

- To change the data for Stamp, touch [Change Data]. The Storage Selection Screen is displayed.

The data for Stamp is registered, and the list screen of Stamp Data appears.



If necessary, go to step 2 of “Renaming the Stamp Data”. (p.232)



**9 Touch [Close].**

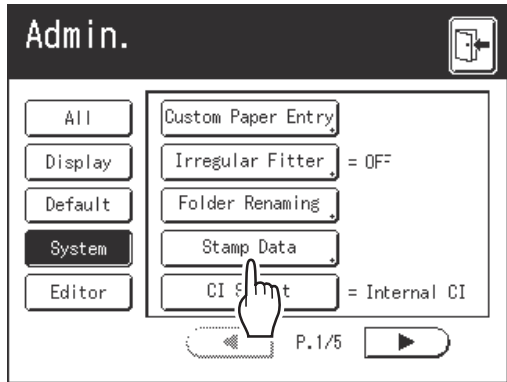
Returns to the Admin. Screen.

**10 Touch .**

# Renaming the Stamp Data

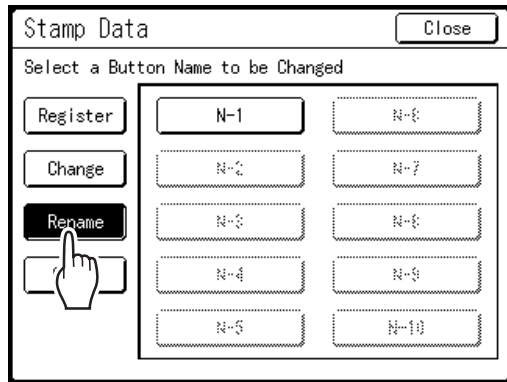
## 1 Touch [Stamp Data] on the Admin. Screen.

See p.192 for operational details of the Admin. Screen.

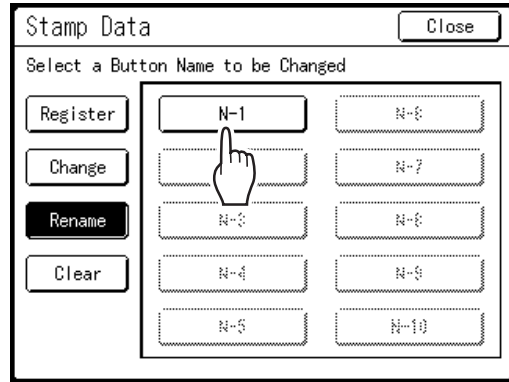


The Stamp Data Screen appears.

## 2 Touch [Rename].

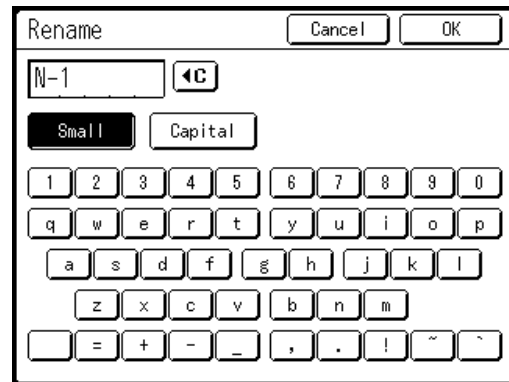


## 3 Touch the button to rename.



Grayed out buttons are not available (no Stamp Data has been registered yet).

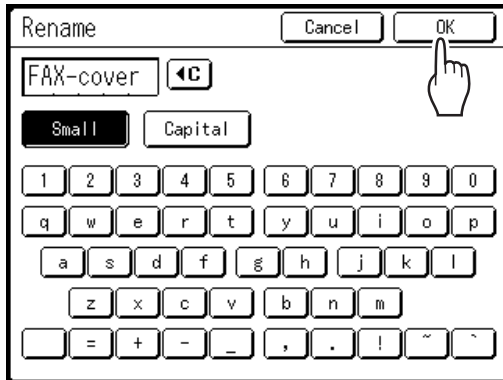
## 4 Touch character buttons to enter a new name.



### Note:

- Change capitalization by selecting the [Small] or [Capital] button. p.157
- To delete the current name, touch button or press the key.

**5 Touch [OK] after entering all the characters.**



The entered name is registered and returns to the Stamp Data Screen.

**6 Touch [Close].**

Returns to Admin. Screen.

**7 Touch .**

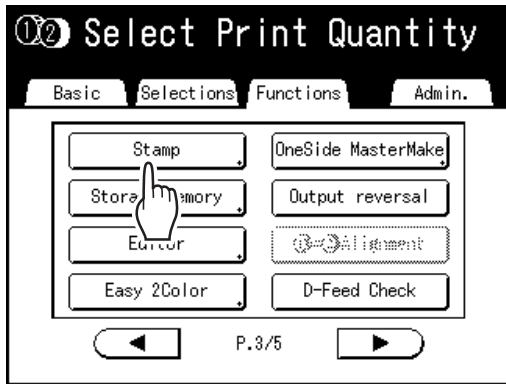
## Dual-Color Printing with [Stamp]

Pre-select Dual-Color Printing.

### 1 Place an original and load paper.

Place the original on Glass Platen or in the optional ADF unit.  
To place the original, see [p.42](#)

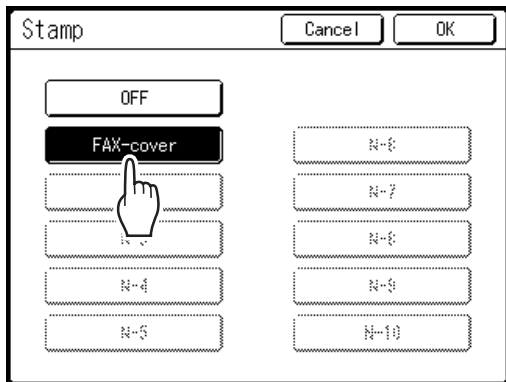
### 2 Touch [Stamp] on the Functions Screen.



#### Important!:

- If data for the “Stamp” is not registered, the [Stamp] button is not displayed on the Functions Screen.

### 3 Touch the button of the Stamp Data to use.



Grayed out buttons are not available (no Stamp Data has been registered).

### 4 Touch [OK].

Stamp is set.

### 5 Set the print functions.

You can make adjustments to the print functions as needed.

#### Note:

- When [Preview] is set, you can check if the orientation of characters on the storage data and hardcopy original correspond with each other. [p.109](#)

### 6 Press the key.

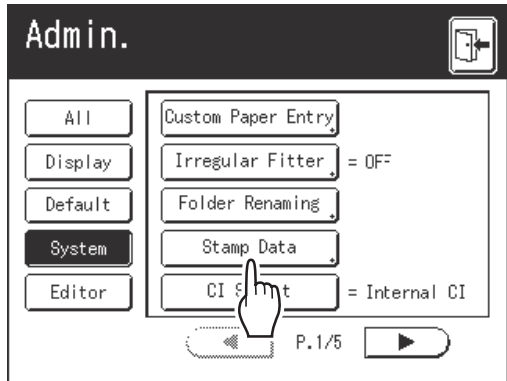
A master is made from the hard-copy original and the stamp data, and a proof printed.

For subsequent operations, follow the same procedure from step 13 ([p.44](#)) of “Dual-Color Printing with 2 Originals”.

# Changing the Stamp Data

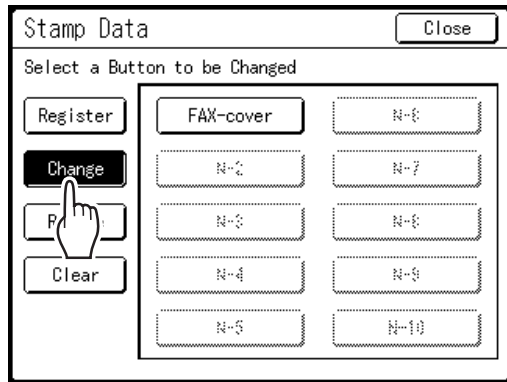
## 1 Touch [Stamp Data] on the Admin. Screen.

See p.192 for operational details of the Admin. Screen.

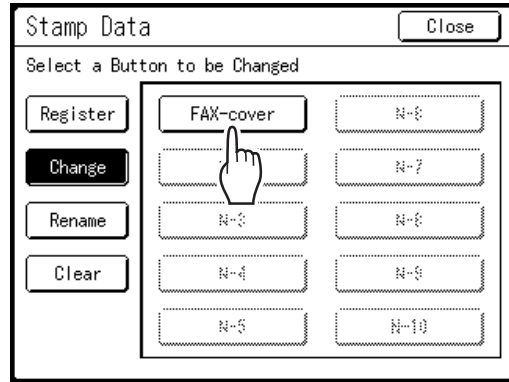


The Stamp Data Screen appears.

## 2 Touch [Change].

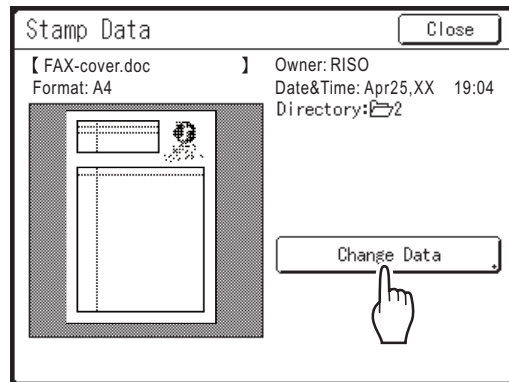


## 3 Touch the button to change.

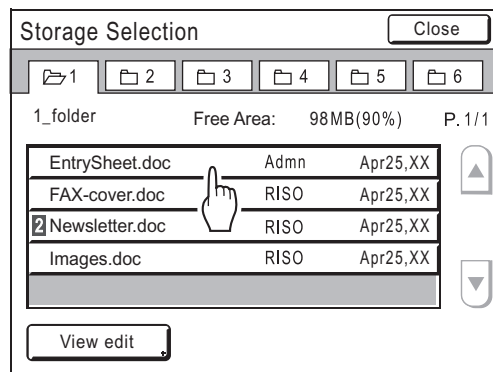


The Stamp Data Screen appears.

## 4 Touch [Change Data].



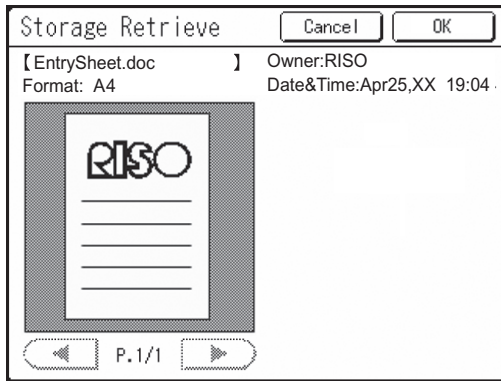
## 5 Select the storage data to use as the new Stamp Data.



**Note:**

- See p.220 or details on using the Storage Selection Screen.
- Data with ID Print setting cannot be selected.

**6 Confirm the storage data.**



Check the thumbnail to make sure that the data is the data you want to retrieve.  
When there are several pages (editions), display the data by touching ◀ or ▶ button.

**Note:**

- In case of the data for Dual-Color printing, you can change the thumbnail by using the color name button in the lower-right corner of the screen.

**7 Touch [Retrieve].**

Returns to the Stamp Data Screen.

**Note:**

- As for the Storage Retrieve Screen, see “Using the Storage Retrieve Screen / USB Job List Screen” (p.223)

**8 Touch [Close].**

The data is changed and returns to the Stamp Data Screen.

**9 Touch [Close].**

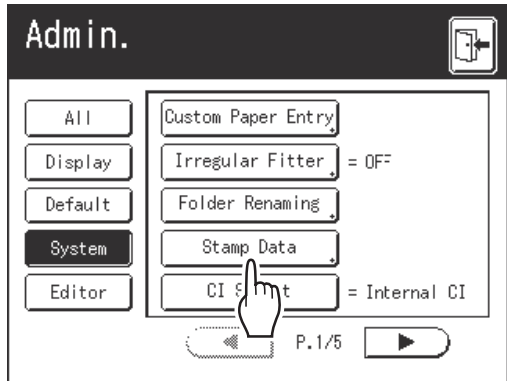
Returns to Admin. Screen.

**10 Touch .**

# Deleting a Stamp Data

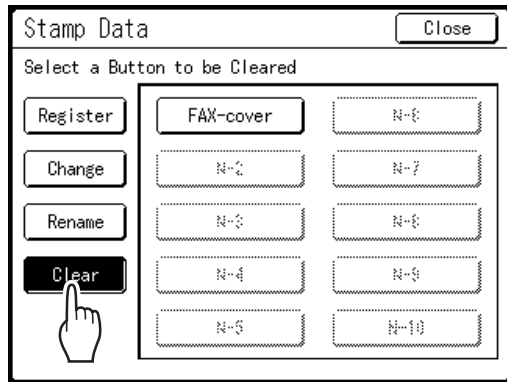
## 1 Touch [Stamp Data] on the Admin. Screen.

See p.192 for operational details of the Admin. Screen.

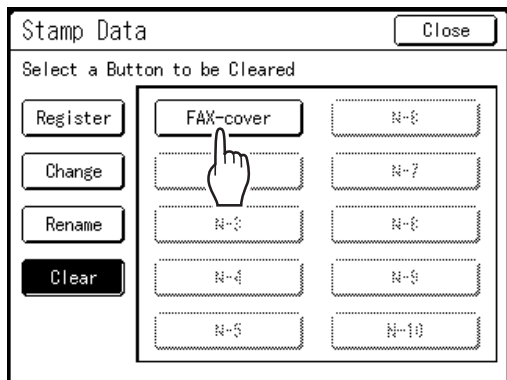


The Stamp Data Screen appears.

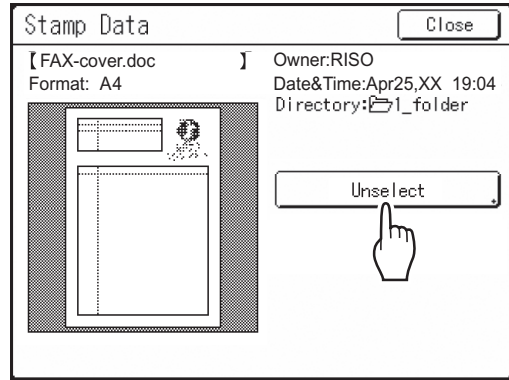
## 2 Touch [Clear].



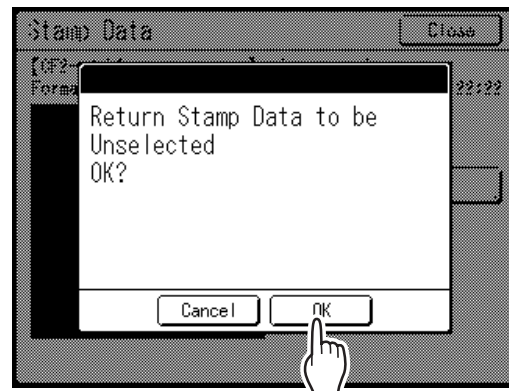
## 3 Touch the button to delete.



## 4 Touch [Unselect].



## 5 Touch [OK].



Returns to Stamp Data Screen.

## 6 Touch [Close].

## 7 Touch .

# Copying/Moving Stored Data

Data can be copied or moved between the Storage Memory and the USB Flash Drive. This is useful for performing backup or when the remaining free space of the Storage Memory or USB Flash Drive is limited.

**Note:**

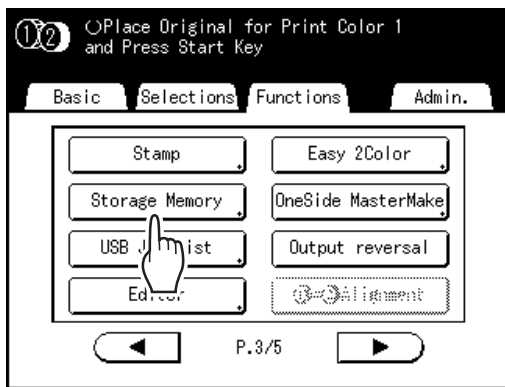
- It is not possible to copy/move data within the Storage Memory or USB Flash Drive.
- The original data stored in the USB Flash Drive can be organized or managed by a computer using the “RISO Utility Software” (RISO USB PRINT MANAGER) included in the provided CD-ROM. For details, see the “RISO Utility Software User’s Guide” (CD-ROM).
- The **[ID Print Job]** is maintained even if it is copied or moved.

The procedure for copying/moving data from the Storage Memory to the USB Flash Drive is explained here.

## 1 Confirm that the USB Flash Drive that will store the data is connected.

If the USB Flash Drive is not connected, connect the USB Flash Drive to the USB slot.

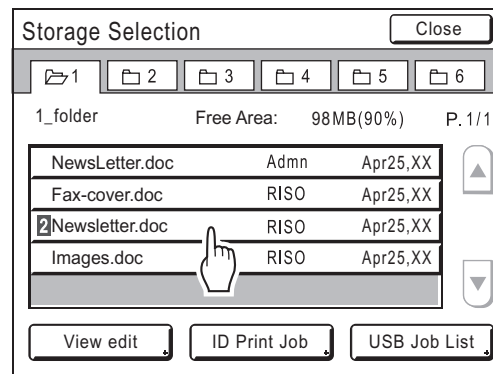
## 2 Touch [Storage Memory] on the Functions Screen.



**Note:**

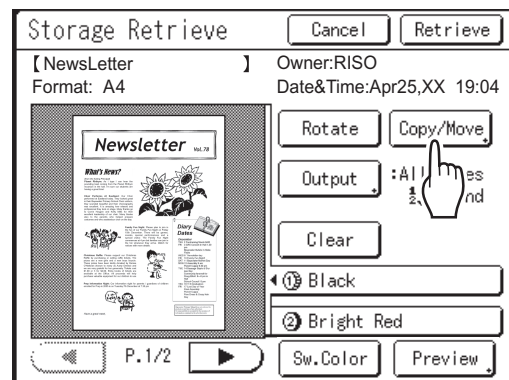
- When copying/moving the data from the USB Flash Drive to the Storage Memory, touch **[USB Job List]**.

## 3 Touch the storage data to copy/move.



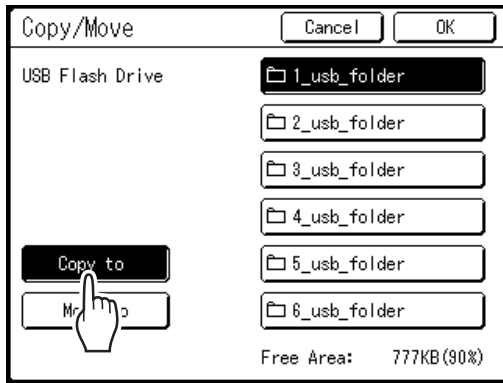
For details on how to select data, see steps 3 and 4 in “Retrieving Stored Data and Printing” p.220.

## 4 Touch [Copy/Move].





## 5 Touch [Copy to] or [Move to].



## 6 Touch the button of the destination folder that you want to copy or move the data.

## 7 Touch [OK].

Data is copied/moved and the selected destination folder is displayed.

### Important!:

- While processing the data, do not remove the USB Flash Drive. This will cause data to disappear and the USB malfunctioning.

### Note:

- When the remaining free space of the USB Flash Drive is limited, the following message is displayed. Touch **[USB Job List]** to organize the data of USB Flash Drive, or touch **[Cancel]** to cancel copying/moving.



# Replacing Consumables

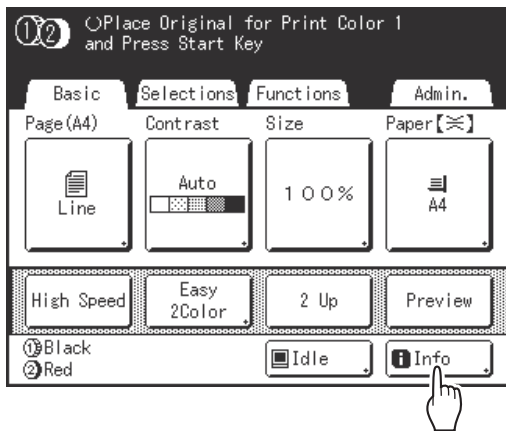
## Check for Remaining Amount of Consumables

The machine checks and reports on remaining amount of Ink, master, paper, as well as the space left in the disposal box.

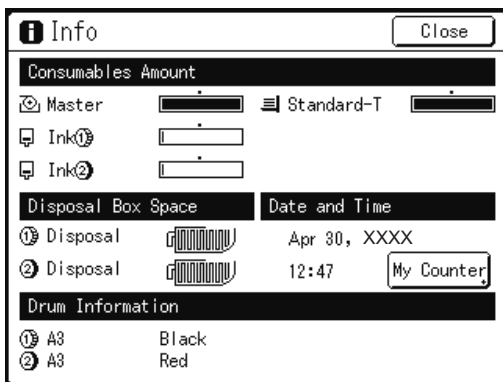
### Note:

- The report may not be displayed if detection fails.
- The reported amount is for reference only and may not be perfectly accurate.
- If the Ink or master is depleted or the Master Disposal Box is full, a warning message is displayed and the machine stops.

### 1 Touch [i Info] on the Basic Screen.



### 2 Check for remaining amount of consumables.



When running low, be sure to restock supply.

- Master (p.242)
- Ink (p.245)

- Master Disposal (used master) (p.247)

### Display Details

Indicator/Message	Description
	The black bar indicates the remaining amount. Ex:  approximately 10% left
(Unknown), ---, no display	Indicates that consumable data is not available, is not set, etc.


### ◆ About the “My Counter” Screen




When the “Management Level” in the User Management is set to “High/Full Management”, touch [My Counter] to display “My Counter” Screen.



On the “My Counter” Screen, you can confirm the current user’s Limit C/C, M/C and Present C/C, M/C. Limit C/C and M/C are set by the administrator. Consult your administrator for details.


My Counter		Close
U-1(G-1)		
Limit C/C	10,000	
Present C/C	6,511	
Limit M/C	10,000	
Present M/C	250	



**Tip:**

 Information Button

 icon on the  Information Button displays current status of the consumables as detected by the machine. The  icon will change depending on the matching information detected from the consumable.

- When matching information was correctly retrieved from the consumable  (normal display)
- When matching information is not available  (gray display)

When the  icon is grayed, the remaining amount of master/Ink cannot be displayed.

When the master material or Ink runs low,  (master) or  (Ink) icon blinks on the right of the button to let you know that the item should soon be replaced.

**Note:**

- If the machine is unable to retrieve matching data from the consumable, you must enter the correct setting value.

 p.280

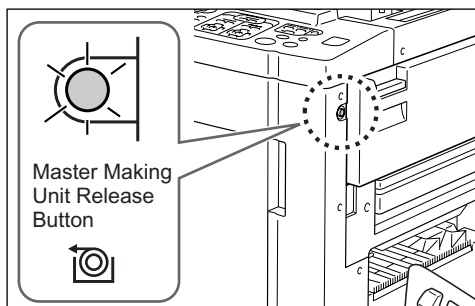
# Replacing the Master Roll

When the Master Roll is depleted, a message is displayed and the machine stops. Replace with a new Master Roll.

**Important!:**

- For the Master Roll, it is recommended to use the products specified by RISO.
- Keep the power ON while replacing the master.

## 1 Check the indicator of the Master Making Unit Release Button is ON.

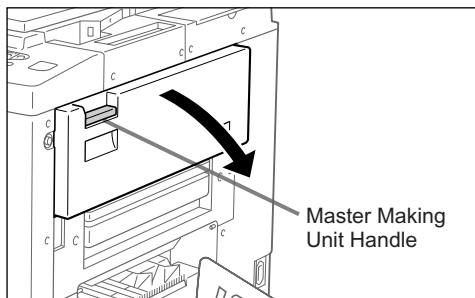


If the indicator is off, press the Master Making Unit Release Button to turn it on.

**Important!:**

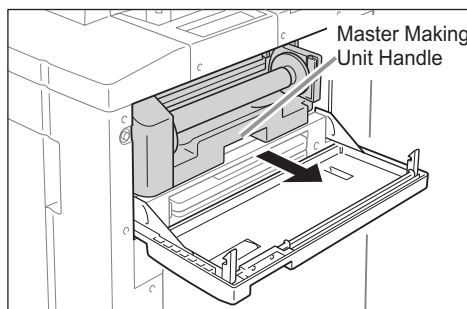
- While the Print Drum (Cylinder) is pulled out, Master Making Unit cannot be pulled out. Return the Print Drum (Cylinder) into position and press the Master Making Unit Release Button.  
p.249

## 2 Open the Master Making Unit Removal Cover.

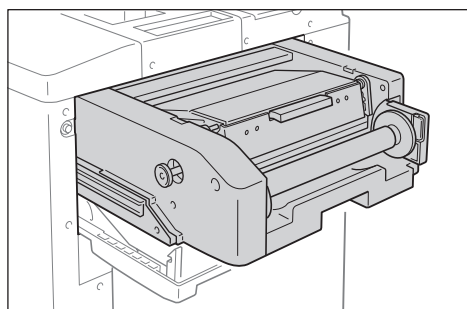


Grasp the Master Making Unit Handle and pull out to open.

## 3 Pull out the Master Making Unit.

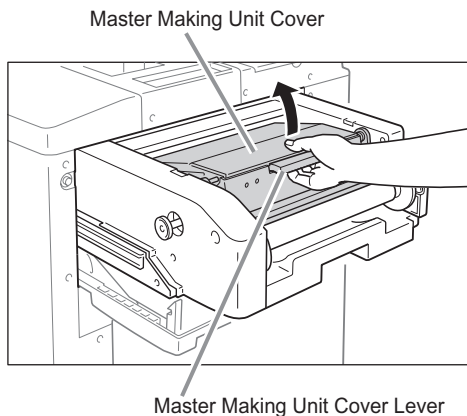


Grasp the Master Making Unit Handle and pull forward.



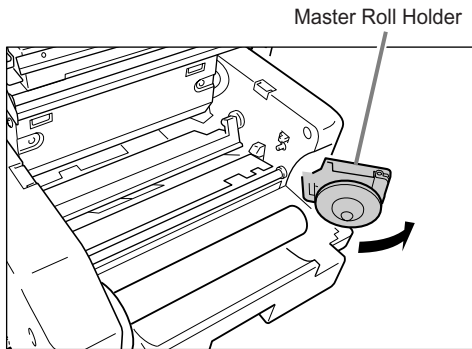
Pull out slowly until it stops.

## 4 Open the Master Making Unit Cover.

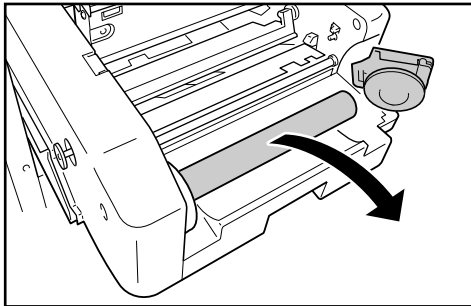


Grasp the Master Making Unit Cover Lever and open the Master Making Unit Cover.

## 5 Open the Master Roll Holder.



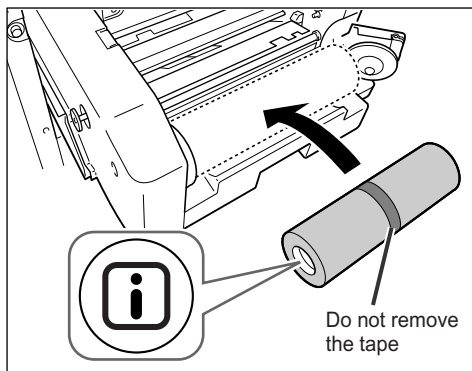
## 6 Remove the depleted Master Roll.



### Important!:

- Dispose the depleted Master Roll according to the disposal rule of your local community.  
p.252

## 7 Install a new Master Roll.

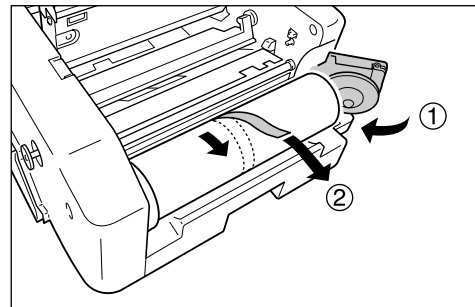


Remove the plastic shrink wrap from the new Master Roll, and place in with the **i** mark to the left.

### Important!:

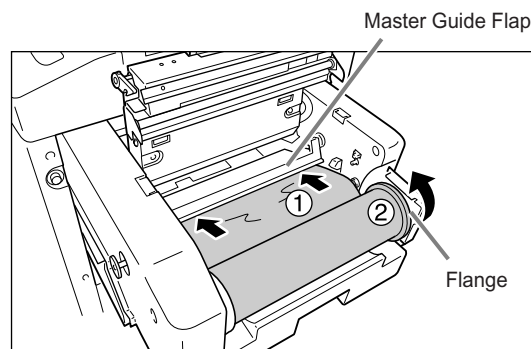
- Take care not to damage the **i** section when removing the shrink wrap. If the **i** section is bent or the perforation cut, the master will become unusable.
- Do not remove the tape yet.

## 8 Close the Master Roll Holder.



Remove the tape once the Master Roll Holder has been closed.

## 9 Insert the leading edge of the Master Roll into its entrance under the Master Guide Flap.



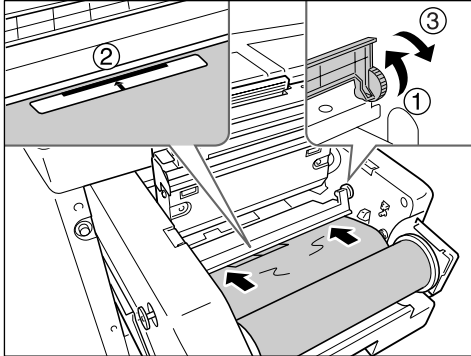
Insert the leading edge until it stops (1). If the master is loose, turn the flange at the right inward to rewind (2).

**Tip:**

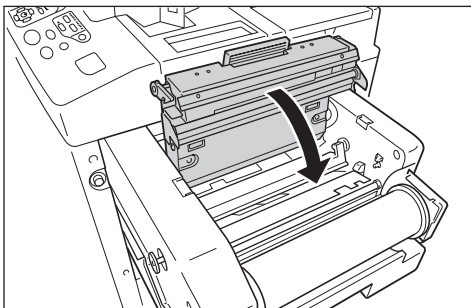
**If You Cannot Insert the Master**

Insert the leading edge of the Master using the following steps.

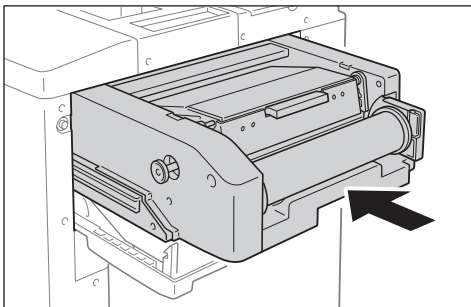
- 1) Raise the Master Guide Flap  
Turn the dial on the edge of the Master Guide Flap towards the rear and raise the Master Guide Flap.
- 2) Pull out the master to the line indicated by the arrow.
- 3) Lower the Master Guide Flap.



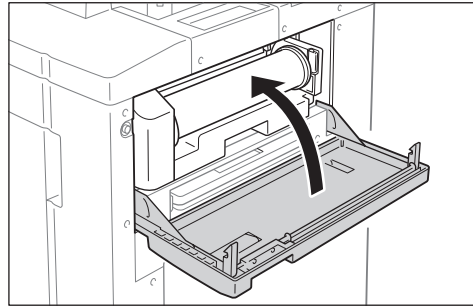
**10 Return each part to its original position.**



Close the Master Making Unit Cover.



Slowly return the Master Making Unit to the position where a beep sounds.



Close the Master Making Unit Removal Cover.

# Replacing the Ink Cartridge

When the Ink is depleted, a message is displayed and the machine stops.  
Replace with a new Ink Cartridge.

## ⚠ Caution:

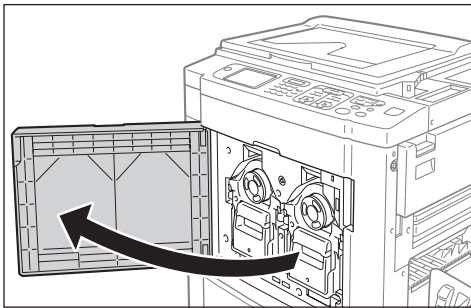
- Ink may be left on the area around the Print Drum (Cylinder), so take care not to smudge your hands or clothes.
- Wash immediately with soap if you should get Ink on your hands, etc..

## Important!:

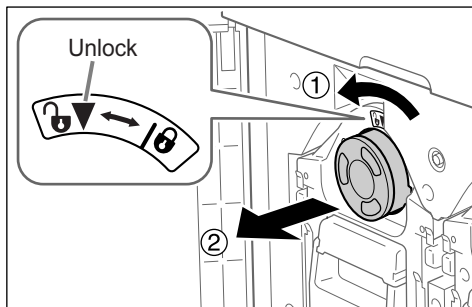
- For the Ink Cartridge, it is recommended to use the products specified by RISO.
- Keep the power ON while replacing the Ink Cartridge.
- Replace with an Ink Cartridge of the same Ink color. If you want to change the Ink color, replace the Print Drum (Cylinder) itself.  
☞ p.249

To replace the Ink Cartridge, the same procedure is used for both Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2. The explanation here is made in the case of Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

## 1 Open the Front Cover.



## 2 Pull the empty Ink Cartridge out of the holder.



Turn the Ink Cartridge to the counter clockwise (🔒) and then pull it out.

## Important!:

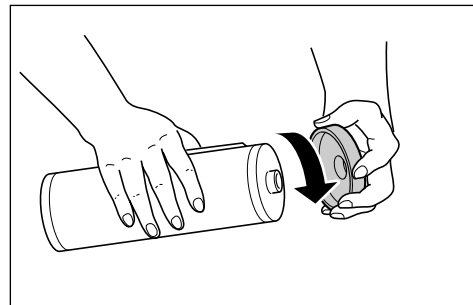
- For collection or disposal of used Ink Cartridges, refer to the following page. ☞ p.252

## Note:

- Dispose the empty Ink Cartridge according to the disposal rule of your local community.

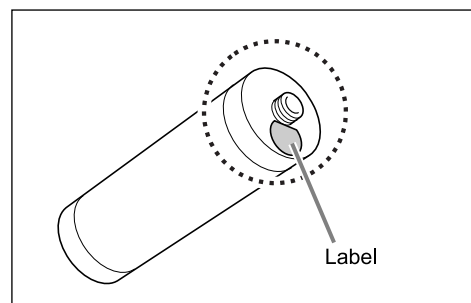
## 3 Remove the cap on the new Ink Cartridge.

Turn the Ink Cartridge cap to remove.



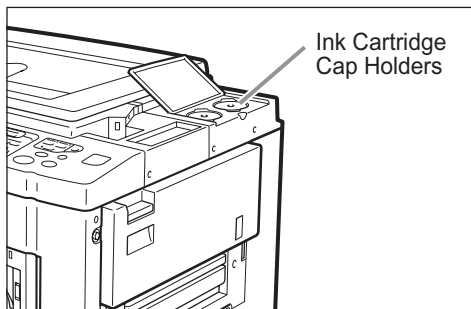
## Important!:

- Do not touch or give impact to the outlet surface of the new Ink Cartridge.  
Do not peel off the label beside the Ink Cartridge opening.

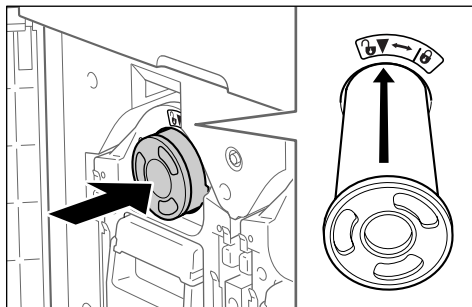


**Note:**

- You can store the Ink cartridge cap on the right side of the glass platen.

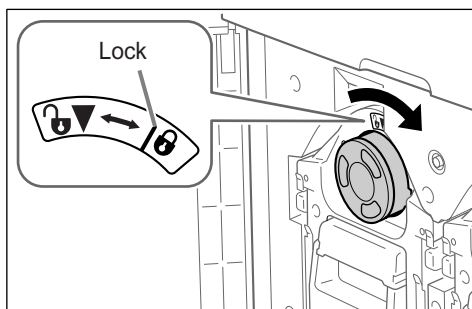


**4 Insert the new Ink Cartridge.**



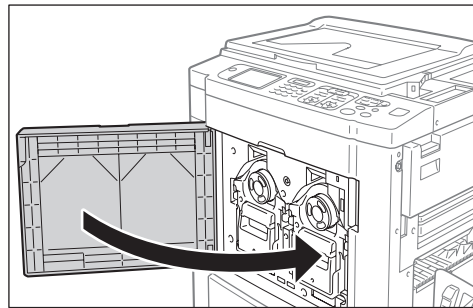
Align the arrow on the Ink Cartridge to the ▼ mark on the Print Drum (Cylinder) unit, and insert until it stops.

**5 Lock the Ink Cartridge.**



Turn the Ink Cartridge clockwise (🔒) and lock in position.

**6 Close the Front Cover.**





# Emptying the Master Disposal Box

Used masters are held in the Master Disposal Box. When the Master Disposal Box becomes full, a message displays and the machine stops. Discard the used masters.

## ⚠ Caution:

- Wash immediately with soap if you should get Ink on your hands, etc..

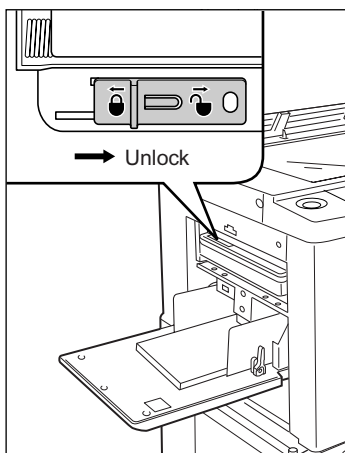
## Important!:

- The Master Disposal Box can be padlocked to prevent the information contained in the discarded master being leaked. If the Master Disposal Box is safely protected by the padlock, be sure to contact the administrator before discarding the master.
- When “Protect” is ON, you can remove the Master Disposal Box only when the messages such as “Master Disposal Box is Full” or “Master Jammed in Disposal Unit” are displayed. [p.207](#)

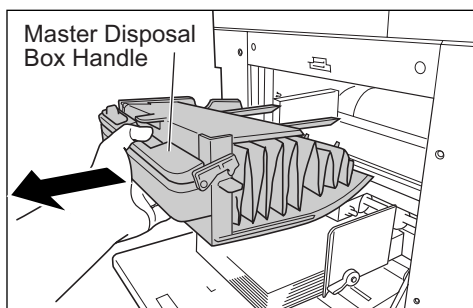
This machine has two master disposal boxes, one for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and one for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2. The procedures are same for both. The master disposal box for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is explained here.

## 1 Remove the Master Disposal Box.

If the Master Disposal Box lever is locked, slide the lever to the right to unlock.



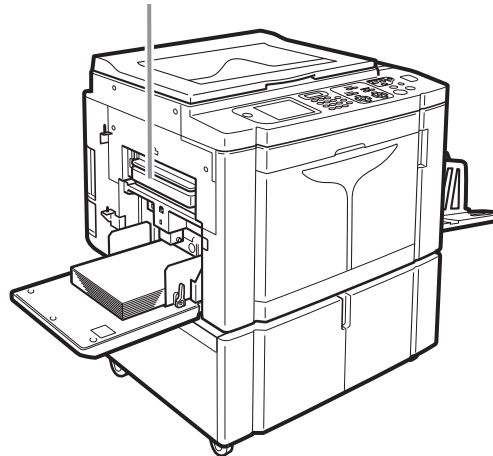
Grasp the Master Disposal Box handle and pull the box forward.



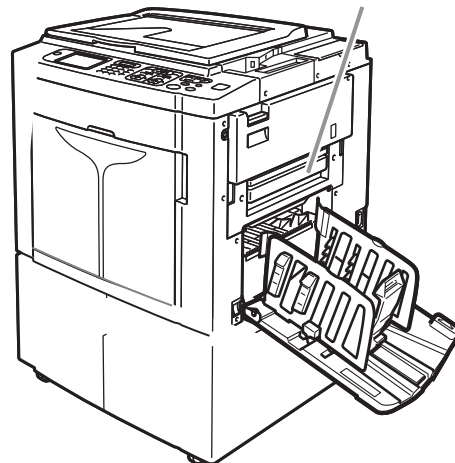
## Important!:

- If the Master Disposal Box is padlocked, contact the administrator to undo it.

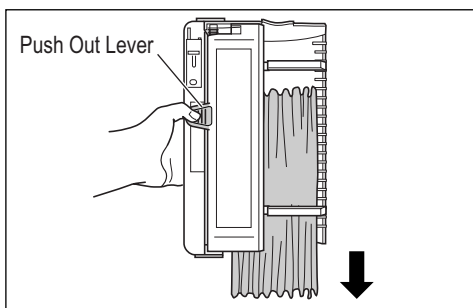
Master Disposal Box for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1



Master Disposal Box for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2

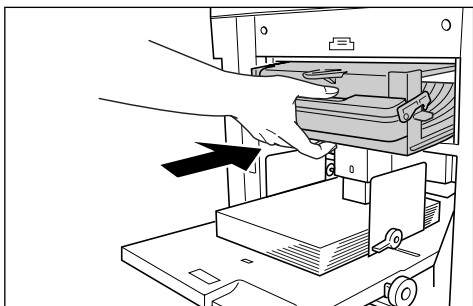


## 2 Discard the ejected masters.



Tilt the Master Disposal Box forward and directly discard the used master into the garbage box (or bag) by grasping the Push Out Lever.

## 3 Place the Master Disposal Box into position.



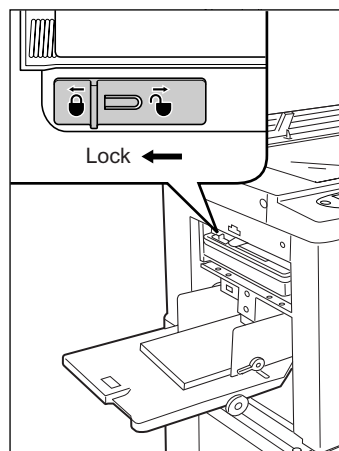
Insert the Master Disposal Box until it stops.

### Important!

- Dispose the ejected masters according to the disposal rule of your local community.  
☞ p.252

### Note:

- If necessary, slide the lever to the left to lock the Master Disposal Box and also have the padlock for further safety.  
☞ p.207



# Replacing the Print Drum (Cylinder)

When replacing with a Color Drum (Cylinder) to change colors, or when removing jammed paper, follow the steps to remove Print Drum (Cylinder). Be sure to use a Color Drum (Cylinder) specifically designed and approved for use with this machine.

## ⚠ Caution:

- Do not stand the Print Drum (Cylinder) upright. Doing so may stain the floor, etc..

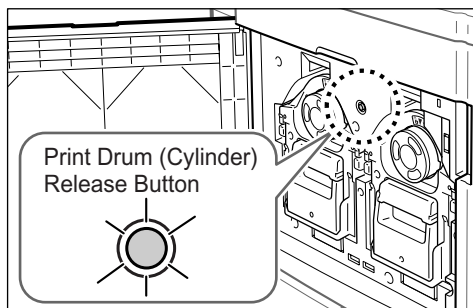
## Important!:

- Use only Print Drums (Cylinders) specifically designed and approved for use with this machine.
- Keep the power ON while removing or replacing the Print Drum (Cylinder).
- Make sure to place the changed Print Drum (Cylinder) into the Print Drum (Cylinder) case and store horizontally.

## Removing the Print Drum (Cylinder)

The procedure for changing Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 is the same. The procedure for changing Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is explained here.

- 1 **Open the Front Cover.**
- 2 **Check that the indicator of the Print Drum (Cylinder) Release Button is ON.**

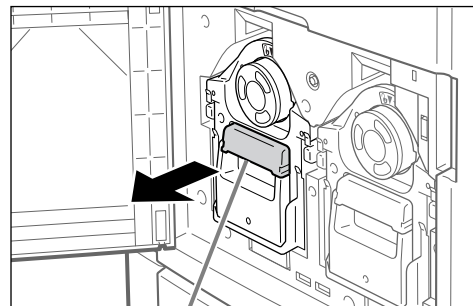


If the indicator is off, press the Print Drum (Cylinder) Release Button to turn it on.

## Important!:

- When the Master Making Unit is out, the Print Drum (Cylinder) cannot be pulled out. Return the Master Making Unit into position and press the Print Drum (Cylinder) Release button.  
☞ p.242

- 3 **Pull out the Print Drum (Cylinder).**

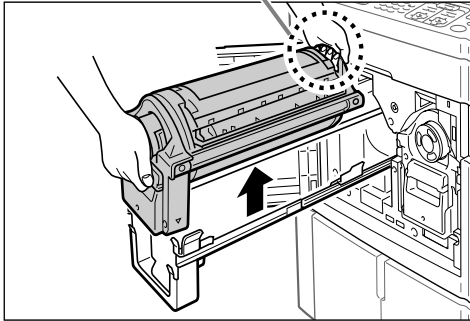


Print Drum (Cylinder) Handle

Grasp the Print Drum (Cylinder) Handle and slowly pull until the Print Drum (Cylinder) is completely extended.

## 4 Remove the Print Drum (Cylinder).

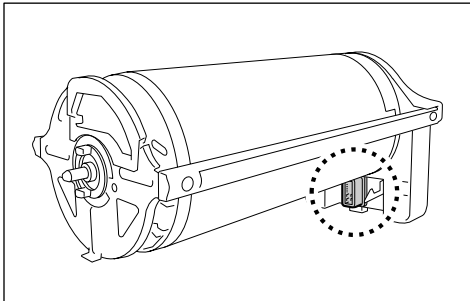
Firmly grasp the Green Handle



Use both hands to lift the Print Drum (Cylinder) straight up to remove from the rail. Proceed with replacing the Print Drum (Cylinder), removing the paper jam, etc..

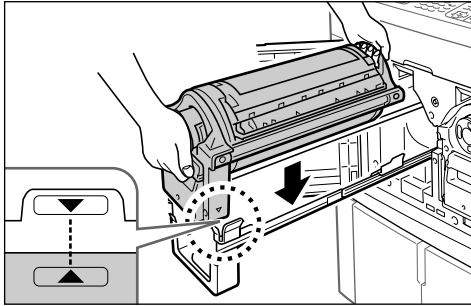
### Important!:

- Do not touch the connector on the Print Drum (Cylinder). Neglecting this may result in malfunction of the Print Drum (Cylinder) because of static electricity or other factors.



# Installing the Print Drum (Cylinder)

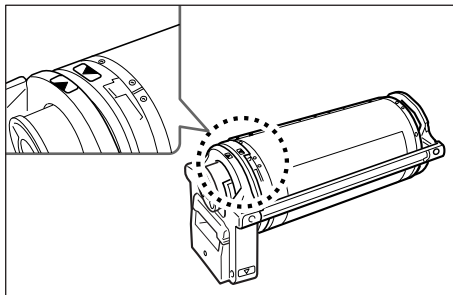
## 1 Place the Print Drum (Cylinder) on the Rail.



Align the ▼ mark on the Print Drum (Cylinder) with the ▲ mark on the guide, and place the Print Drum (Cylinder) horizontally onto the guide.

**Note:**

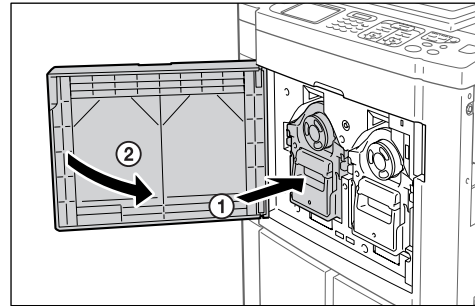
- If the Print Drum (Cylinder) was manually rotated, be sure to turn it back so that ► and ◀ marks align, after it is placed on the guide.



**Important!:**

- You can set the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) only to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.

## 2 Return the Print Drum (Cylinder) to its original position.



Push the Print Drum (Cylinder) in as far as it will go, and then close the Front Cover.

**Important!:**

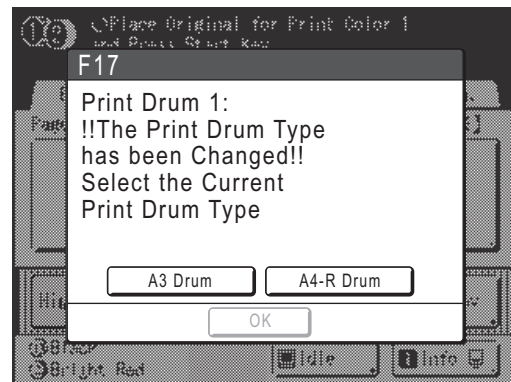
- Do not grasp the Print Drum (Cylinder) Handle when pushing in the Print Drum (Cylinder).

**Tip:**

**When changing the Print Drum (Cylinder) type**

When you change the Print Drum (Cylinder) type, the "Print Drum (Cylinder) Type Confirmation" Screen is displayed.

Confirm the Print Drum (Cylinder) type with the following procedure.



- 1) Touch the type of the Print Drum (Cylinder) that was set.
- 2) Touch [OK].  
The Print Drum (Cylinder) type is confirmed and printing is possible.

**Important!:**

- You cannot print until the Print Drum (Cylinder) type is confirmed.

# Disposal of Depleted Consumables

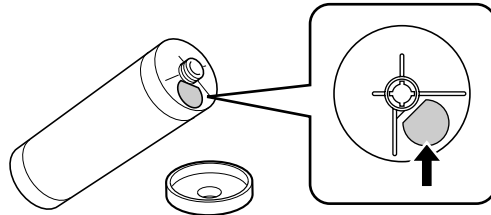
Dispose of depleted Ink Cartridges, Master cores, ejected masters according to the regulations in your local community.

If required, separate the specific components using the following procedures to dispose them properly.

## ◆ Ink Cartridge

Remove the label (metal included) at the arrow from the outlet surface of the Ink Cartridge, and then dispose them separately.

Because Ink may have adhered to the outlet surface of the Ink Cartridge, be careful not to smudge your clothes.

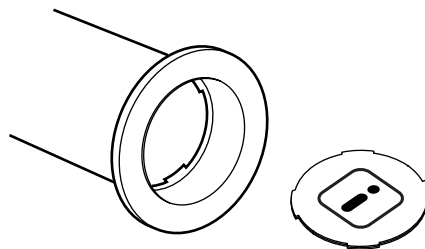


Parts	Materials
Ink Cartridge material	plastic (polypropylene/polyethylene)
Label material	plastic (metal included)
Ink	Soy oil, petroleum hydrocarbons, water, pigments

## ◆ Master core

A metallic component has been attached to the bottom of the end section having the  mark stamped.

Because the component section has been perforated for cutout convenience, tear along the perforation for proper disposal.



Parts	Materials
Core material	Paper
Master material	plastic, Japanese paper
Material of the cutout component	plastic (metal included) and paper

**◆ Ejected Master**

Parts	Materials
Master material	plastic, Japanese paper
Ink material	Soy oil, petroleum hydrocarbons, water, pigments

**Note:**

- It is made of carbon and hydrogen compounds. If fully combusted, it will turn into water and carbon dioxide.



# Maintenance

## Cleaning

The print quality may suffer if parts such as Thermal Print Head of the Master Making Unit, Scanner Glass of the optional ADF unit, White Roller, etc. are contaminated with dust, dirt, Ink, white-out, etc..

Follow the steps below for periodic cleaning.

### **⚠ WARNING:**

- Before cleaning any part of the machine, turn off the power.
- Do not remove any fixed covers.
- Contact your service representative immediately if you suspect any dangerous situations or have questions or problems with the machine.
- Contact your service representative before moving the machine.
- Do not allow unauthorized persons to make adjustments or repairs.

### **⚠ Caution:**

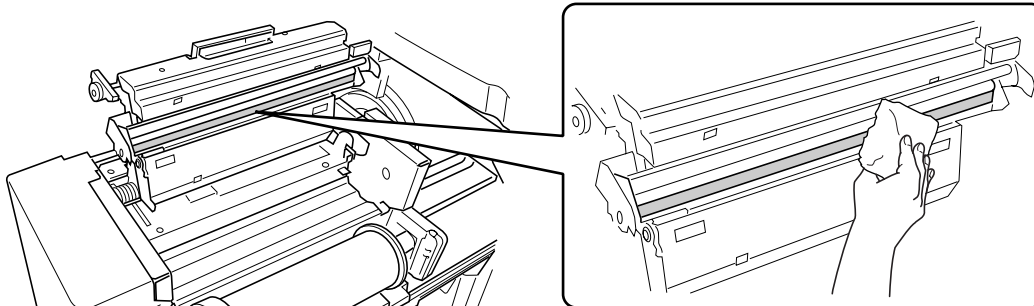
- The machine has precision moving parts inside. Do not handle the machine in any other way than described in this manual.
- Be careful of the edge of metal parts, otherwise it may cause an injury.
- Do not make any modifications to the machine or remove any parts.
- Neither Riso nor its dealer (or authorized service representative) is responsible for maintenance service performed by non-Riso-authorized personnel.



## Thermal Print Head

Clean the Thermal Print Head each time you replace the Master Roll.

Open the Master Making Unit Cover, and gently wipe the Thermal Print Head in the back of the unit several times with a soft cloth or tissue.

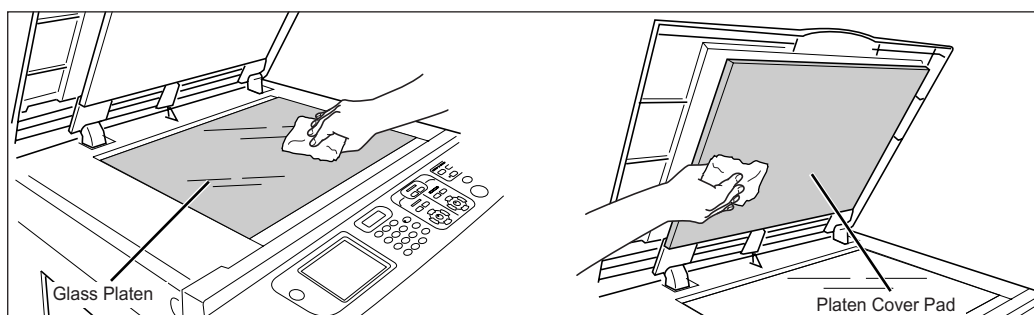


### Important!:

- Since the Thermal Print Head is very delicate, avoid shocks or scratches with a hard object.
- Since Thermal Print Head is susceptible to (damage by) static electricity, please be sure to remove the static electricity charged in the body before cleaning.

## Glass Platen and Platen Cover Pad

If the Glass Platen and/or Platen Cover Pad is stained, gently wipe them with a soft cloth or tissue.



### Important!:

- Since the Glass Platen is very delicate, avoid shocks or scratches with a hard object.

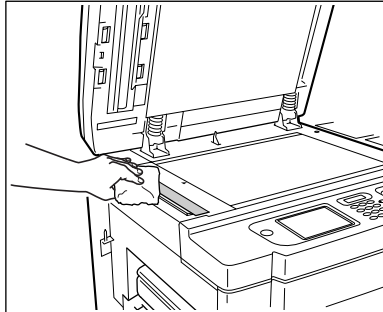
## Scanner Glass and White Sheet of ADF unit (Option)

---

Gently wipe the Scanner Glass, and the White Sheet several times with a soft cloth or tissue.

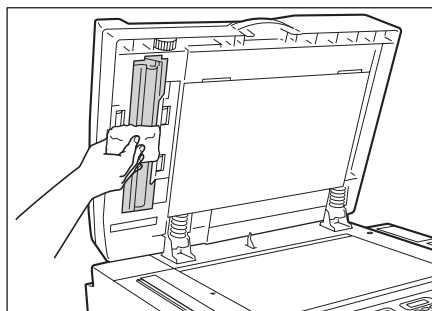
**Note:**

- Since the Glass Platen is very delicate, avoid shocks or scratches with a hard object.



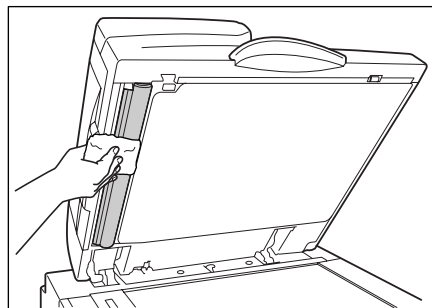
◆ **For the Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II**

Clean while rotating the white roller.



◆ **For the Auto Document Feeder DX-1**

The white Sheet does not rotate.

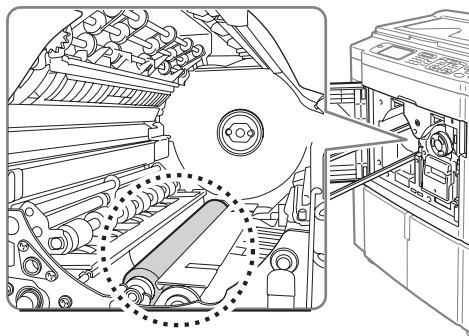


## Pressure Roller

If the Pressure Roller, which presses print paper against the Print Drum (Cylinder), is stained, smudged strips may appear on the back of copies.

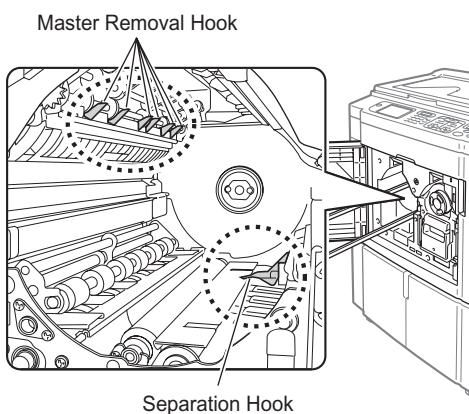
If this happens, gently wipe the Pressure Roller with a soft cloth dampened with alcohol.

To remove the Print Drum (Cylinder), see [p.249](#).



### **⚠ Caution:**

- Be sure to turn OFF power to the machine when cleaning the Pressure Roller.
- The tips of the paper separation hook and master removal hook are sharp. When you insert a hand inside the machine to remove paper, be careful not to touch the paper separation hook or master removal hook. This may cause injury.
- Ink may be left on the area near the Print Drum (Cylinder), so take care not to smudge your hands or clothes. Wash immediately with soap if you should get Ink on your hands, etc..

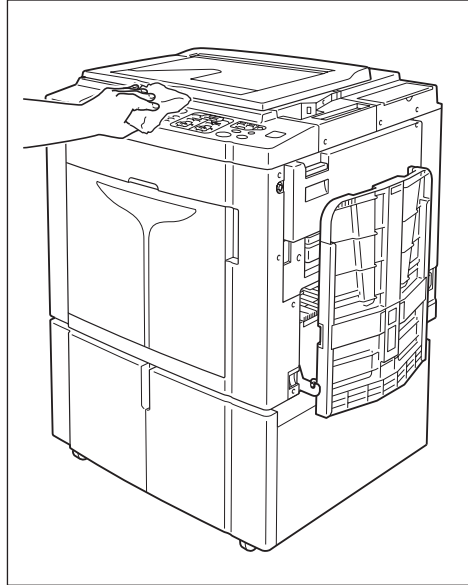


## The Exterior

---

Use a soft cloth to gently wipe down the entire printer on a regular basis in order to prevent the exterior from getting dirty.

If using a cleaning agent, use one recommended by your authorized service representative.



### **Important!:**

- Because the machine exterior is plastic, never use alcohol or solvent when cleaning.
- The Display may be cleaned by gently wiping with a dry cloth. Dampen a cloth with a small amount of cleaner and gently wipe to remove any Ink.  
Do not spray or pour cleaner solution directly onto the display. Doing so can cause damage.





# Troubleshooting

## When a Message Displays

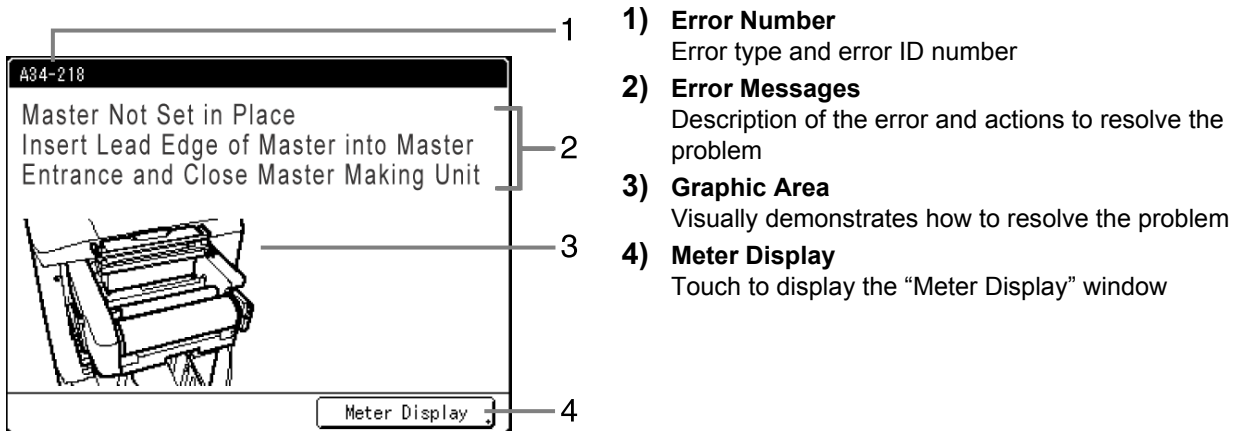
Refer to the following information to determine the cause and take appropriate actions when the machine stops operating and a message is displayed.

### ⚠ Caution:

- The tips of the paper separation hook and master removal hook are sharp. When you insert a hand inside the machine to remove paper, be careful not to touch the paper separation hook or master removal hook. This may cause injury.

## Error Message Layout




A message and a troubleshooting illustration will be displayed in accordance with the message type to show how to resolve the problem.





- 1) Error Number**  
Error type and error ID number
- 2) Error Messages**  
Description of the error and actions to resolve the problem
- 3) Graphic Area**  
Visually demonstrates how to resolve the problem
- 4) Meter Display**  
Touch to display the “Meter Display” window



Error Number	Error Types	Description	Reference page
T00-000	Service Call Errors	Errors that require repair or inspection by an authorized service representative. To resolve a Service Call Error, contact your dealer (or authorized service representative) with the error number.	☞ p.261
A00-000	Jam Errors	Displays when the master is jammed, etc..	☞ p.261
B00-000	Optional Device Errors	Displays when an error occurs on the optional device.	☞ p.263
C00-000	Consumable Errors	Displays when a consumable such as Ink or master roll is depleted.	☞ p.264
D00-000	Installation Errors	Displays when a part or unit is not properly installed.	☞ p.264
J00-000	Paper Jam Errors	Displays when an original document or printing paper is jammed.	☞ p.267

**T00-000:Service Call Errors (in alphabetical order)**

Message	Possible Cause	Action
!!Battery Replacement!! Call Service	The battery is low or depleted.	Contact your dealer (or authorized service representative) and have the battery replaced. Press the  key or the  key to clear the error message display.
!!System Error!! Press Reset Key If Recovery has Failed, Call Service	A system error has occurred.	Press the  key. If the problem persists, contact your dealer (or authorized service representative).
!!System Error!! Turn Main Power SW OFF Then ON If Recovery has Failed, Call Service		Shut off power, then restart. If the problem persists, contact your dealer (or authorized service representative).

**A00-000:Jam Errors (in alphabetical order)**

Message	Possible Cause	Action
Master Disposal Error Pull Out Print Drum (Cylinder) and Discard Master	The master was not properly discarded.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Pull out the Print Drum (Cylinder) and remove the master from the Print Drum (Cylinder). If a master is not wrapped around the Print Drum (Cylinder), check the disposal unit and remove the master. ☞ p.249</li> <li>2) Return the Print Drum (Cylinder) in place.</li> <li>3) Press the  key.</li> </ol>
Master Jammed in Disposal Unit Pull Out Master Disposal Box and Remove Jammed Master	The master is jammed in the Master Disposal Unit.	Pull out the Master Disposal Box and remove the jammed master. If the masters are difficult to remove, pull out the Print Drum (Cylinder) and then remove. ☞ p.247 ☞ p.249 If the error persists, contact your dealer (or authorized service representative).
Master Loading Error Pull Out Print Drum (Cylinder) and Discard Master	The master is not properly attached to the Print Drum (Cylinder).	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Pull out the Print Drum (Cylinder) and remove the master from the Print Drum (Cylinder). ☞ p.249</li> <li>2) Return the Print Drum (Cylinder) in place.</li> <li>3) Press the  key.</li> </ol>
Master Mis-Feed Pull Out Master Making Unit and Rewind Master Roll, then Reset Master in Place	The master is improperly installed.	Pull out the Master Making Unit, rewind the master and reinstall. ☞ p.242

Message	Possible Cause	Action
<p>Master Not Set in Place Insert Lead Edge of Master into Master Entrance and Close Master Making Unit</p>	<p>The master is improperly installed or is missing.</p>	<p>Pull out the Master Making Unit and reinstall the master. ☞ p.242</p> <p><b>Important!:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the leading edge of the master is wrinkled or torn, cut the edge straight and reinstall.</li> </ul>
<p>Master Remains on Print Drum (Cylinder) Pull Out Print Drum (Cylinder) and Remove Master</p>	<p>An unnecessary master remains on the Print Drum (Cylinder).</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1)</b> Pull out the Print Drum (Cylinder) and remove the master from the Print Drum (Cylinder). ☞ p.249</li> <li><b>2)</b> Return the Print Drum (Cylinder) in place.</li> <li><b>3)</b> Press the  key.</li> </ol>
<p>Paper Jam Remove Paper in Indicated Areas and Press [OK] Button</p>	<p>Paper jammed in indicated area.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1)</b> Remove the jammed paper.</li> <li><b>2)</b> Press the  key or touch [OK].</li> </ol>
<p>Safety SW on Standard Feed Tray is Activated Reset paper on Standard Feed Tray</p>	<p>The safety switch for the Paper Feed Tray has been activated.</p>	<p>Check underneath the Paper Feed Tray and on top of the printing paper for any obstructions. Remove if any exists.</p>
<p>System Error in Master Making Unit Take Out Master and then Close Master Making Unit Cover</p>	<p>The cutter mechanism for the master malfunctioned.</p>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>1)</b> Pull out the Master Making Unit and remove the master. ☞ p.242</li> <li><b>2)</b> Closing the Master Making Unit Cover will reset the error. Setup the master again.</li> </ol>



**B00-000:Optional Device Errors (in alphabetical order)**

Message	Possible Cause	Action
Can not identify	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Something other than a USB Flash Drive is connected to the USB slot.</li> <li>• A defective USB Flash Drive is connected to the USB slot.</li> <li>• A USB Flash Drive not recognized by this machine is connected to the USB slot.</li> </ul>	Connect a USB Flash Drive for this machine. ☞ p.13
Can not identify (USB hub)	A USB hub is connected to the USB slot.	Connect the correct corresponding USB Flash Drive. ☞ p.13
Insert Card in Key/Card Counter	No card in the optional Key Card Counter.	Insert Card in the Key Card Counter.
!! Job Separator is OFF !! Turn On Power Switch of it	The optional Job Separator is turned OFF.	Turn on the Job Separator.
No IP Address Assigned to This Printer Contact Your Network Administrator	IP address for the machine is not properly set.	Contact your system administrator and set the machine IP address correctly. ☞ p.169
No Paper Tape in Job Separator Replace Tape Roll	No tape in the optional Job Separator.	Load new tape into the Job Separator.
Paper Tape Jam in Job Separator Remove Paper Tape	Tape jam occurred in the optional Job Separator.	Check the Job Separator and remove jammed tape.
!!System Error!! Turn Main Power SW OFF Then ON If Recovery has Failed, Call Service	A system error has occurred.	Shut off power, then restart. If recovery has failed, contact your dealer (or authorized service representative).




### C00-000:Consumable Errors (in alphabetical order)

Message	Possible Cause	Action
Add Paper	No printing paper in the Paper Feed Tray.	Load paper into the Paper Feed Tray. ☞ p.38
Master Disposal Box 1 and 2 are Full Empty Both Master Disposal Boxes	The Master Disposal Box is full.	Empty the Master Disposal Box. See “Emptying the Master Disposal Box” ☞ p.247
Master Disposal Box is Full Empty Master Disposal Box	The Master Disposal Box is full.	Empty the Master Disposal Box. ☞ p.247
No Ink Replace Ink Cartridge	The Ink is depleted.	Replace and install a new Ink Cartridge. Use the Ink Cartridge specifically designed and approved for use with this machine. ☞ p.245  <b>Important!:</b> • If the error persists after replacing the Ink Cartridge, check for proper installation of the Ink Cartridge.
No Master Replace Master Roll	The Master Roll is depleted.	Install a new Master Roll. Use Master Roll specifically designed and approved for use with this machine. ☞ p.242

### D00-000:Installation Errors (in alphabetical order)

Message	Possible Cause	Action
Close Front Cover	The Front Cover is open or improperly closed.	Check for the magnet underneath the Front Cover and firmly close.
Close Master Making Unit Removal Cover	The Master Making Unit Removal Cover is open or is improperly installed.	Check the Master Making Unit Removal Cover and close it firmly.
Close Master Making Unit Cover	The Master Making Unit Cover is open or is improperly installed.	Pull out the Master Making Unit, check and firmly close its cover.
Close the ADF Cover	Optional Auto Document Feeder DX-1 cover is open or incorrectly set.	Check the ADF Cover and close it firmly.
Dual-Color Job Data Received Set Print Drum (Cylinder) in Place	The proper Print Drum (Cylinder) with specified color is not installed.	Check the color and install a correct Print Drum (Cylinder).
Install Ink Cartridge	The Ink Cartridge is improperly installed or is missing.	Properly install the Ink Cartridge. ☞ p.245

Message	Possible Cause	Action
Master Making Unit has been Unlocked	The Master Making Unit is ready to be pulled out.	Pull out the Master Making Unit.
Print Drum (Cylinder) has been Unlocked	The Print Drum (Cylinder) is ready to be pulled out.	Pull out the Print Drum (Cylinder).
Print Drum (Cylinder) Not Set in Place Press Drum (Cylinder) Release Button and Pull Out Print Drum (Cylinder) after the Button Lights	The Print Drum (Cylinder) is locked but not pushed in properly.	Press the Print Drum (Cylinder) Release Button. Remove the Print Drum (Cylinder) after the button is lit and reinstall.
Ready to Open Master Making Unit Removal Cover	Master Making Unit Removal Cover is ready to be opened.	Open the Master Making Unit Removal Cover.
Rear Cover of Main Body is Off Call Service	The machine rear cover is removed.	Contact your dealer (or authorized service representative).
Set Master Disposal Box in Place	The Master Disposal Box is improperly set or is missing.	Properly set the Master Disposal Box. ☞ p.247
Set Master in Place	No master is installed.	Install a Master Roll. ☞ p.242
Set Master Making Unit in Place	The Master Making Unit is missing or is improperly installed.	Properly install the Master Making Unit. ☞ p.242
Set Print Drum (Cylinder) in Place	The Print Drum (Cylinder) is improperly set or is missing.	Properly install the Print Drum (Cylinder). ☞ p.249
Wrong-type Ink Cartridge Installed or Cannot Read Ink Info Replace Ink Cartridge or Contact dealer (or authorized service representative)/Riso office	Incorrect type or color of Ink Cartridge is installed.	Properly install a correct Ink Cartridge. ☞ p.245  <b>Important!:</b> • Use the Ink Cartridge specifically designed and approved for use with this machine. Failure to do so may cause problems or damage to the machine.
	The label on the Ink Cartridge outlet surface has come off or surface is with dirt.	The label on the Ink Cartridge outlet surface contains information needed for printing. If the machine cannot read the information, it does not operate. Set an Ink Cartridge that is specific to the machine and that is with label attachment and free from dirt.

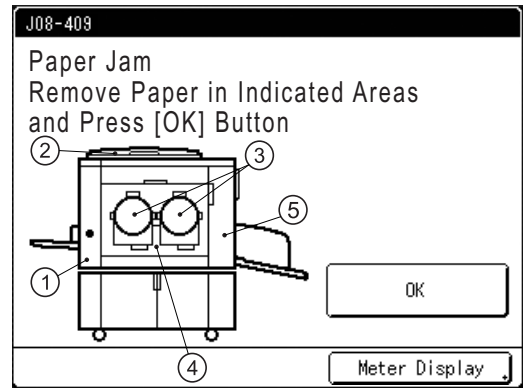
Message	Possible Cause	Action
<p>Wrong-type Master Installed or Cannot Read Master Info Replace Master Roll or Contact dealer (or authorized service representative)/Riso office</p>	<p>Incorrect type of master is installed.</p>	<p>Set a correct Master Roll. ☞ p.242</p> <p><b>Important!:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a Master Roll specifically designed and approved for use with this machine. Failure to do so may cause problems or damage to the machine.</li> </ul>
	<p>The  section on the master core is missing, or it has worn off, or it has been tilted.</p>	<p>The  section on the master core contains information needed for making masters. If the machine cannot read the information, it does not operate. Set a dedicated Master Roll that has the  mark and is free from wear and tilt.</p>
<p>Wrong-Type Print Drum (Cylinder) Installed Replace with Correct Type</p>	<p>Incorrect Print Drum (Cylinder) installed or A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.</p>	<p>Install a correct Print Drum (Cylinder). ☞ p.249</p> <p><b>Important!:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use a Print Drum (Cylinder) specifically designed and approved for use with this machine. Failure to do so may cause problems or damage to the machine.</li> </ul>

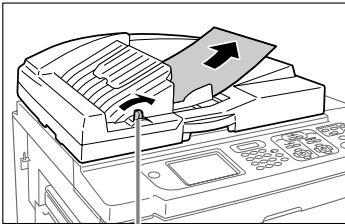
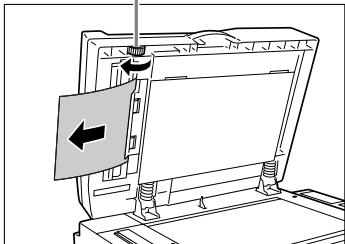
## J00-000:Paper Jam Error

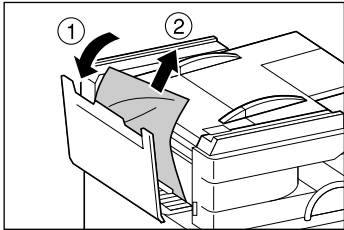
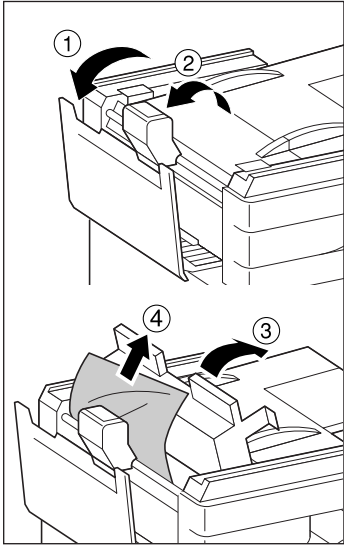
Displays when the original document or printing paper is jammed inside the machine, the optional ADF unit or Sorter. The location of the paper jam is indicated by the flashing icon ( ① - ⑤ ) in the illustration. Refer to the table below ( ① - ⑤ ) and resolve the issue as indicated.

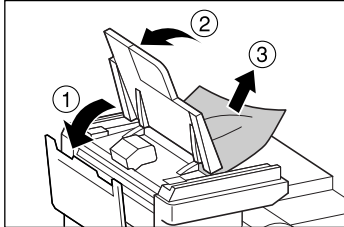
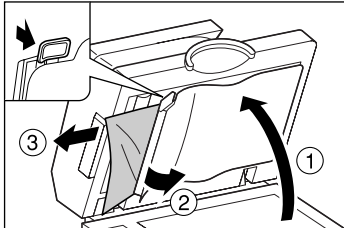
**Note:**

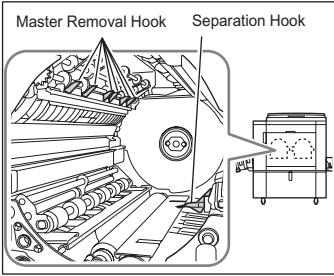
- Use appropriate printing paper to prevent paper jams. Also select appropriate original document suitable for the optional ADF unit.
  - ☞ p.16
  - ☞ p.18



Area Indicated/ Blinking	Possible Cause	Action
①	Paper is jammed in the Paper Feed area.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Check the paper feed side and remove the jammed paper.</li> <li>2) Touch [OK].</li> </ol> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When using special paper, adjust the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever according to the paper characteristics. ☞ p.38</li> </ul>
②	The original is jammed in the optional ADF unit.	<p>◆ <b>For Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II</b></p> <p><b>Removing in the document insertion direction</b> Pull the ADF Original Release Lever to the right, and remove the original.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">ADF Original Release Lever</p> <p><b>Removing in the document ejection direction</b> Raise Platen Cover, turn the ADF Original Release Dial and remove the original.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">Original Release Dial</p>

Area Indicated/ Blinking	Possible Cause	Action
<p style="text-align: center;">②</p>	<p>The original is jammed in the optional ADF unit.</p>	<p>◆ <b>For Auto Document Feeder DX-1</b></p> <p><b>Important!</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take care not to touch the roller inside the unit. It may cause smudges on the original or a paper jam.</li> </ul> <p><b>Removing originals jammed in the document feeder</b>            Open the ADF Cover ( ① ), and pull out the original ( ② ).</p>  <p><b>Removing originals jammed in the document carrier</b>            Open the ADF Cover ( ① ), and raise the feed roller as shown ( ② ).            Open the inside cover ( ③ ), and pull out the original ( ④ ).</p> 

Area Indicated/ Blinking	Possible Cause	Action
<p>②</p>	<p>The original is jammed in the optional ADF unit.</p>	<p>◆ <b>For Auto Document Feeder DX-1</b></p> <p><b>Removing originals jammed in the duplex document carrier</b>            Open the ADF Cover (①), and raise the document tray as shown (②).            Pull out the original (③).</p>  <p><b>Removing originals jammed in the original receiving unit</b>            Lift the Platen Cover Pad up (①), pull the release lever toward you (②), and pull out the original (③).</p> 

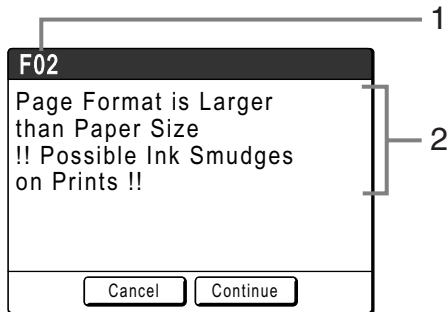
Area Indicated/ Blinking	Possible Cause	Action
<p>③ ④</p>	<p>Paper is jammed in the Print Drum (Cylinder) area.</p>	<p><b>1)</b> Pull out the Print Drum (Cylinder). ☞ p.249</p> <p><b>2)</b> Remove the jammed paper.</p> <p><b>3)</b> Return the Print Drum (Cylinder) in place.</p> <p><b>4)</b> Touch <b>[OK]</b>.</p> <p><b>⚠ Caution:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The tips of the paper separation hook and master removal hook are sharp. When you insert a hand inside the machine to remove paper, be careful not to touch the paper separation hook or master removal hook. This may cause injury.</li> </ul>  <p>The diagram shows a cross-section of the printer's internal mechanism. It highlights two specific components: the 'Master Removal Hook' and the 'Separation Hook'. The Master Removal Hook is a large, curved metal piece located near the print drum. The Separation Hook is a smaller, more complex hook-like structure positioned to separate paper from the drum. Both hooks have sharp tips, as indicated by the caution note.</p>
<p>⑤</p>	<p>Paper did not eject correctly.</p>	<p><b>1)</b> Check for any jammed paper on the paper exit area.</p> <p><b>2)</b> Touch <b>[OK]</b>.</p> <p><b>Note:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using special paper, adjust the Paper Arranger on the Receiving Tray Paper Guides according to the paper characteristics. ☞ p.40</li> </ul>



# Pop-Up Message Layout

Pop-Up Messages communicates various operational statuses.





You can continue operation over some of them, but depending upon the context, others will require your action before operations can be resumed.














- 1) **Error Number**  
A reference letter (E/F) and an ID number.
- 2) **Pop-Up Messages**  
Content of the message.








Error Number	Error Types	Description	Reference page
E00-000	Maintenance Call	Pops up when battery replacement or a routine inspection by a service personnel is required.	p.271
F00-000	Warning Messages	Pops up when printing job cannot proceed due to a conflict between a Control Panel setting and the status of the machine.	p.272










## E00-000:Maintenance Call (in alphabetical order)















Message	Symptom/Action	How to clear a Pop-Up Message
!!Battery Replacement!! Call Service	(Symptom) Low battery.  (Action) Contact your dealer (or authorized service representative) and have the battery replaced.	Touch <b>[Close]</b> . (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)
!!Maintenance!! Call Service	(Symptom) Notifies user about the need for a periodic maintenance.  (Action) Consult your dealer (or authorized service representative).	Touch <b>[Close]</b> . (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)








**F00-000:Warning Message (in alphabetical order)**













Message	Symptom/Action	How to clear a Pop-Up Message
<p>Auto Page Size Selection is Not Available for Irregular-Size Original Select Format Size to Store and then Restart</p>	<p>(Cause 1) Attempting to scan an irregular-size original using “Auto” in scanning mode.</p> <p>(Action) Select the original size manually.</p> <p>(Cause 2) A normal-size original has been set in the wrong position.</p> <p>(Action) Lift the Platen Cover Pad up and set the original correctly.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>To specify the format for saving</b> Touch <b>[Saving Format]</b>.</li> <li>• <b>To cancel scanning</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
<p>!! Book Shadow Editor is Not Available with ADF !! Place Original on Glass Platen</p>	<p>(Symptom) ADF unit is disabled while Book Shadow function is active.</p> <p>(Action) Place the original on the Glass Platen. ☞ p.92</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>Can not use this setting with current paper Set the appropriate standard sized paper on the feeding tray</p>	<p>(Symptom) Binding margin function cannot be used when custom-sized paper is in the Paper Feed Tray.</p> <p>(Action) Load standard size paper in the Paper Feed Tray.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>Check the Settings The Selected Reproduction Ratio will not fit the Max. Printing Area</p>	<p>(Symptom) Reproduction size is too large for the detected original size and exceeds the maximum printing area.</p> <p>(Action) Modify the reproduction size, or set printing paper of the appropriate size.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When changing the “Size” setting:</b> Touch <b>[Size Setting]</b>.</li> <li>• <b>When resuming the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to print.)</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
<p>Close Platen Cover  If original moves you may not get desired result</p>	<p>(Symptom) The Platen Cover was opened during the editing process of the RISO Editor function.</p> <p>(Action) Close the Platen Cover gently.</p>	<p>When the Platen Cover is closed, the warning message is erased. Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>











Message	Symptom/Action	How to clear a Pop-Up Message
<p>!! Complicated Area Form !! Re-circle Editing Areas and Redo Color Separation</p>	<p>(Symptom) The shape of the selected area is too complicated to recognize.</p> <p>(Action) Do not overlap the pen areas. If the edges touch, the specified area may not be recognized. Make the shape of the area as simple as possible. ☞ p.104</p>	<p>Touch <b>[OK]</b>.</p>
<p>Dual-Color Printing is Not Available for This Paper Size Load Paper Larger than B5(Portrait)</p>	<p>(Symptom) This machine cannot perform Dual-Color printing on paper smaller than B5 size.</p> <p>(Action) Load paper with vertical dimension larger than that of B5 (257 mm (10<sup>1</sup>/<sub>8</sub>")).</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>Either of Masters is Made in Ink Saving Process Operate Dual-Color Printing?</p>	<p>(Symptom) One of the masters on either Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 or Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 was created in "Ink Saving" mode, while the other master is of regular printing quality.</p> <p>(Action) Proceeding to print with existing set of masters by simply touching <b>[Continue]</b> button will result in poor color balance, i.e., one of the colors may be too dark or too light.</p> <p>To correct this problem, touch <b>[Cancel]</b> and create another set of masters in the same mode.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When printing from the machine:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to print.)</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
<p>!! Exceeding Number of Editing Areas Selected !! Deselect Some Areas and Redo Color Separation</p>	<p>(Symptom) Too many areas are selected.</p> <p>(Action) Up to 20 pen areas may be selected. Reduce number of selected areas.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[OK]</b>.</p>
<p>!! Layout is not available with this paper size !! Replace with proper paper of standard size</p>	<p>(Symptom) Layout functions cannot be used when custom-sized papers are set in the Paper Feed Tray.</p> <p>(Action) Load standard size paper in the Paper Feed Tray. ☞ p.38</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>

Message	Symptom/Action	How to clear a Pop-Up Message
!! Multi-Up is Not Available with This Paper Size !! Replace with Proper Paper of Standard Size	(Symptom) Multi-Up functions cannot be used when custom-sized papers are set in the Paper Feed Tray.  (Action) Load standard size paper in the Paper Feed Tray. ☞ p.38	Touch <b>[Close]</b> . (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)
!! No Auto Reproduction Size Selection with This Combination of Original and Printing Paper !! Select Size Manually	(Symptom) With the size of set original and printing paper, auto reproduction cannot be performed.  (Action) Modify the reproduction size.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When changing the “Size” setting:</b> Touch <b>[Size Setting]</b>.</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
!! No Auto Reproduction with This Original and Printing Paper !! Select Size Manually	(Symptom) Auto reproduction is not available because the size of the original could not be detected.  (Action) Set the reproduction-size manually.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When changing the “Size” setting:</b> Touch <b>[Size Setting]</b>.</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
No Master on Print Drum (Cylinder) Make a New Master	(Symptom) You are attempting to print, but there is no master on the Print Drum (Cylinder).  (Action) Set the original and create a master.	Touch <b>[Close]</b> . Set the original and create a master.  <b>Important!:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not leave the Print Drum (Cylinder) without a master. This dries out the Print Drum (Cylinder) and causes damage. You must either create a master or perform a “Confidential” operation to wrap a master around the Print Drum (Cylinder).</li> </ul>
Original size exceeds limitation of layout Specify the original size	(Symptom) “Layout” is not available for the original size.  (Action) Specify the original size. ☞ p.88	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When changing the “Original Size” setting:</b> Touch <b>[Original Size]</b>.</li> <li>• <b>When resuming the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to print.)</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>










Message	Symptom/Action	How to clear a Pop-Up Message
<p>Original Size Exceeds Limitation of Multi-Up Specify Original Size</p>	<p>(Symptom) “Multi-up” is not available for the original size.</p> <p>(Action) Specify the original size. ☞ p.77</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When changing the “Original Size” setting:</b> Touch <b>[Original Size]</b>.</li> <li>• <b>When resuming the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to print.)</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
<p>Original Undetected Reset Original</p>	<p>(Symptom) The machine failed to detect the original document. The original document may not be placed.</p> <p>(Action) Re-position the original.</p>	<p>Re-position the original to clear the Pop-Up Message.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When resuming the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to print.)</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
<p>!! Outlines of Editing Areas are Too Long !! Divide Large Areas into Several Smaller Areas and Redo Color Separation</p>	<p>(Symptom) Selected area is larger than the print paper size.</p> <p>(Action) Make the area smaller or designate the areas by dividing the area into several smaller areas.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[OK]</b>.</p>
<p>Page Format is Larger than Paper Size !! Possible Ink Smudges on Prints !!</p>	<p>(Symptom) The printing paper is smaller than the Master.</p> <p>(Action) Load the correct size printer paper.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>To override the message and to print with possible Ink smears on the roller:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (You can also print by pressing the  key or the  key.)</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (You can also stop by pressing the  key or the  key.)</li> </ul>
<p>Please inform this message to your administrator Due date for ID counter report</p>	<p>(Symptom) Due date for ID Counter Report.</p> <p>(Action) Report to your administrator. ☞ p.186</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>!! Possible Multiple Paper Feed !! Check Printed Copies</p>	<p>Check the printed copies.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>To clear D-Feed Check:</b> Touch <b>[D-Check OFF]</b> to change from being highlighted (b/w) to the normal display.</li> </ul>

Message	Symptom/Action	How to clear a Pop-Up Message
<p>Printer Temperature is Low “High Speed” is Not Available</p>	<p>(Symptom) When the temperature of use is low, you cannot use “High Speed”.</p> <p>(Action) Use the printer at the normal print speed until the temperature inside the printer increases to 15°C (59°F) or higher. When you touch “Continue”, printing at the normal speed starts. When you touch “Cancel”, the Printing Basic Screen appears.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When resuming the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to print.)</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
<p>Printing is Not Available for This Paper Size with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 Set Print Drum (Cylinder) to be Used in Drum (Cylinder) Position 1 and Re-select Printing Mode</p>	<p>(Symptom) Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 may be used for single color printing, but only on certain paper sizes. Currently loaded paper size does not support single color printing with Drum (Cylinder) 2.</p> <p>(Action) Remove Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 from its current position, and replace it in place of Print Drum (Cylinder) 1. See p.16 for paper size limitation when printing single color using Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>Printing is Not Available for This Setting with Print Drum 2 Set Print Drum to be Used in Drum Position 1 and Re-select Printing Mode</p>	<p>(Symptom) Attempting to print Mono-Color by Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.</p> <p>(Action) Remove Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 and insert it on the Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 side.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>Processing Other Operation  Retry after a while</p>	<p>(Symptom) Color separation cannot be performed while system is busy processing another operation.</p> <p>(Action) Please wait until the current operation is completed.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[OK]</b>.</p>
<p>Processing Print Data from PC This Function is Not Available while Processing Current Data</p>	<p>(Symptom) The machine is receiving the document data from the computer. While the data is being transmitted, Scan mode is disabled.</p> <p>(Action) Initiate the Print job after the transmission is complete, or print from the machine.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>.</p>

Message	Symptom/Action	How to clear a Pop-Up Message
<p>-- Protect --</p> <p>Discard Current Master</p>	<p>(Symptom) "Protect" function is set to ON.</p> <p>(Action) Perform "Confidential" if necessary . p.207</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>To set the "Confidential":</b> Touch <b>[OK]</b>.</li> <li>• <b>To cancel the "Confidential":</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>.</li> </ul>
<p>Reached to the limit count Contact the administrator</p>	<p>(Symptom) The upper limit for master-making/ printing set by the administrator was reached.</p> <p>(Action) Contact your Administrator.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>Set Original and Press Start Key Re-scanning will be Started to Add Image Processing</p>	<p>(Symptom) No original is set on the machine to rescan for image processing by the RISO Editor.</p> <p>(Action) Set the original and scan again.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>! Scanning is Not Possible ! External CI is not Connected or Processing Connection Check Cable Connection</p>	<p>(Symptom) The scanning function is unavailable due to a lost connection with an external controller or because connection processing has not finished.</p> <p>(Action) Check the connection with the external controller.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>Specified Area Separation is Not Available in Combination with ADF Place Original on Glass Platen</p>	<p>(Symptom) The original is set on the optional Auto Document Feeder when setting the Specified Area Separation.</p> <p>(Action) Set the original on the Glass Platen.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>Starting Up Network Card Please Wait a Moment</p>	<p>(Symptom) RISO Network Card is starting up.</p> <p>(Action) Please wait a moment. Alternatively, print from the machine.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p>
<p>!! The Data Storage Area has Become Full !! Clear Old Storage Data</p>	<p>(Symptom) Insufficient free space on the Document Storage Card.</p> <p>(Action) Check the storage data and delete unnecessary jobs.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>For checking the storage memory</b> Touch <b>[Storage Memory]</b>.</li> </ul>


Message	Symptom/Action	How to clear a Pop-Up Message
<p>The file size is too large to store on USB Flash Drive Change the USB Flash Drive or delete some files to make spaces</p>	<p>(Symptom) Insufficient free space on the USB Flash Drive.</p> <p>(Action) Check the USB Flash Drive data and delete unnecessary jobs.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>For checking the USB Flash Drive data:</b> Touch <b>[USB Job List]</b>.</li> </ul>
<p>!! The Number of Storage Data has Become Full !! Clear Old Storage Data in the Selected Folder</p>	<p>(Symptom) The selected folder is full of data.</p> <p>(Action) Check the contents of the folder and delete unnecessary data. Alternatively, select another folder.</p>	<p>Touch <b>[Close]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to stop printing.)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When checking storage data:</b> Touch <b>[Storage Memory]</b>.</li> </ul>
<p>The original size is not consistent with the print paper size Replace the paper with the following paper</p>	<p>(Symptom) The sizes of the original and the print paper do not match.</p> <p>(Action) Set paper with the size displayed in the message.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When resuming the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to print.) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Even if Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is selected, the original is automatically printed using Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 when the original × magnification is a standard size that exceeds the A4 horizontal size.</li> <li>– Even if Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 is selected, the original is automatically printed using Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 when the original × magnification is a standard size within the A4 horizontal size.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
<p>The Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever is set to "CARD" Check if the setting is consistent with paper in the Standard Feed Tray</p>	<p>(Symptom) The "Paper Feed Adjustment" under "Administrator Settings" is set to "Auto", and the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever is at the "CARD" position.</p> <p>(Action) Check the paper and adjust the position of the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever as needed. See "Setting up the Paper Feed Tray and Loading Paper" Step 4.  p.38</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When resuming the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to print.)</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to stop printing.)</li> </ul>



Message	Symptom/Action	How to clear a Pop-Up Message
<p>The Print Drum 1 will reduce the amount of master used. Would you like to make a master with the Print Drum 1?</p>	<p>(Symptom) The A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1. Using Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 allows you to reduce master usage more than making a master with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.</p> <p>(Action) Select a Print Drum (Cylinder) to be used to make the master.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When making a master with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1:</b> Touch <b>[Yes]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to start with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1.)</li> <li>• <b>When making a master with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2:</b> Touch <b>[No]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
<p>!! Unmatched Color -- Data Color and Drum (Cylinder) Color 1 !! Change Print Drum (Cylinder)</p>	<p>(Symptom) The color of the Print Drum (Cylinder) is different from the color specified on printer driver.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To ignore printer driver setting and to print with the color currently installed on the Print Drum (Cylinder), touch <b>[Continue]</b>.</li> <li>• To change color, touch <b>[Cancel]</b> and replace Print Drum (Cylinder).</li> </ul>
<p>!! Unmatched Color -- Data Color and Drum (Cylinder) Color 2 !! Change Print Drum (Cylinder)</p>	<p>(Action) To continue printing in color as is, touch "Continue". Master-making/printing starts with the color of the currently set Print Drum (Cylinder) by disregarding the color designated by the printer driver.</p>	
<p>!! Unmatched Color -- Data Color and Drum (Cylinder) Colors !! Change Print Drums (Cylinders)</p>	<p>To print according to the designation of the printer driver, touch "Cancel" and replace Print Drum (Cylinder).</p>	
<p>!! Unmatched Size-- Current Page and Printing Paper !! Check Paper Size</p>	<p>(Symptom) The original data sent from the computer does not match the print paper size.</p> <p>(Action) Check the print paper size and change paper or size as needed.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When resuming the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Continue]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to print.)</li> <li>• <b>When stopping the print job:</b> Touch <b>[Cancel]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>
<p>With Print Drum 1 image may cut off Would you like to make a master with the Print Drum 2?</p>	<p>(Symptom) The A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) is set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1, but the original exceeds the A4 horizontal size.</p> <p>(Action) Select a Print Drum (Cylinder) to be used to make the master.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When making a master with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2:</b> Touch <b>[Yes]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key to start with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2.)</li> <li>• <b>When making a master with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1:</b> Touch <b>[No]</b>. (Alternatively, press the  key or the  key to clear.)</li> </ul>




## Consumable Information Screen

In order to assure optimum printing, the machine acquires information from the consumables. If acquired matching information is not proper, the Consumable Information screen is shown. Enter appropriate values.

The  icon on the Info Button will be grayed out when this occurs.

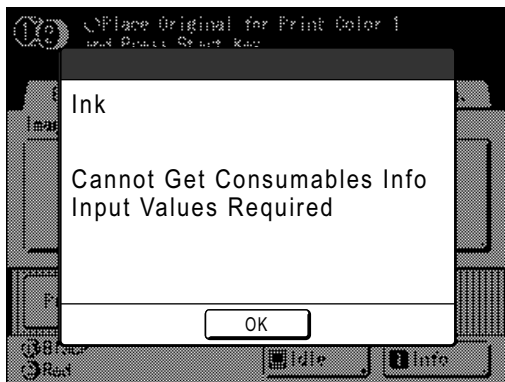
☞ p.241

### Note:

- Entering an inappropriate value does not affect usual operations but may result in bad print quality.
- When you perform the following operations, the values set on the "Consumables Information Input Wizard" Screen disappears and thus you need to enter the values again.
  - After the power switch is set to  (OFF) and the switch is set to  (ON) again
  - After the machine is placed into the Sleep status.
  - After the  key is pressed

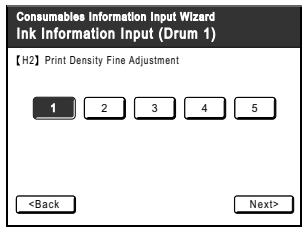
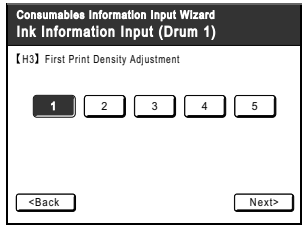
## Ink Information Input Screen

This screen pops up when data could not be obtained from the Ink Cartridge.

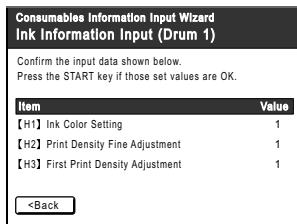



Touch **[OK]** and enter values as shown below.

Screen Display	Description	Values
<p>The screenshot shows a 'Consumables Information Input Wizard' screen. The title is 'Ink Information Input (Drum 1)'. Below it, it says '[H1] Ink Color Setting'. There are two buttons: '1: Black' and '2: Color'. A 'Next&gt;' button is at the bottom right.</p>	<p>[H1] Ink Color Setting (for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1)                      [H7] Ink Color Setting (for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2)                      Select the same color as the Print Drum (Cylinder) currently in use.</p>	<p>1: Black 2: Color</p>

Screen Display	Description	Values
 <p>The screenshot shows a screen titled "Consumables Information Input Wizard" with the subtitle "Ink Information Input (Drum 1)". The main heading is "[H2] Print Density Fine Adjustment". Below the heading are five numbered buttons (1-5) and two navigation buttons: "&lt;Back" and "Next&gt;".</p>	<p>[H2] Print Density Fine Adjustment (for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1)                      [H8] Print Density Fine Adjustment (for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2)                      Select a Print Density level to match the Ink to fine-tune print result.</p>	1 (Light) - 5 (Dark)
 <p>The screenshot shows a screen titled "Consumables Information Input Wizard" with the subtitle "Ink Information Input (Drum 1)". The main heading is "[H3] First Print Density Adjustment". Below the heading are five numbered buttons (1-5) and two navigation buttons: "&lt;Back" and "Next&gt;".</p>	<p>[H3] First Print Density Adjustment (for Print Drum (Cylinder) 1)                      [H9] First Print Density Adjustment (for Print Drum (Cylinder) 2)                      Select a Print Density level of the first print to match the Ink.</p>	1 (Light) - 5 (Dark)

A confirmation screen displays when done.



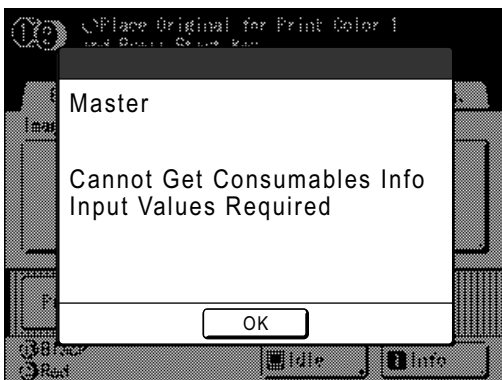
Press the  key to approve selection.  
 Returns to the Basic Screen.

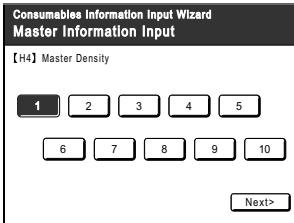
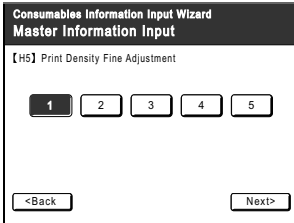
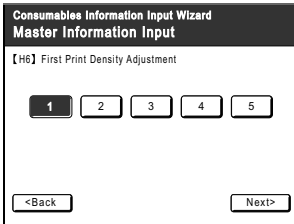
**Note:**

- Master Information Input Screen may also display. If so, enter Master Information as well.  
 p.281

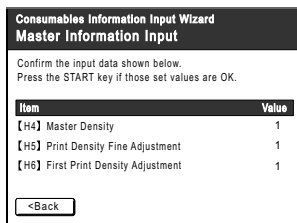
**Master Information Input Screen**


This screen pops up when data could not be obtained from the Master Roll.  
 Touch [OK] and enter values as shown below.



Screen Display	Description	Values
	<p>[H4] Master Density Select the standard density to be applied during creation of the master.</p>	<p>1 (Light) - 10 (Dark)</p>
	<p>[H5] Print Density Fine Adjustment Select a Print Density level to match the master to fine-tune print result.</p>	<p>1 (Light) - 5 (Dark)</p>
	<p>[H6] First Print Density Adjustment Select a Print Density level of the first print to match the master.</p>	<p>1 (Light) - 5 (Dark)</p>



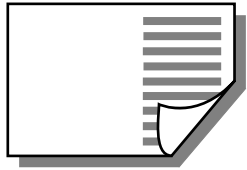



A confirmation screen displays when done.

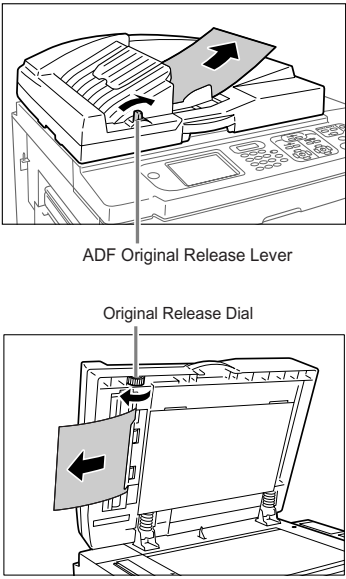
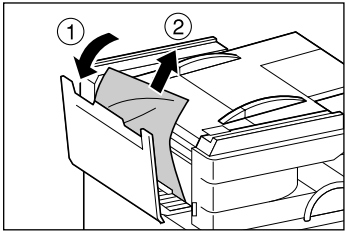



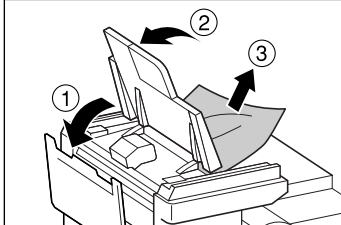
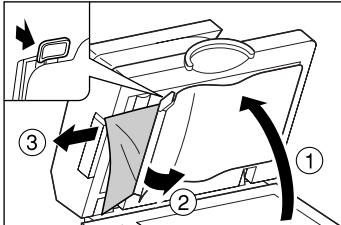
Press the  key to approve selection.  
Returns to the Basic Screen.

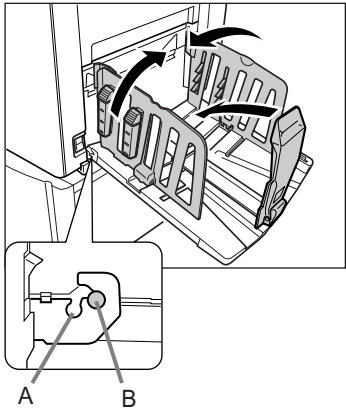
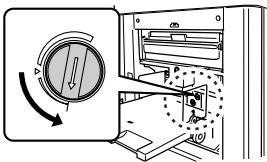
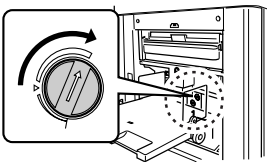
# Troubleshooting

If you run into a problem, consult the following chart first, to find answers before calling for a repair.

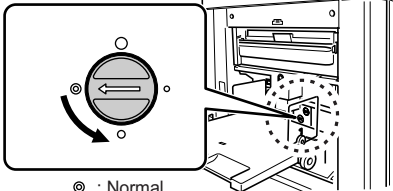
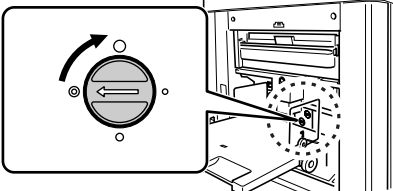
Problem	Possible Cause	Action
An error indication does not disappear even though consumables (Ink, master roll) are set.	The consumables (Ink, master roll) have not been correctly set.	After inserting the Ink Cartridge, turn it clockwise (🔒) to lock. Or set the Ink Cartridge again. ☞ p.245
		Set a master roll so that the  mark comes to the left, and set the Master Making Unit. ☞ p.242
	The Ink Cartridge does not contain Ink information.	Do not remove the label attached on the Ink Cartridge outlet section. If you did so, set a new Ink Cartridge. ☞ p.242
	The master roll does not contain master information.	Do not remove the  section from the master core. If you did so, set a new master roll. ☞ p.242
An error message displays even though there is no paper jam.	Is the lifted paper getting ejected at the second rotation of the Print Drum (Cylinder)?	Check the printed copy, and if the top margin is less than 5mm ( $3/16$ " ), slightly lower Print Position.
	Is sunlight directly hitting the machine?	The sensor is affected by direct sunlight. Install shades or curtains, or move the machine out of direct sunlight.
Dirt is found on printed copies.	The Glass Platen (and/or the ADF Scanner Glass) is not clean.	Clean the Glass Platen (and/or the ADF Scanner Glass). ☞ p.254
Multi-up did not function. There is nothing printed on one side. 	Did you place the second original in time after the beep, while the message "Place Another Original and Press Start Key" was showing?	When you print using "Multi-Up", the machine will beep during the Multi-Up Interval. Place the second original during that interval. If the machine starts scanning for the second time without a beep, even when you are scanning from the Glass Platen, you will need to adjust "Multi-Up Interval" settings on the Admin. Screen. ☞ p.195
	Did you accidentally press the  key while the original was being scanned?	The print operation will stop if the  key is pressed while scanning is in progress. Do not press the  key until all originals have been scanned.

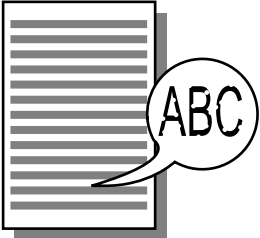

Problem	Possible Cause	Action
<p>Paper gets jammed in the Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II (optional).</p>	<p>There is any paper caught in the Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II.</p>	<p>Pull the ADF Original Release Lever to the right or turn the Release Original Dial and remove the jammed paper.</p>  <p>ADF Original Release Lever</p> <p>Original Release Dial</p>
<p>Paper gets jammed in the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 (optional).</p>	<p>Paper is caught in the Auto Document Feeder DX-1.</p>	<p><b>Removing originals jammed in the document carrier</b>            Open the auto document feeder cover (①), and raise the feed roller as shown in (②).</p>  <p><b>Important!:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Take care not to touch the roller inside the unit. It may cause smudges on the original or a paper jam.</li> </ul>




Problem	Possible Cause	Action
<p>Paper gets jammed in the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 (optional).</p>	<p>Paper is caught in the Auto Document Feeder DX-1.</p>	<p><b>Removing originals jammed in the document carrier</b>                      Open the auto document feeder cover ( ① ), and raise the feed roller as shown in ( ② ).                      Open the inside cover ( ③ ), and pull out the original ( ④ ).</p> 
	<p>There is any paper caught in the Auto Document Feeder DX-1.</p>	<p><b>Removing originals jammed in the original reversal unit</b>                      Open the auto document feeder cover ( ① ), and raise the document tray as shown in ( ② ).                      Pull out the original ( ③ ).</p>  <p><b>Removing originals jammed in the original receiving unit</b>                      Lift the Platen Cover Pad up ( ① ), and pull the release lever toward you ( ② ), and pull out the original ( ③ ).</p> 









Problem	Possible Cause	Action
<p>Paper goes over the receiving tray stopper.</p>	<p>---</p>	<p>Follow the steps to level the receiving tray as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1) Fold the Receiving Tray Paper Guides/Stopper.</li> <li>2) Lift up the sides of the receiving tray with both hands, and move the receiving tray shaft to position B. Position A is recommended in most cases.</li> </ol>  <p>A: Ordinary position B: Move to this position when paper goes over the tray.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Paper is not smoothly fed from the Paper Feed Tray. (skipped paper, or multiple-sheet feeding)</li> <li>• There is a lot of paper powder</li> <li>• Multiple sheets of paper were fed</li> <li>• Construction paper or postcard was skipped</li> <li>• The back side of the postcard is turned up</li> </ul>	<p>The angle of the Stripper Plate is inappropriate.</p>	<p>Turn the Stripper Plate Angle Adjustment dial as follows;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When the feeding skips</b> Turn the dial to the left.</li> </ul>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>When multiple sheets are fed</b> Turn the dial to the right.</li> </ul>  <p><b>Important!:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Before making the adjustment, be sure to remove all papers from the Paper Feed Tray and confirm that the tray is lowered to the bottom.</li> </ul>

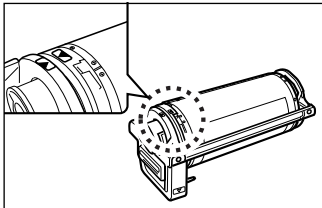


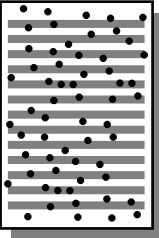



Problem	Possible Cause	Action
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Paper is not smoothly fed from the Paper Feed Tray. (skipped paper, or multiple-sheet feeding)</li> <li>There is a lot of paper powder</li> <li>Multiple sheets of paper were fed</li> <li>Construction paper or postcard was skipped</li> <li>The back side of the postcard is turned up</li> </ul>	<p>Paper handling pressure is not correctly adjusted.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>For paper that easily creates paper powder, skips, or for the back side of postcards that is turn up:</b> Turn the dial to the left.</li> </ul>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>If paper is being multi-fed:</b> Turn the dial to the right.</li> </ul>  <p><b>Important!:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Before making the adjustment, be sure to remove all papers from the Paper Feed Tray and confirm that the tray has lowered to the bottom.</li> </ul>
	<p>The Paper Feed Adjustment on the Functions Screen is not properly set.</p>	<p>Adjust the "Paper Feed Adj.". Contact your dealer (or authorized service representative) for details on making the adjustment.</p>
<p>Paper is not smoothly fed from the Paper Feed Tray. (skipped paper, or multiple sheet feeding)</p>	<p>The print paper is inappropriate.</p>	<p>Use paper that falls within the recommended range. ☞ p.16</p>
	<p>The position of the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever was inappropriate.</p>	<p>When using thick or slippery paper, set the Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever to "Thick Paper". ☞ p.39</p>

Problem	Possible Cause	Action
Paper sticks to the surface of the Print Drum (Cylinder).	The margin at the top of the original or print is too small.	The margin of the original (top of the print in the paper output direction) must be 5 mm ( $\frac{3}{16}$ " ) at least. Lower the vertical print position. If this adjustment is impossible, reproduce an original with enough margin and perform the master-making operation again. ☞ p.67
	The print paper is inappropriate.	Use the recommended paper. ☞ p.16
	The original has a solid black portion at its top.	If an original has a solid black portion at the top, printed copies may not be with proper quality. Replace the original in the reverse direction and restart the master-making process.
Printed and curled copies are output.	The print paper is loaded at a horizontal grain direction.	Load print paper with a vertical grain direction.
Printed copies are not neatly aligned in the Paper Receiving Tray.	The positions of the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and the Paper Stopper are inappropriate.	Adjust the Receiving Tray Paper Guides and the Paper Stopper to the size of paper. For thick paper, slightly widen them as necessary. If you have adjusted the horizontal position on the Paper Feed Tray, shift the Receiving Tray Paper Guides in the same direction. ☞ p.40
	The Paper Arrangers are not properly set.	Set the Paper Arrangers properly. ☞ p.40
Printed images are faint. Printed texts are blurred.  	If the machine is not used for an extended period of time, Ink on the surface of the Print Drum (Cylinder) may dry. This results in faint or blurred printing just after printing starts.	The Ink on the Print Drum (Cylinder) will dry when the machine is not in use for an extended period. Printing with dried Ink will produce light or faded copies. Press the  key and make several copies before making copies to be actually used. Or use the "Idling Action". ☞ p.172
	Faint originals result in faint images.	Increase the scanning level and perform the master-making operation again. ☞ p.66 For originals written with a pencil, select the Pencil mode. ☞ p.64
	If the temperature is low (below 15°C (59°F)) in a place where the machine is installed or Ink Cartridges are stored, Ink does not flow smoothly.	Use the machine after keeping it at room temperature for a while. ☞ p.10
	The Ink Saving mode has been set.	With the "Ink Saving" mode selected, the Ink on printed copies is fainter than usual. ☞ p.76

Problem	Possible Cause	Action
<p>Sections of the copies from Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 are incomplete.</p> 	<p>Is the A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder) set to Print Drum (Cylinder) 1?</p>	<p>Sections that exceed the maximum printing range of the Print Drum (Cylinder) are not printed. In particular, setting to <b>[Rotate]</b> inverts the original vertically and may produce unexpected results. To print an original that is larger than A4/ Letter horizontal, replace with the A3/ Ledger drum (cylinder).</p>
<p>Some areas are missing in the printed copy.</p> 	<p>The Glass Platen (and/or the ADF Scanner Glass) is not clean.</p>	<p>Clean the Glass Platen (and/or the ADF Scanner Glass). ☞ p.254</p>
	<p>A foreign object may exist on the master.</p>	<p>Pull out the Print Drum (Cylinder) and check if any object exists on the master. If a foreign object exists between the master and the Print Drum (Cylinder), remove the master. Then set the Print Drum (Cylinder) and perform the master-making operation again.</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The paper size placed on the Paper Feed Tray was not the same as the size of the original at the time of the master-making process.</li> <li>• The Feed Tray Paper Guides were not fit to the width of paper at the time of the master-making process.</li> </ul>	<p>A master is made according to the size of paper placed on the Paper Feed Tray; namely the width of the Feed Tray Paper Guides and the length of paper. If the size of paper placed on the tray is smaller than the size of the original, a master is not made for the entire original. Set the same size of paper on the tray as the original and perform the master-making operation.</p>
<p>The back of the printed paper is smudged with Ink</p> 	<p>The Pressure Roller has been stained with Ink.</p>	<p>Remove the Print Drum (Cylinder) and clean the Pressure Roller. ☞ p.254 If the print position is outside the print paper, this may cause the Pressure Roller to be stained with Ink. Be careful when changing the size of print paper or shifting the print position.</p>
	<p>The Feed Tray Paper Guides were not fit to the width of paper at the time of the master-making process.</p>	<p>Adjust the Feed Tray Paper Guides to the width of the paper. If the Feed Tray Paper Guides are set wider than the width of the paper, a master will become wider than necessary. ☞ p.38</p>
	<p>Are you using a paper that does not efficiently absorb Ink?</p>	<p>The Ink did not dry fast enough, marking onto the reverse side of the next paper. Either change the paper or try “Ink Saving” or “Interval” features. ☞ p.76 ☞ p.122</p>

Problem	Possible Cause	Action
The computer sent the file, but it was not received by the machine.	Is the Admin. Screen currently showing on the display?	Touch  and switch to the Basic Screen from the Admin. Screen.
The edges of printed copies are smudged with Ink.	Larger size of paper than the original was placed on the Paper Feed Tray at the time of the master-making process.	Because a master was made according to a larger size than the original, the edges of the original were processed as shadows. Set the same size of paper as the original and perform the master-making operation again. Or attach tape as described below to solve the problem.
	Did you use <b>[Max. Scan]</b> setting when making the master?	
	When printing thick paper such as cards, corners of the paper contacted and damaged the master.	Make another master and print with the new master. Or pull out the Print Drum (Cylinder) and attach cellophane tape to the damaged section on the master. However, if attached with cellophane tape, a master may not be properly sent to the Master Disposal Box.
The front cover is closed, but the error message still does not clear.	The Front Cover has not been firmly closed.	Completely close the Front Cover. The magnetic latch should properly engage.
The machine does not start up when the power switch is pressed.	You may have pressed the power switch while the machine was in the Sleep Mode.	Try pressing the power switch again. Before pressing the power switch, you may want to find out whether the machine is indeed in the Sleep Mode, by checking the  indicator on the Control Panel. If the  key is lit, the machine is in sleep mode. Press the  key to end sleep mode and to activate the machine.
	Power has been disconnected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the power cord for proper connection to both the machine and the power outlet.</li> <li>• Check the power breaker.</li> </ul>
The Master Disposal Box cannot be removed.	The “Protect” setting is ON.	If the “Protect” setting is ON, the Master Disposal Box cannot usually be removed.  p.207
	The Master Disposal Box lever is locked.	Slide the Master Disposal Box lever to the right to unlock. If the Master Disposal Box is padlocked, contact the administrator to undo the padlock.  p.247
The Paper Feed Tray cannot be closed.	The Feed Paper Tray Guides have not been widened up to the limit.	Turn the power on and lower the Paper Feed Tray to the bottom. Set the Feed Tray Paper Guides Lock Lever to  , widen the Feed Tray Paper Guides up to the limit, and close the Paper Feed Tray.  p.38
	The power was turned off before the Paper Feed Tray was lowered to the bottom.	

Problem	Possible Cause	Action
<p>The Print Drum (Cylinder) cannot be placed into position.</p>	<p>The Print Drum (Cylinder) was stopped at an inappropriate position after rotation.</p>	<p>After manually rotating the Print Drum (Cylinder), make sure that the ► mark and the ◀ mark meet as shown.</p> 
	<p>The Print Drum (Cylinder) has not been correctly set to the guide.</p>	<p>Set the Print Drum (Cylinder) to the guide correctly. ☞ p.251</p>
<p>The  key is blinking.</p>	<p>Received data is waiting for output?</p>	<p>Press the  key and proceed to print.</p>
<p>The unwanted background of an original is picked up on copies.</p> 	<p>If newspaper or colored paper is used as an original, the background is picked up in the copies.</p>	<p>Lighten the “Contrast” and create a new master. ☞ p.66</p>
<p>There is no image on copies.</p>	<p>The original is placed face-up.</p>	<p>Place the original face-down. (This is also true for the ADF unit)</p>
<p>Vertical blank lines are found on printed copies.</p> 	<p>The Thermal Print Head of the Master Making Unit or the Scanner Glass of the optional ADF unit has been stained with dirt, white-out, etc.</p>	<p>Gently wipe the Thermal Print Head or Scanner Glass with a soft cloth. ☞ p.254</p>
<p>When printing a multiple page computer file, the machine repeats the master-making process one page at a time.</p>	<p>Is “Print in Units” option selected in the Printer Driver?</p>	<p>Delete the current print job. Deselect “Print in Units”, and resend the data to the machine. ☞ p.54 ☞ p.60</p>

# Appendix

## Optional Accessories

A variety of optional accessories are available to enhance the capabilities of the machine. For details about the optional accessories, see your dealer (or authorized service representative).

### ◆ Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II

Feed up to 50 sheets of originals automatically.

### ◆ Auto Document Feeder DX-1

Feed up to 50 sheets of originals automatically. Both sides of original can be scanned automatically.

### ◆ Color Drum (Cylinder)

Simply change the Drum (Cylinder) to print in multiple colors. (Case included)

### ◆ Key Card Counter

With a single button press, shows the numbers of printed copies and consumed masters within a given period of time. This can help you manage costs.

### ◆ Job Separator

With the Programed Printing function, allows the machine to print and sort into groups separated by tape.

### ◆ RISO Network Card

Use to directly connect the machine to the network.

This comes with the RISO-MONITOR software that allows you to check the status of the machine from computers.

### ◆ Document Storage Card DM-128CF/DM-512CF

A Storage Card for using the Storage Memory function.

### ◆ RISO Controller IS300

A custom controller enabling the machine to be used as a network-connected PostScript 3 printer.

### ◆ RISO Stand D type (II)

### ◆ RISO Stand N type (II)

### ◆ Wide Stacking Tray

Paper Receiving Tray for sizes A6 - A3/Ledger 340 mm × 555 mm (13<sup>3</sup>/<sub>8</sub>" × 21<sup>27</sup>/<sub>32</sub>").

### ◆ Cover Kit: Paper Feed/Ejection

### ◆ Card Feed Kit

### ◆ Envelope Feed Kit

### ◆ RISO Printer Driver for Macintosh

# Specifications

## RISO ME9450

Master-making/printing methods	High-speed digital master-making/full automatic stencil printing
Original Type	Book (10 kg (22 lb) or less), sheet
Original Size (min./max.)	When using the Glass Platen: 50 mm × 90 mm ( $1^{31/32}$ " × $3^{17/32}$ " ) - 310 mm × 432 mm ( $12^{7/32}$ " × 17") When using the Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II (option): 100 mm × 148 mm ( $3^{15/16}$ " × $5^{13/16}$ " ) - 310 mm × 432 mm ( $12^{7/32}$ " × 17") When using the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 (option): 105 mm × 128 mm ( $4^{1/8}$ " × $5^{1/32}$ " ) - 297 mm × 432 mm ( $11^{11/16}$ " × 17")
Original Paper Weight	When using the Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II (option): 50 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13-lb bond) - 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (34-lb bond) When using the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 (option): Single-sided feeding: 40 g/m <sup>2</sup> (11-lb bond) - 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (34-lb bond) Duplex-sided feeding: 52 g/m <sup>2</sup> (14-lb bond) - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (28-lb bond)
Printing Paper Size (min./max.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Minimum size           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– <b>Dual-Color Print</b> 182 mm × 257 mm (<math>7^{5/32}</math>" × <math>10^{1/8}</math>" )</li> <li>– <b>Mono-Color Print (with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1)</b> 100 mm × 148 mm (<math>3^{15/16}</math>" × <math>5^{13/16}</math>" )</li> <li>– <b>Mono-Color Print (with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2)</b> 182 mm × 257 mm (<math>7^{5/32}</math>" × <math>10^{1/8}</math>" )</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Maximum size 320 mm × 432 mm (<math>12^{19/32}</math>" × 17")* * Paper up to 555 mm (<math>21^{27/32}</math>" ) from top to bottom may be used in the Extended Paper mode. If Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is removed and Mono-Color printing is performed with Drum (Cylinder) 2 at a print speed of "High Speed", paper of 364 mm (<math>14^{11/32}</math>" ) to 432 mm (17") in the vertical paper dimension can be used.</li> </ul>
Paper Supply Capacity	Approx. 1000 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17-lb bond) - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond) / Maximum Height 110 mm ( $4^{11/32}$ " )
Paper Receiving Capacity	Approx. 1000 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17-lb bond) - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond) / Maximum Height 110 mm ( $4^{11/32}$ " )
Printing Paper Weight	46 g/m <sup>2</sup> (12-lb bond) - 210 g/m <sup>2</sup> (110-lb index)
Image Processing mode	Line, Photo (Standard/Portrait/Group), Duo (Line/Photo/Shadow off), Pencil (Darker/Lighter)
Master-making Time (for A4/short edge feed/ 100% reproduction ratio)	Approx. 57 seconds (for Dual-Color print) Approx. 24 seconds (for Mono-Color print (Drum (Cylinder) 1)) Approx. 34 seconds (for Mono-Color print (Drum (Cylinder) 2)) (when Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is not set)
Printing Area (max.)	Ledger Drum (Cylinder): 291 mm × 425 mm ( $11^{15/32}$ " × $16^{23/32}$ " ) A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder): 291 mm × 203 mm ( $11^{15/32}$ " × 8")
Print Reproduction Ratio	Zoom: 50 - 200% Standard reproduction ratio (enlargement): 200%, 154%, 129%, 121% Standard reproduction ratio (reduction): 78%, 65%, 61%, 50% Margin+: 90 - 99%

## Appendix

---

Print Speed	60 - 120 sheets per minute (Control panel: five steps variable) 150 sheets per minute (Touch panel: "High Speed")
Print Position Adjustment	Vertical: $\pm 15$ mm ( $\pm 19/32$ ") Horizontal: $\pm 10$ mm ( $\pm 25/64$ ")
Ink Supply	Fully automatic (1000 ml per cartridge)
Master Supply/Disposal	Fully automatic Approx. 215 sheets per roll with A3/Ledger Drum (Cylinder) Approx. 373 sheets per roll with A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder)
Master Disposal Capacity	80 sheets each
User Interface	LCD Touch Panel with Progress Arrow indicators
Optional Accessories	Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II, Auto Document Feeder DX-1, Color Drum (Cylinder), Key Card Counter, Job Separator, RISO Network Card, Document Storage Card DM-128CF/DM-512CF, RISO Controller IS300, RISO Stand D type (II), RISO Stand N type (II), Wide Stacking Tray, Cover Kit: Paper Feed/Ejection, Card Feed Kit, Envelope Feed Kit, RISO Printer Driver for Macintosh
Operating Noise	Max. 66 dB(A) (when printing 100 sheets per minute)
Power Source	AC 100-240 V, 50-60 Hz <7.3-3.0 A>
Power Consumption	Max. 600 W (100 V) / 580 W (220 V) At Ready: approx. 55 W (100 V, 220 V) At Sleep: approx. 2.5 W (100 V, 220 V)
Functions	Print Mode (Dual-color/Mono-color), Auto Document Feeder (optional), Direct Print, Scanning Contrast (Manual/Auto), Paper Size detection, Auto-Process, Dot Process (4 types), Contrast Adjustment, Tone Curve, Ink Saving, Multi-Up Print (2 up/Single-Original/Multiple-Original/Multi-Up Tickets), Layout, Book Shadow, Top Margin, Binding Margin, Max. Scan, Easy 2Color, Preview, OneSide MasterMake, Print Speed Adjustment, Print Density Adjustment, Print Position Adjustment, 1=2 Alignment, Proof, Double Feed Check, Interval Printing, Jump Wing Control, Special Paper Control, User Management, Programmed Printing (3 types), Job Memory, Confidential mode, Reservation, Idling, Renew Page, Output Reversal, ADF Semi-Auto (with optional ADF unit installed), Scanning Side (with optional ADF DX-1), Rotate, ID Counter Report, My Direct Access, Admin. Mode, Auto 90° Rotation, SW. Color, Energy Saving Mode (Auto Sleep. Auto Power-OFF), Editor, Direct Access Entry, Selections Entry, Custom Paper Entry, Protect, Scan Mode (with optional memory card or USB Flash Drive), Storage memory (with optional memory card), USB Job List (with USB Flash Drive), Overlay (with optional memory card or USB Flash Drive), Stamp, Management of Consumables, RISO i Quality System
Dimensions	When in use: 1625 mm (W) $\times$ 735 mm (D) $\times$ 740 mm (H) (63 <sup>31/32</sup> " (W) $\times$ 28 <sup>15/16</sup> " (D) $\times$ 29 <sup>1/8</sup> " (H)) When in storage: 1005 mm (W) $\times$ 735 mm (D) $\times$ 740 mm (H) (39 <sup>9/16</sup> " (W) $\times$ 28 <sup>15/16</sup> " (D) $\times$ 29 <sup>1/8</sup> " (H))
Required Space*1	1715 mm (W) $\times$ 1330 mm (D) $\times$ 1555 mm (H) (67 <sup>17/32</sup> " (W) $\times$ 52 <sup>3/8</sup> " (D) $\times$ 61 <sup>7/32</sup> " (H))
Weight*2	Approx. 170 kg (375 lb)
Safety Standards	IEC-60950-1 compliant, Indoor, pollution degree 2*3, At altitudes of 2000 m or lower



**Note:**

- Please note that due to improvements and changes to the machine, some images and explanations in this manual may not correspond to your machine.
- The specifications are subject to change without prior notice.

\*1 The height includes the height of the dedicated stand.

\*2 The weight does not include Ink and Master.

\*3 The pollution degree of the usage environment due to dirt and dust in the air. Degree "2" corresponds to general indoor environment.

**RISO ME9350**

Master-making/printing methods	High-speed digital master-making/full automatic stencil printing
Original Type	Book (10 kg (22 lb) or less), sheet
Original Size (min./max.)	When using the Glass Platen: 50 mm × 90 mm ( $1^{31/32}$ " × $3^{17/32}$ ") - 310 mm × 432 mm ( $12^{7/32}$ " × 17") When using the Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II (option): 100 mm × 148 mm ( $3^{15/16}$ " × $5^{13/16}$ ") - 310 mm × 432 mm ( $12^{7/32}$ " × 17") When using the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 (option): 105 mm × 128 mm ( $4^{1/8}$ " × $5^{1/32}$ ") - 297 mm × 432 mm ( $11^{11/16}$ " × 17")
Original Paper Weight	When using the Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II (option): 50 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13-lb bond) - 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (34-lb bond) When using the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 (option): Single-sided feeding: 40 g/m <sup>2</sup> (11-lb bond) - 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (34-lb bond) Duplex-sided feeding: 52 g/m <sup>2</sup> (14-lb bond) - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (28-lb bond))
Printing Paper Size (min./max.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Minimum size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– <b>Dual-Color Print</b> 182 mm × 257 mm (<math>7^{5/32}</math>" × <math>10^{1/8}</math>")</li> <li>– <b>Mono-Color Print (with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1)</b> 100 mm × 148 mm (<math>3^{15/16}</math>" × <math>5^{13/16}</math>")</li> <li>– <b>Mono-Color Print (with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2)</b> 182 mm × 257 mm (<math>7^{5/32}</math>" × <math>10^{1/8}</math>")</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Maximum size 320 mm × 432 mm (<math>12^{19/32}</math>" × 17")* * Paper up to 555 mm (<math>21^{27/32}</math>") from top to bottom may be used in the Extended Paper mode. If Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is removed and Mono-Color printing is performed with Drum (Cylinder) 2 at a print speed of "High Speed", paper of 364 mm (<math>14^{11/32}</math>") to 432 mm (17") in the vertical paper dimension can be used.</li> </ul>
Paper Supply Capacity	Approx. 1000 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17-lb bond) - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond) / Maximum Height 110 mm ( $4^{11/32}$ ")
Paper Receiving Capacity	Approx. 1000 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17-lb bond) - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond) / Maximum Height 110 mm ( $4^{11/32}$ ")
Printing Paper Weight	46 g/m <sup>2</sup> (12-lb bond) - 210 g/m <sup>2</sup> (110-lb index)
Image Processing mode	Line, Photo (Standard/Portrait/Group), Duo (Line/Photo/Shadow off), Pencil (Darker/Lighter)
Master-making Time (for A4/short edge feed/ 100% reproduction ratio)	Approx. 57 seconds (for Dual-Color print) Approx. 24 seconds (for Mono-Color print (Drum (Cylinder) 1)) Approx. 34 seconds (for Mono-Color print (Drum (Cylinder) 2)) (when Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is not set)
Printing Area (max.)	A3 Drum (Cylinder): 291 mm × 413 mm ( $11^{15/32}$ " × $16^{1/4}$ ") A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder): 291 mm × 203 mm ( $11^{15/32}$ " × 8")
Print Reproduction Ratio	Zoom: 50 - 200% Standard reproduction ratio (enlargement): 163%, 141%, 122%, 116% Standard reproduction ratio (reduction): 87%, 82%, 71%, 61% Margin+: 90 - 99%
Print Speed	60 - 120 sheets per minute (Control panel: five steps variable) 150 sheets per minute (Touch panel: "High Speed")
Print Position Adjustment	Vertical: ±15 mm ( $\pm^{19/32}$ ") Horizontal: ±10 mm ( $\pm^{25/64}$ ")

Ink Supply	Fully automatic (1000 ml per cartridge)
Master Supply/Disposal	Fully automatic Approx. 220 sheets per roll with A3/Ledger Drum (Cylinder) Approx. 373 sheets per roll with A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder)
Master Disposal Capacity	80 sheets each
User Interface	LCD Touch Panel with Progress Arrow indicators
Optional Accessories	Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II, Auto Document Feeder DX-1, Color Drum (Cylinder), Key Card Counter, Job Separator, RISO Network Card, Document Storage Card DM-128CF/DM-512CF, RISO Controller IS300, RISO Stand D type (II), RISO Stand N type (II), Wide Stacking Tray, Cover Kit: Paper Feed/Ejection, Card Feed Kit, Envelope Feed Kit, RISO Printer Driver for Macintosh
Operating Noise	Max. 66 dB(A) (when printing 100 sheets per minute)
Power Source	ME9350E: AC 220-240 V, 50-60 Hz <3.0 A> ME9350A: AC 100-240 V, 50-60 Hz <7.3-3.0 A>
Power Consumption	Max. 600 W (100 V) / 580 W (220 V) At Ready: approx. 55 W (100 V, 220 V) At Sleep: approx. 2.5 W (100 V, 220 V)
Functions	Print Mode (Dual-color/Mono-color), Auto Document Feeder (optional), Direct Print, Scanning Contrast (Manual/Auto), Paper Size detection, Auto-Process, Dot Process (4 types), Contrast Adjustment, Tone Curve, Ink Saving, Multi-Up Print (2 up/Single-Original/Multiple-Original/Multi-Up Tickets), Layout, Book Shadow, Top Margin, Binding Margin, Max. Scan, Easy 2Color, Preview, OneSide MasterMake, Print Speed Adjustment, Print Density Adjustment, Print Position Adjustment, 1=2 Alignment, Proof, Double Feed Check, Interval Printing, Jump Wing Control, Special Paper Control, User Management, Programmed Printing (3 types), Job Memory, Confidential mode, Reservation, Idling, Renew Page, Output Reversal, ADF Semi-Auto (with optional ADF unit installed), Scanning Side (with optional ADF DX-1), Rotate, ID Counter Report, My Direct Access, Admin. Mode, Auto 90° Rotation, SW. Color, Energy Saving Mode (Auto Sleep. Auto Power-OFF), Editor, Direct Access Entry, Selections Entry, Custom Paper Entry, Protect, Scan Mode (with optional memory card or USB Flash Drive), Storage memory (with optional memory card), USB Job List (with USB Flash Drive), Overlay (with optional memory card or USB Flash Drive), Stamp, Management of Consumables, RISO i Quality System
Dimensions	When in use: 1625 mm (W) × 735 mm (D) × 740 mm (H) (63 <sup>31</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " (W) × 28 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " (D) × 29 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " (H)) When in storage: 1005 mm (W) × 735 mm (D) × 740 mm (H) (39 <sup>9</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " (W) × 28 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " (D) × 29 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " (H))
Required Space*1	1715 mm (W) × 1330 mm (D) × 1555 mm (H) (67 <sup>17</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " (W) × 52 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " (D) × 61 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " (H))
Weight*2	Approx. 170 kg (375 lb)
Safety Standards	IEC-60950-1 compliant, Indoor, pollution degree 2*3, At altitudes of 2000 m or lower

**Note:**

- Please note that due to improvements and changes to the machine, some images and explanations in this manual may not correspond to your machine.
- The specifications are subject to change without prior notice.

\*1 The height includes the height of the dedicated stand.

\*2 The weight does not include Ink and Master.

\*3 The pollution degree of the usage environment due to dirt and dust in the air. Degree "2" corresponds to general indoor environment.

**RISO ME6350**

Master-making/printing methods	High-speed digital master-making/full automatic stencil printing
Original Type	Book (10 kg (22 lb) or less), sheet
Original Size (min./max.)	When using the Glass Platen: 50 mm × 90 mm ( $1^{31}/_{32}$ " × $3^{17}/_{32}$ ") - 310 mm × 432 mm ( $12^{7}/_{32}$ " × 17") When using the Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II (option): 100 mm × 148 mm ( $3^{15}/_{16}$ " × $5^{13}/_{16}$ ") - 310 mm × 432 mm ( $12^{7}/_{32}$ " × 17") When using the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 (option): 105 mm × 128 mm ( $4^{1}/_{8}$ " × $5^{1}/_{32}$ ") - 297 mm × 432 mm ( $11^{11}/_{16}$ " × 17")
Original Paper Weight	When using the Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II (option): 50 g/m <sup>2</sup> (13-lb bond) - 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (34-lb bond) When using the Auto Document Feeder DX-1 (option): Single-sided feeding: 40 g/m <sup>2</sup> (11-lb bond) - 128 g/m <sup>2</sup> (34-lb bond) Duplex-sided feeding: 52 g/m <sup>2</sup> (14-lb bond) - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> (28-lb bond))
Printing Paper Size (min./max.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Minimum size <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– <b>Dual-Color Print</b> 182 mm × 257 mm (<math>7^{5}/_{32}</math>" × <math>10^{1}/_{8}</math>")</li> <li>– <b>Mono-Color Print (with Print Drum (Cylinder) 1)</b> 100 mm × 148 mm (<math>3^{15}/_{16}</math>" × <math>5^{13}/_{16}</math>")</li> <li>– <b>Mono-Color Print (with Print Drum (Cylinder) 2)</b> 182 mm × 257 mm (<math>7^{5}/_{32}</math>" × <math>10^{1}/_{8}</math>")</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Maximum size 320 mm × 432 mm (<math>12^{19}/_{32}</math>" × 17")* * Paper up to 555 mm (<math>21^{27}/_{32}</math>") from top to bottom may be used in the Extended Paper mode. If Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is removed and Mono-Color printing is performed with Drum (Cylinder) 2 at a print speed of "High Speed", paper of 364 mm (<math>14^{11}/_{32}</math>") to 432 mm (17") in the vertical paper dimension can be used.</li> </ul>
Paper Supply Capacity	Approx. 1000 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17-lb bond) - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond) / Maximum Height 110 mm ( $4^{11}/_{32}$ ")
Paper Receiving Capacity	Approx. 1000 sheets (64 g/m <sup>2</sup> (17-lb bond) - 80 g/m <sup>2</sup> (21-lb bond) / Maximum Height 110 mm ( $4^{11}/_{32}$ ")
Printing Paper Weight	46 g/m <sup>2</sup> (12-lb bond) - 210 g/m <sup>2</sup> (110-lb index)
Image Processing mode	Line, Photo (Standard/Portrait/Group), Duo (Line/Photo/Shadow off), Pencil (Darker/Lighter)
Master-making Time (for A4/short edge feed/ 100% reproduction ratio)	Approx. 57 seconds (for Dual-Color print) Approx. 24 seconds (for Mono-Color print (Drum (Cylinder) 1)) Approx. 34 seconds (for Mono-Color print (Drum (Cylinder) 2)) (when Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 is not set)
Printing Area (max.)	A3 Drum (Cylinder): 291 mm × 413 mm ( $11^{15}/_{32}$ " × $16^{1}/_{4}$ ") A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder): 291 mm × 203 mm ( $11^{15}/_{32}$ " × 8")
Print Reproduction Ratio	Zoom: 50 - 200% Standard reproduction ratio (enlargement): 163%, 141%, 122%, 116% Standard reproduction ratio (reduction): 87%, 82%, 71%, 61% Margin+: 90 - 99%
Print Speed	60 - 120 sheets per minute (Control panel: five steps variable) 150 sheets per minute (Touch panel: "High Speed")
Print Position Adjustment	Vertical: ±15 mm ( $\pm^{19}/_{32}$ ") Horizontal: ±10 mm ( $\pm^{25}/_{64}$ ")

## Appendix

---

Ink Supply	Fully automatic (1000 ml per cartridge)
Master Supply/Disposal	Fully automatic Approx. 220 sheets per roll with A3/Ledger Drum (Cylinder) Approx. 373 sheets per roll with A4/Letter-R Drum (Cylinder)
Master Disposal Capacity	80 sheets each
User Interface	LCD Touch Panel with Progress Arrow indicators
Optional Accessories	Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II, Auto Document Feeder DX-1, Color Drum (Cylinder), Key Card Counter, Job Separator, RISO Network Card, Document Storage Card DM-128CF/DM-512CF, RISO Controller IS300, RISO Stand D type (II), RISO Stand N type (II), Wide Stacking Tray, Cover Kit: Paper Feed/Ejection, Card Feed Kit, Envelope Feed Kit, RISO Printer Driver for Macintosh
Operating Noise	Max. 66 dB(A) (when printing 100 sheets per minute)
Power Source	AC 100-240 V, 50-60 Hz <7.3-3.0 A>
Power Consumption	Max. 600 W (100 V) / 580 W (220 V) At Ready: approx. 55 W (100 V, 220 V) At Sleep: approx. 2.5 W (100 V, 220 V)
Functions	Print Mode (Dual-color/Mono-color), Auto Document Feeder (optional), Direct Print, Scanning Contrast (Manual/Auto), Paper Size detection, Auto-Process, Dot Process (4 types), Contrast Adjustment, Tone Curve, Ink Saving, Multi-Up Print (2 up/Single-Original/Multiple-Original/Multi-Up Tickets), Layout, Book Shadow, Top Margin, Binding Margin, Max. Scan, Easy 2Color, Preview, OneSide MasterMake, Print Speed Adjustment, Print Density Adjustment, Print Position Adjustment, 1=2 Alignment, Proof, Double Feed Check, Interval Printing, Jump Wing Control, Special Paper Control, User Management, Programmed Printing (3 types), Job Memory, Confidential mode, Reservation, Idling, Renew Page, Output Reversal, ADF Semi-Auto (with optional ADF unit installed), Scanning Side (with optional ADF DX-1), Rotate, ID Counter Report, My Direct Access, Admin. Mode, Auto 90° Rotation, SW. Color, Energy Saving Mode (Auto Sleep. Auto Power-OFF), Editor, Direct Access Entry, Selections Entry, Custom Paper Entry, Protect, Scan Mode (with optional memory card or USB Flash Drive), Storage memory (with optional memory card), USB Job List (with USB Flash Drive), Overlay (with optional memory card or USB Flash Drive), Stamp, Management of Consumables, RISO i Quality System
Dimensions	When in use: 1625 mm (W) × 735 mm (D) × 740 mm (H) (63 <sup>31</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " (W) × 28 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " (D) × 29 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " (H)) When in storage: 1005 mm (W) × 735 mm (D) × 740 mm (H) (39 <sup>9</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " (W) × 28 <sup>15</sup> / <sub>16</sub> " (D) × 29 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " (H))
Required Space*1	1715 mm (W) × 1330 mm (D) × 1555 mm (H) (67 <sup>17</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " (W) × 52 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>8</sub> " (D) × 61 <sup>7</sup> / <sub>32</sub> " (H))
Weight*2	Approx. 170 kg (375 lb)
Safety Standards	IEC-60950-1 compliant, Indoor, pollution degree 2*3, At altitudes of 2000 m or lower

**Note:**

- Please note that due to improvements and changes to the machine, some images and explanations in this manual may not correspond to your machine.
- The specifications are subject to change without prior notice.

\*1 The height includes the height of the dedicated stand.

\*2 The weight does not include Ink and Master.

\*3 The pollution degree of the usage environment due to dirt and dust in the air. Degree "2" corresponds to general indoor environment.

# Index

## Symbols

* Key .....	24, 151
+ Key .....	24, 151
×Key .....	24, 151

## Numerics

2 Up .....	77, 78, 82
------------	------------

## A

ADF Cover .....	268, 269
ADF Original Guides .....	22, 23
ADF Original Receiving Tray .....	22, 23
ADF Original Release Dial .....	267
ADF Original Release Lever .....	22, 267
ADF Semi-Auto .....	178, 193
ADF unit .....	22, 23, 107
Admin. ....	192
Admin. Screen .....	27
Advanced Features .....	130
Area Specification Sheet .....	102
Auto .....	68
Auto 90°Rotation .....	195
Auto Clear .....	195
Auto Document Feeder AF-VI:II .....	22, 292
Auto Document Feeder Cover .....	23
Auto Document Feeder DX-1 .....	23, 292
Auto Idling .....	52, 172, 196
Auto Page Renewal .....	173, 197
Auto Power-Off .....	196
Auto Print .....	62
Auto Process Mode .....	193
Auto-Process .....	72
Auto-Process Indicator .....	72
Auto-Process Key .....	25, 72
Auto-process "OFF" .....	55, 62
Auto-process "ON" .....	62

## B

Base IP Address .....	195
Basic Process .....	34, 36
Basic Screen .....	31
Beep Sound .....	197
Binding margin .....	96
Book Shadow .....	92

## C

C Key .....	24, 47, 151, 152, 178
Changing Administrator/User Registration .....	143
Changing Output Directions .....	60
Changing the Data Order .....	222
Changing the Owner Name .....	218
Checking Remaining Consumable Amount .....	240
CI Select .....	194
Cleaning .....	254
Clear All .....	60, 61
Clearing Program .....	158

Clearing User Registration .....	144
Clock/Calendar .....	195
Closing the Paper Feed Tray .....	39
Closing the Paper Receiving Tray .....	41
Color Drum (Cylinder) .....	249, 292
Color editor .....	103
Combination .....	149, 152, 154, 156
Common Buttons .....	33
Computer Connection .....	14
Confidential .....	169
Connection Method .....	14
Consumable Error .....	260, 264
Consumables .....	13
Contrast Adj .....	74
Control Panel .....	20, 24
Copying Stored Data .....	238
Counter .....	21
Create User .....	132, 196
Custom Paper Entry .....	194, 204

## D

Data Information .....	217
Data Order .....	222
Data-Map .....	31
Default Folder .....	194
Default Settings .....	192, 198
Density (Print Density) .....	116
D-Feed Check .....	121
Direct Access .....	31
Direct Print .....	54
DirectAccess Entry .....	192, 202
Disable .....	142
Disabling User identification Access .....	142
Display .....	20, 24, 26
Display Adjustment .....	192
Display Priority .....	192
Displayed Language .....	193
Disposing of Consumables .....	252
Document Storage Card .....	292
Dot Process .....	73
Double Feed Check .....	193
Dual-Color Printing .....	44
Dual-Color Printing with 1 Original .....	99
Dual-Color Printing with 2 Originals .....	44
Duo .....	64
Duo (Line) .....	64
Duo (Photo) .....	64
Duo (Shadow off) .....	64

## E

Easy 2 color .....	193
Easy 2Color .....	99
E-mail .....	186
Energy Saving Mode .....	196
Enlarging/reducing .....	82



Enlarging/Reducing Originals .....	67	Job list display .....	192
Entering the User Name .....	139	Job List Screen .....	56
Error Messages .....	260	Job Memory .....	163, 164, 165, 167, 168
Ex. Reserve Period .....	171, 195	Job Operation Area .....	32
Extended Paper .....	205	Job Separation .....	193
External CI Info .....	194	Job Separator .....	150, 292
<b>F</b>		Jump Wing Control .....	123, 124, 194
Feed Tray Ascent / Descent Button .....	20, 39	<b>K</b>	
Feed Tray Paper Guides .....	20	Key Card Counter .....	292
Flanges .....	243	<b>L</b>	
Folder Renaming .....	194	Layout .....	88
Format .....	219	Limit .....	141
Free .....	67, 69	Line .....	64
Front Cover .....	21	Location of Caution Label .....	13
Function and Name of Each Part .....	20	Low/Admin tab only .....	130, 131
Functions Area .....	31	<b>M</b>	
Functions Screen .....	27	Machine Handling .....	12
<b>G</b>		Maintenance .....	254
Gauge Cover .....	42	Maintenance Call .....	271
Glass Platen .....	20, 42, 255	Malfunctions .....	283
Group .....	140, 147	Management Level .....	130, 131, 135, 196
<b>H</b>		Margin .....	81
Hand Writing--1 .....	101	Margin+ .....	67, 68
Hand Writing--2 .....	101	Margin-Plus Rate .....	195
High Speed .....	115	Margins .....	19
High/Full Management .....	130, 131	Master .....	253
Humidity Range .....	12	Master core .....	252
<b>I</b>		Master Disposal Box .....	247
i Information .....	31, 241	Master Disposal Box 1 .....	20
Icons Used in This Manual .....	8	Master Disposal Box 2 .....	21
ID Counter Report .....	186, 187	Master Disposal Box Handle .....	247
ID Print .....	56	Master Guide Flap .....	21, 243
ID Print Job .....	220	Master Information Input .....	281
Idling Action .....	172	Master Making Unit .....	242
Image .....	64	Master Making Unit Cover .....	21, 242
Image Processing .....	64, 193	Master Making Unit Cover Lever .....	242
Initial Screen .....	26	Master Making Unit Handle .....	242
Ink .....	245, 252	Master Making Unit Lever .....	21
Ink Cartridge .....	21, 245, 252	Master Making Unit Release Button .....	21, 242
Ink Cartridge Cap Holders .....	21, 246	Master Making Unit Removal Cover .....	21, 242
Ink Handling .....	13	Master Making Unit Removal Handle .....	21, 242
Ink Information Input .....	280	Master Replacement .....	242
Ink Saving .....	76	Master Roll .....	21, 243
Installation .....	10	Master Roll Holder .....	21, 243
Installation Error .....	260, 264	Master-Making Key .....	25
Installation Location .....	10	Materials Not to Be Printed .....	19
Interval .....	122	Max. Scan .....	98
Irregular Fitter .....	194	Maximum Printing Area .....	19
<b>J</b>		Message .....	260
Jam Error .....	260, 261	Message Area .....	31
Job .....	32	Meter Display .....	189
Job Information Display .....	32	Mid/ID Print Only .....	130, 131
		Minimum Print Q'ty .....	197
		MODE Key .....	24

Mono-Color Printing .....	49	Photo .....	64
Monthly Reminder .....	188	Photo Contrast .....	74
Moving Stored Data .....	238	Photo Gradation .....	75
Multi-Page Mode .....	148, 152, 154, 156	Photo (Group) .....	64
Multiple Paper Feed Detection .....	121	Photo (Portrait) .....	64
Multiple-Original .....	77	Photo (Standard) .....	64
Multi-Up function .....	77	PIN Code .....	131, 133, 137, 198
Multi-Up Interval .....	81, 195	PIN Code Input Screen .....	28, 53
Multi-Up Print .....	77, 78, 83	Platen Cover .....	20
Multi-Up Tickets .....	77, 80, 85	Platen Cover Pad .....	255
My Counter .....	240	Power Connection .....	10
My Direct Access .....	190	Power Switch .....	21, 38
<b>N</b>		Power-OFF Schedule .....	196
Non-ID Print .....	220	Pressure Roller .....	257
<b>O</b>		Preview .....	32, 60
OneSide MasterMake .....	112	Print .....	186
OP Auto Process .....	193	Print Colors .....	197
Operation Environment .....	12	Print Density .....	24, 116, 193
Operation flow of User Management .....	132	Print Density Adjustment Indicator .....	24, 116
Operation Pattern Display .....	9	Print Density Adjustment Keys .....	24, 116
Operation Safety Guide .....	12	Print Drum (Cylinder) .....	249
Optional Accessories .....	292	Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 .....	21
Optional Device Area .....	32	Print Drum (Cylinder) 1 and Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 .....	21
Optional Device Error .....	260, 263	Print Position Alignment .....	118
Orientation of Print Paper .....	81	Print Drum (Cylinder) 2 .....	21
Original .....	18	Print Drum (Cylinder) Handle .....	21, 249
Original Margin .....	19	Print Drum (Cylinder) Release Button .....	21, 249
Original Orientation and Print Results .....	78	Print Drum (Cylinder) Replacement .....	249
Original Position Indicator .....	117	Print Key .....	25
Original Restrictions .....	19	Print Mode .....	29
Original Scan Density .....	66	Print Paper .....	16, 39
Output reversal .....	176	Print Paper Handling .....	17
Overlay .....	225	Print Paper Setting .....	38
Overlying Stored Data .....	227	Print Position Adjustment .....	117
Owner Name .....	218	Print Position Center Key .....	117
<b>P</b>		Print Quantity Display .....	24
P Key .....	24	Print Quantity Keys (0 to 9 Keys) ....	24, 47, 51, 113
Page Orientation .....	197	Print Speed .....	24, 114, 193
Paper Arranger .....	21, 40, 41	Print Speed Adjustment Keys .....	24, 114
Paper Ejection Adj .....	194	Print Speed Indicator .....	24, 114
Paper Feed Pressure Adjustment Lever .....	20	Printer Exterior .....	258
Paper Feed Tray .....	20, 38, 39	Printing Cautions .....	19
Paper Guide .....	38	Printing from Computer .....	32, 54
Paper Jam Error .....	260, 267	Printing from Paper Document .....	31, 44
Paper Jumping Wing .....	21	Printing with Mono-Color .....	49
Paper Receiving Tray .....	21, 40, 41	Process .....	32
Paper Recommendations .....	16	Program .....	147, 155, 158
Paper Size .....	71	Program Key .....	24
Paper Stopper .....	21, 40, 41	Progress Arrows .....	25
Pause before "Master" .....	55, 62	Proof copy .....	47, 51, 113, 120
Pause before "Print" .....	55, 62	Proof Key .....	25, 120
Pencil .....	64	Protect .....	196, 207
Pencil (Darker) .....	64	<b>R</b>	
Pencil (Lighter) .....	64	Receiving Tray Paper Guides .....	21, 40, 41
		Recognition and Identification System .....	133

- Recognition Screen ..... 28, 53  
 Recognized by ..... 131, 133, 137, 196, 198  
 Red Color ..... 100  
 Registering Administrator/Users ..... 136  
 Reminder Date ..... 186  
 Removing the Print Drum (Cylinder) ..... 249  
 Rename ..... 139  
 Rename Group ..... 132, 145, 196  
 Rename Screen ..... 157  
 Renew Page ..... 32, 173  
 Replacing Batteries ..... 261, 271  
 Replacing Consumables ..... 240  
 Report Output ..... 186  
 Reproduction Size ..... 193  
 Reservation ..... 171  
 Reserve Period ..... 195  
 Reset All User Counters ..... 146  
 Reset Counter ..... 132, 146, 196  
 Reset Key ..... 25  
 Retrieving a Program ..... 155  
 Retrieving Stored Data ..... 220  
 RISO Controller IS300 ..... 292  
 RISO COPY COUNT VIEWER ..... 15  
 RISO Network Card ..... 292  
 RISO Printer Driver ..... 15  
 RISO Stand D type (II) ..... 292  
 RISO Stand N type (II) ..... 292  
 RISO USB PRINT MANAGER ..... 15  
 RISO Utility Software ..... 15  
 Rotate ..... 185
- S**
- Safety Guide ..... 10  
 Scan Mode ..... 30, 214  
 Scanner Glass ..... 256  
 Scanning Contrast ..... 66, 193  
 Scanning Interval ..... 195  
 Scanning Side -ADF ..... 180, 193  
 Screens and their Various Stages ..... 26  
 Selections Entry ..... 192, 202  
 Selections Screen ..... 27  
 Separation Hook ..... 257, 270  
 Separation Sheet ..... 102, 107  
 Service Call Error ..... 260, 261  
 Setting Data Information ..... 217  
 Setting the Group to assign ..... 140  
 Setting the Management Level ..... 135  
 Setting the Paper Receiving Tray ..... 40  
 Setting the User's Usage ..... 141  
 Setting Up the Monthly Reminder ..... 188  
 Single Page Mode ..... 147, 151, 154, 156  
 Single-Original ..... 77  
 Size and Weight Restrictions ..... 16, 18  
 Skip Page ..... 32, 60  
 Software Installation ..... 15  
 Special Paper Ctrl ..... 123
- Specifications ..... 293  
 Specified Area ..... 102  
 Specifying Stored Size ..... 219  
 Speed (print speed) ..... 114  
 Stamp ..... 228, 234  
 Stamp Data ..... 194  
 Standard Ratio ..... 67, 68  
 Start Key ..... 25  
 Start-Up Screen ..... 26, 192  
 Status Area ..... 31, 32  
 Stock Management ..... 197  
 Stop Key ..... 25  
 Stop Timing ..... 62  
 Storage Memory ..... 220  
 Storing Environment ..... 17  
 Storing Original Data ..... 212  
 Sub Tool Bar ..... 197
- T**
- Tab Area ..... 31, 32  
 Temperature Range ..... 12  
 Text and Photo (Image Processing mode) ..... 64  
 Text (Image Processing mode) ..... 64  
 Thermal Print Head ..... 21, 255  
 Tips for Better Paper Feeding ..... 17  
 Tone Curve ..... 75  
 Tool Bar Position ..... 197  
 Top Margin ..... 94  
 Troubleshooting ..... 260
- U**
- Usage Status ..... 189  
 USB Flash Drive ..... 13, 131, 133, 137, 186, 198  
 USB Flash Drive Screen ..... 28, 53  
 USB Job List ..... 54, 57, 220  
 USB slot ..... 21, 57  
 User Counter ..... 146  
 User identification access ..... 131, 142  
 User Management ..... 130, 196  
 User Name ..... 139  
 User Registration Number (ID) ..... 136  
 User's Usage ..... 141
- V**
- Vertical Print Position Adjustment Indicator ..... 24  
 Vertical Print Position Adjustment Keys ..... 24
- W**
- WAKE-UP Key ..... 25, 44, 49, 57  
 Warning Message ..... 272  
 White Sheet ..... 256
- Z**
- Zoom ..... 67, 70

